

# EPiSERVER COMMERCE

Version 1 R2 SP1



## User Guide

# **EPiSERVER**

## Table of Contents

<b>The EPiServer Commerce User Guide.....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>About This Documentation.....</b>	<b>15</b>
Online Community on EPiServer World.....	15
Copyright Notice.....	15
<b>The EPiServer Commerce Platform.....</b>	<b>16</b>
Overview.....	16
Functions and Page Templates.....	16
Access Rights.....	17
Editorial Content.....	17
Store Administration.....	17
Terminology.....	17
Editorial Content.....	17
Modes.....	17
View mode.....	17
Edit mode.....	17
Admin mode.....	17
Commerce Manager interface.....	17
Roles.....	18
Visitor.....	18
Editor.....	18
Store Administrator.....	18
System Administrator.....	18
Commerce Manager roles.....	18
Commerce Manager Glossary.....	18
Application Configuration.....	18
Business Foundation.....	19
Catalog Management.....	19
Customer Management.....	20
Marketing.....	20
Order Management.....	21
Reporting.....	22
Prerequisites.....	22
<b>Getting Started.....</b>	<b>24</b>
Logging on to the Website.....	24
Accessing the Different Modes.....	24
Logging on to Commerce Manager.....	25
Navigation.....	25
Navigating Commerce Manager.....	25
Other Basic UI and Navigation Elements.....	26
Working Procedures.....	26
EPiServer OnlineCenter.....	27
EPiServer CMS.....	27
Edit mode.....	27
Admin mode.....	27
Commerce Manager.....	27
System Administration and Configuration.....	27
Administrative Users and Customers.....	27
Catalogs and Product Entries.....	27
Purchase Orders, Shopping Carts, Shipping, and Returns/Exchanges.....	28

Customer Campaigns, Promotions, and Discounts.....	28
Assets and Web Files.....	28
<b>User Access and Roles.....</b>	<b>29</b>
User Access from Commerce Manager.....	29
User Access from EPiServer CMS.....	31
<b>Globalization.....</b>	<b>32</b>
Working With Language Settings.....	32
Specific Language Settings.....	32
Content Language.....	32
Languages for Product Catalogs.....	33
User Interface Language.....	33
<b>File Management.....</b>	<b>35</b>
Working With File Management.....	35
Working with the File Manager.....	35
Working with the Asset Manager.....	36
File Formats.....	36
<b>Commerce Manager.....</b>	<b>37</b>
Dashboard.....	37
Customizing the Dashboard.....	37
Rearranging, Collapsing, and Removing Controls.....	37
Adding Controls and Adjusting the Page Template.....	38
Customer Management.....	39
Organizations.....	39
Browsing Organizations.....	40
Viewing Organization Details.....	40
Searching for Organizations.....	41
Printing a List of Organizations.....	41
Creating or Customizing Views for Browsing Organizations.....	41
Example View Filter Setups.....	43
Example 1: Creating a View to Only Show Organizations that Match a Business Cat-...	
egory and Organization Name.....	44
Applying and Editing a View.....	44
Example 2: Creating a View to Display Companies with Specific Business Category or...	
Organization Name.....	45
Example 3: Creating a View to Display Companies with Specific Business Category .....	
and/or Name.....	45
Creating an Organization.....	46
Creating an Organization Unit.....	47
Creating an Organizational Hierarchy.....	47
Creating and Editing Dictionary Entries.....	48
Adding New Dictionaries for Organization Type.....	48
Adding New Business Categories.....	49
Contacts.....	49
Browsing Contacts.....	49
Viewing Detailed Contact Information.....	49
Searching for Contacts.....	50
Generating a Printer Friendly List of Contacts.....	51
Creating or Customizing Views for Browsing Contacts.....	51
Creating a New View.....	52
Applying and Editing a View.....	54
Creating a Contact.....	54



Creating an Account .....	56
Editing an Account, Changing an Account Password, and Removing Accounts.....	57
Create an Order Within a Contact .....	57
Roles and Permissions.....	58
Definitions of Roles.....	58
Creating, Editing, and Deleting Roles.....	58
Creating a Role.....	58
Editing Existing Roles.....	60
Deleting Roles.....	60
Assigning Roles to Individual Accounts.....	61
Catalog Management .....	63
Catalog and Catalog Entries.....	63
Working with Catalogs.....	63
Browsing Catalogs.....	64
Creating a Catalog.....	64
Importing and Exporting Catalogs.....	65
Accessing the Import & Export Functions.....	65
Importing Catalogs.....	66
Exporting Catalogs.....	66
Using CSV Files to Quickly Create Custom Catalogs.....	67
Why Should I Use a CSV File?.....	67
Import Overview.....	67
Format for CSV Files.....	67
Mapping Types.....	68
Example: Importing and Setting up a New Catalog.....	68
Prerequisite: Create a new catalog.....	69
Step 1: Create CSV files containing data for your new entries.....	69
Step 2: Create necessary meta fields for the new catalog entries.....	72
Step 3: Upload the CSV data files to the CSV Import page.....	73
Step 4: Create a mapping file for each CSV file.....	74
Step 5. Import the CSV files and their corresponding mapping files into a specific cat- alog.....	76
Step 6. Verify Your Import.....	77
Deleting a Catalog.....	77
Categories and Nodes.....	77
Browsing Categories.....	77
Menu Bar Functions.....	78
Creating a Category.....	79
Overview Fields.....	80
SEO.....	81
Assets.....	81
Deleting a Category.....	82
Organizing Categories.....	83
Creating a Sub-Category.....	83
Cloning, Moving or Linking a Category.....	84
Products, Variations and SKUs, Bundles, Packages, Dynamic Packages and Associations. ...	85
Browsing Products.....	86
Creating a Product (including Variations and SKUs, SEO, Associations, Assets).....	86
Overview Tab.....	86
Variations/SKU Tab.....	88
SEO Tab.....	89

Associations Tab.....	90
Assets Tab.....	92
Relations Tab.....	93
Editing Product Tabs.....	93
Overview Tab.....	93
Variations/SKU Tab.....	94
SEO Tab.....	95
Associations Tab.....	96
Assets Tab.....	98
Relations Tab.....	100
Setting Pricing Data at the Product Level.....	100
Creating a Variation or a SKU.....	100
Overview Tab.....	100
Pricing/Inventory Tab.....	101
SEO Tab.....	103
Associations Tab.....	104
Assets Tab.....	104
Relations Tab.....	104
Creating a Package.....	105
Overview Tab.....	105
Pricing/Inventory Tab.....	105
Package Items Tab.....	106
SEO Tab.....	106
Associations Tab.....	107
Assets Tab.....	107
Relations Tab.....	107
Creating a Bundle.....	108
Overview Tab.....	108
Bundle Items Tab.....	108
SEO Tab.....	108
Associations Tab.....	108
Assets Tab.....	109
Relations Tab.....	109
Creating a Dynamic Package.....	109
Overview Tab.....	110
Package Items Tab.....	110
SEO Tab.....	110
Associations Tab.....	110
Assets Tab.....	111
Relations Tab.....	111
Creating Product Associations.....	111
CrossSelling Other Products - "What You May Like".....	112
Associating Related Products and Accessories.....	112
Managing Assets.....	112
Associating Additional Digital Materials with Catalog Entries.....	112
Searching for Entries in Your Catalog.....	113
Catalog Search Filters.....	114
Deleting and Cloning Entries.....	114
Paging and Sorting Results.....	115
Updating Multiple Catalog Entries at Once.....	115
Order Management.....	116

Order Workflow.....	116
Creating a New Order.....	116
Option 1: Creating an Order Within a Contact .....	116
Filling Out the New Purchase Order.....	117
Advanced Search.....	117
Configuring the Selected Entry.....	117
Completing the Rest of the Purchase Order Form.....	118
Option 2: Creating an Order from Purchase Order List .....	119
Fulfilling an Order.....	120
Processing the Order, Submitting a Payment, and Releasing to Shipping.....	120
Canceling an Order.....	122
Splitting Shipments.....	123
Viewing Purchase Orders by Date or Status.....	125
Viewing and Searching for Orders.....	125
Using Order Search to Find Existing Purchase Orders.....	125
Shipping and Receiving Workflow.....	126
Processing Shipments and Creating Picklists.....	126
Printing Picklists and Printing Packing Slips.....	128
Finalizing a Package for Shipment .....	129
Method 1.....	129
Method 2.....	130
Processing Returns and Exchanges.....	130
Initiating a Return.....	130
Return Actions.....	131
Initiating an Exchange Order.....	133
Viewing an Exchange.....	135
Shopping Cart.....	135
Converting a Shopping Cart to a Purchase Order.....	135
Payment Plans.....	137
Setting up a Payment Plan.....	137
Creating a Payment Plan.....	138
Payment Plan Order Detail Page Explained.....	138
Editing and Canceling a Payment Plan.....	139
Creating a Recurring Payment Plan Using Authorize.Net .....	139
Marketing.....	140
Campaigns.....	141
Browsing Campaigns.....	141
Creating a Marketing Campaign.....	141
Promotions.....	143
Browsing Promotions.....	143
Deleting a Promotion.....	144
Creating an Entry Level Promotion.....	144
Example: Build Your Own Discount - "40% Off Canon PowerShot S5".....	145
Buy catalog entry X, get catalog entry Y at a discount .....	147
Buy X Get \$ Off Discount .....	147
Buy X, get N quantity of Y at a discount .....	148
Creating an Order Level Promotion.....	148
Order Sub Total Volume Discount .....	148
Example: Build Your Own Discount - "20% Off for a Shopping Cart Subtotal of \$100 or ..	
More".....	148
Creating a Shipping Level Promotion.....	149

Buy X Get \$ Off Shipment Discount .....	149
Buy X Get Y Free.....	150
Creating Custom Promotions.....	150
How to Use "Or" When Building Your Own Promotions.....	150
Building the Discount.....	150
Seeing the Discount Applied.....	150
Customer Segments.....	151
Creating a Customer Segment .....	151
Creating a Customer Segment Assigned to Contacts.....	151
Creating a Customer Segment with Conditions.....	153
Working with Expressions.....	154
Working with Policies.....	155
Asset Management .....	156
Browsing, Editing, and Deleting Folders and Assets.....	157
Copying/Moving and Deleting Folders and Assets.....	158
Creating Folders and Uploading Files (Assets).....	159
Creating Folders.....	159
Uploading Individual Files.....	161
Uploading Multiple Files at One Time.....	162
Reporting.....	163
SQL Reporting Services.....	163
Generating and Customizing Reports.....	164
Customizing/Filtering and Exporting Reports.....	164
System Administration.....	165
System Settings.....	165
Business Foundation.....	165
Customizing Existing Business Objects.....	165
Fields in the Business Foundation.....	165
<b>Adding Fields to Business Objects.....</b>	<b>166</b>
<b>Editing Fields of Business Objects.....</b>	<b>168</b>
Relations in the Business Foundation.....	168
<b>Adding a 1 to Many Relation.....</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>Adding a Many to 1 Relation.....</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>Adding a Many to Many Relation.....</b>	<b>173</b>
Forms in the Business Foundation.....	174
<b>Customizing an Existing Form.....</b>	<b>175</b>
Editing the Layout of a Form.....	175
Adding Sections and Fields.....	176
Deleting Sections and Fields.....	180
Recreating a Form.....	181
Saving a Customized Form.....	181
Creating a New Business Object.....	182
Scenario - Creating and Publishing a Contract Business Object.....	182
<b>Creating a New Contract Object.....</b>	<b>183</b>
<b>Connecting a Contract to an Organization Using a "Many to One" Relationship.....</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>Publishing a Contract.....</b>	<b>188</b>
Adding Contracts to an Organization.....	189
Publishing Business Objects.....	190
Permissions.....	190
Deleting Published Business Objects.....	191
Creating Dictionary Values for Adding Languages, Countries and Currencies.....	192

Adding New Languages.....	192
Adding New Countries.....	193
Adding New Currencies.....	194
Setting Your Default Language, Currency and Units.....	195
Customizing Left Menu.....	196
Adding a Left Menu Item from the Left Menu Page.....	196
Editing, Ordering, or Deleting a Left Menu Item.....	197
Indexing Your New or Edited Catalog.....	199
Catalog System.....	199
Setting up Meta Fields and Meta Classes.....	199
Adding Meta Fields to a Meta Class.....	199
Warehouses.....	200
Order System.....	202
Payment Gateways.....	202
Using a Built-In Payment Gateway.....	203
Setting up Payment Methods using nSoftware Provided Payment Gateways.....	206
Editing Payment Methods.....	207
Deleting Payment Methods.....	208
Shipping.....	208
Shipping Methods.....	209
Customizing Shipping Methods.....	209
Deleting Shipping Methods.....	213
Shipping Providers.....	213
Customizing Shipping Providers.....	213
Deleting Shipping Providers.....	214
Tax Configuration.....	215
Introduction.....	215
Method 1: Configuring Taxes Manually.....	215
Method 2: Configuring Taxes Using CSV Import.....	215
Sample CSV Files and Example Scenarios.....	216
<b>EPiServer Commerce Sample Site.....</b>	<b>217</b>
Display Templates.....	217
Adding a display template.....	218
Updating an existing display template.....	218
Importing the Sample Catalog.....	218
Import the Sample Catalogs.....	219
Indexing the Sample Catalog.....	220
Page Templates.....	220
The Page Tree Structure.....	221
Start Page.....	222
Content Tab.....	222
Name.....	222
Fetch News list from.....	222
Images.....	223
Links.....	223
Site Configuration Tab.....	223
Login page.....	224
Display top menus from.....	224
Display menus from.....	225
Display bottom menus from.....	225
Account page.....	226

Address book page.....	226
Account edit page.....	226
Search page.....	226
Product page.....	226
Wish list page.....	226
Shopping cart page.....	226
Check out page.....	227
DIBS Payment page.....	227
Order history page.....	227
Compare products page.....	227
Allow empty column.....	227
Path to template for display entry without SEO info.....	227
PayPalPaymentPage.....	227
Standard Page.....	227
Product Listing.....	228
Function Pages.....	229
My Account Pages.....	229
Account Dashboard.....	230
Account Information.....	230
Account My Orders.....	231
Account Address Book.....	232
Check Out.....	232
Step 1: Shipping Address.....	233
Step 2: Shipping Options.....	233
Step 3: Payment Options.....	234
Step 4: Order Confirmation.....	235
Shopping Cart.....	235
Wish List.....	237
Login.....	238
Register.....	239
Search.....	240
Payment.....	241
Forgot Password.....	241
Product Page.....	242
Products Compare.....	244
PayPal.....	244
Tools and Plug-ins.....	245
Product Picker Property.....	245
Displaying Product Information in a Page.....	245
Removing Product Information in a Page.....	246
Product Link Tool.....	246
Adding a Product Link.....	246
Editing a Product Link.....	247
Removing a Product Link.....	247
Product Dynamic Content.....	247
Adding Product Information as Dynamic Content.....	247
Editing Dynamic Content for a Product.....	248
Removing Dynamic Content for a Product.....	249
Gadgets in EPiServer Commerce.....	249
Adding gadgets to the dashboard.....	249
Commerce Orders Gadget.....	250

Commerce Overview Gadget .....	250
Comment Approval Gadget .....	251
Comment Abuse Report Gadget .....	251
Commerce Settings for CMO Gadget .....	252
Adding the Commerce Settings for CMO Gadget .....	252
Editing Commerce Settings for the CMO Gadget .....	253
Deleting Commerce Settings for the CMO Gadget .....	253
Managing the Tag Cloud .....	253
Listing tag cloud items .....	254
Sorting the tag cloud list .....	254
Searching for a tag .....	255
Updating a tag .....	255
Deleting a tag .....	255
Personalization .....	255
Customer Properties Criteria .....	256
Order Frequency Criteria .....	256
Product in Cart or Wish List Criteria .....	256
Recent Orders Criteria .....	256
Total Spent Criteria .....	257
Rating and Commenting .....	257
Rating .....	257
Commenting .....	257
Abuse reporting of comments .....	258
Payment Options .....	258
Payment Options Available with the Sample Site .....	258
Payment Options Available as Separate Modules .....	258
PayPal Express Payment Provider .....	258
DIBS Credit Card Payment Services .....	259
Search Providers .....	261
Scheduled Job Clear Commerce Cache .....	262





# The EPiServer Commerce User Guide

---

EPiServer Commerce is based on EPiServer CMS for content management and the Commerce Manager module for managing online purchasing procedures. With EPiServer Commerce you can quickly build and deploy state-of-the-art online stores. It is tightly integrated with EPiServer CMS so that you can combine powerful content display with your online store management in the background. The EPiServer OnlineCenter provides easy access to both your web content through EPiServer CMS, and your online store through the Commerce Manager module.

This **User Guide** provides guidance to the usage of the various functions of EPiServer Commerce, both within web store administration as well as content management for your website. The purpose of the EPiServer Commerce sample site, which is described here, is to provide an example of how you can work with EPiServer Commerce, in order to get your web store up and running in as little time as possible.

To find out more about how to integrate, develop and extend the functionality of EPiServer Commerce, please refer to the *EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide*.



# About This Documentation

---

This documentation is intended for the target groups as described below.

- The **EPiServer Commerce User Guide**:
  - Content editors and system administrators working in EPiServer Commerce and EPiServer CMS.
  - Web shop administrators working with online store procedures in EPiServer Commerce and Commerce Manager.
- The **EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide**:
  - Developers working with development and customization of EPiServer Commerce sites.
  - System architects and others with an interest in the technical features of EPiServer Commerce.

This documentation describes features in EPiServer Commerce. The following documentation accessible from [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com), may be of use for reference purposes:

- User documentation for editors of EPiServer CMS.
- User documentation for administrators of EPiServer CMS.
- User documentation for EPiServer OnlineCenter.
- SDK for EPiServer CMS and the EPiServer Framework.

## Online Community on EPiServer World

*EPiServer World* is an online community where you can find the latest product information. It is open to the public, for partners, customers, and everyone working with EPiServer products, such as editors, webmasters, site owners and developers. Here you can download material, participate in discussions, read articles, receive support and much more. Feel free to sign up as a member.

## Copyright Notice

Copyright © 1996 — 2011 EPiServer AB. All rights reserved.

Changes to the contents, or partial copying of the contents, may not be done without permission. The document may be freely distributed in its entirety, either digitally or in printed format, to all users of EPiServer Software. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the content of this document. We reserve the right to alter functionality and technical system requirements. EPiServer is a registered trademark of *EPiServer AB*.

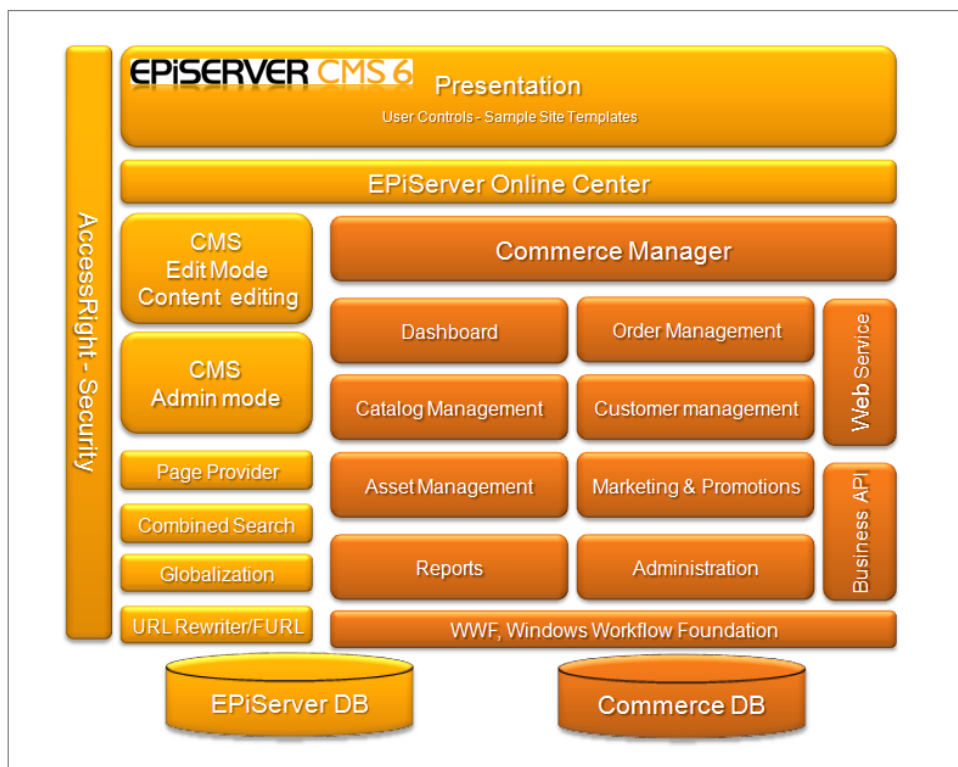
# The EPiServer Commerce Platform

EPiServer Commerce comes with a sample site including a complete set of page templates containing all the necessary functions for setting up a website with an online store. The purpose with the sample site is to exemplify and illustrate the code behind the templates, and to provide inspiration when building your own e-commerce solution.

The **Commerce Manager** module is closely integrated with **EPiServer CMS**. Editors and store administrators can work with the content as well as managing the online store administration using the same interface for easy access. The **EPiServer OnlineCenter** provides the overall frame for accessing the entire website and other systems integrated, as well as the personalized dashboard with gadgets for individual users.

## Overview

The foundation of the EPiServer Commerce platform is **EPiServer CMS** for presentation, and the **Commerce Manager** module for web store management with functionality for managing customers, products and orders. Customers can register an account on the website and manage their account details, as well as create their own personal wish lists. When a shopper is ready to finalize a purchase, the Commerce Manager will provide functionality for handling the checkout procedure with shipping and payment options and order confirmation.



## Functions and Page Templates

The functionality of an EPiServer CMS website is controlled by page templates. These are linked to page types, in which the editor enters the content of the web page. The functionality in the page template decides what will happen with the content and how it will be displayed. With the use of customized page

templates the various products and shopping activities can be displayed on the website, with information collected from the Commerce Manager module.

## Access Rights

Access rights control what editors and administrators can do and what visitors to the website can see. Access rights in EPiServer Commerce can be managed from the EPiServer CMS Admin and Edit mode, as well as from the Commerce Manager administration interface, depending on type of role and permissions.

## Editorial Content

Editors enter information into the page types, and the information is then stored in the EPiServer database. Generally the EPiServer Commerce specific sample templates contain few editor fields, since they are only used for display, and most of the functionality is built into the page templates.

## Store Administration

The online store is administered through the Commerce Manager user interface. Store administrators can easily access all the online store functions including customer, product and order management, as well as system configuration features. The Commerce Manager information is stored in the Commerce database.

## Terminology

In this section we will describe some of the specific terms used in e-commerce and EPiServer Commerce.

### Editorial Content

With editorial content we mean content that is created from inside the EPiServer CMS Edit mode, such as articles, news or other information pages. Compare this to content that is displayed as pages on the website, but where the content itself is data fetched from Commerce Manager. This type of data cannot be only be edited in Commerce Manager.

### Modes

You will work with EPiServer Commerce in different modes.

#### View mode

What will be displayed to visitors of the website.

#### Edit mode

Editors will work in the EPiServer CMS edit mode when creating and editing EPiServer CMS content pages of the website.

#### Admin mode

System administrators will work in the EPiServer CMS administration mode to modify system settings and access rights.

#### Commerce Manager interface

Store administrators will access the Commerce Manager interface to manage online store data and activities. The Commerce Manager interface can be reached either from inside the EPiServer OnlineCenter, or directly from View mode when right-clicking in a page.

## Roles

EPiServer Commerce has a number of different roles that are active in the editorial and online store management activities. These are described further in the following.

### Visitor

A visitor is someone using a web browser to visit the website and use available functions and services. A visitor can register an account and become a customer when purchasing a product. Customers can update information related to their personal account. In EPiServer Commerce, visitors use the same login procedure to the website as site administrators, without getting access to the back-end functions.

### Editor

The editor will work with website content from the EPiServer CMS Edit mode. Working with content here means create editorial content such as news, company related information, or articles on different subjects.

### Store Administrator

The store administrator works in the Commerce Manager interface, with information related to customers, orders and products. Store administrators may also work with configuration of the Commerce Manager system settings.

### System Administrator

The system administrator works with the administration of the entire EPiServer Commerce platform. This is done from the EPiServer CMS administration mode and involves setting access rights for pages, website language management and other tasks.

### Commerce Manager roles

The Commerce Manager module has its own set of user roles covering the different tasks that store administrators work with. These roles are described further in the *Commerce Manager section under Customer Management*.

## Commerce Manager Glossary

### Application Configuration

- **Shipping Gateways** - Under Shipping Providers, a shipping gateway is the specific class that you select (Generic Gateway or Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway).
- **Shipping Jurisdictions** - an option which allows you to define values for region-specific shipping rates; this is only used when you select the Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway (i.e. California).
- **Shipping Jurisdiction Groups** - group of jurisdictions; this is required because this is a required field when configuring the Shipping Method parameters (i.e. Southwest region).
- **Shipping Method** - A shipping method manages a set of information and rules that determines the shipping cost and displays it on the front-end public site while a customer checks out an item from his/her shopping basket. The shipping fee is added to the total price of the purchase. A shipping method is mapped to a shipping provider visible to a back-end administrator in Commerce Manager. This allows the public site to display friendly names such as "Ground Shipping" to the customer and this is mapped to a provider such as UPS. Therefore, when a customer picks "Ground Shipping," he/she will be using UPS.
- **Shipping Providers** - A shipping provider is the class(es) that interacts directly with one or more actual shipping services such as USPS, UPS, or FedEx. It retrieves shipping price information from the shipping service(s) its associated with. One typical scenario would be to have a provider that represents a particular service (e.g. USPS). A provider can also represent a particular type of



shipping situation. One example is that you could have a provider for overnight delivery. The provider could retrieve pricing for that service to determine the lowest price given the location of the customer. A provider could also represent other specific scenarios with one or more services such as price by weight or ground shipping.

### Business Foundation

- **Business Foundation Object (BF Object)** - Similar to a meta class; allows end users to create custom objects with UI presentation, business objects, and a database layer without modify code.
- **Bridge** - A "many to many" or N:N relationship between two business objects.
- **Extension** - this allows you to extend an existing meta class with extra properties. For example, you can have a download class and you can extend it with "imagedownload" which contains width and height as extra parameters.
- **Field Type** - The type of data that the data field supports. There are multiple types included with Commerce Manager out of the box:
  - Boolean
  - Currency
  - DateTime
  - Dictionary items
  - File
  - Guid
  - Integer
  - Referenced Field (read-only)
  - String
- **1 to Many Relationship** - 1 object can be associated or related with multiple object-related data. For example, one organization can be associated with multiple contracts.
- **Many to 1 Relationship** - Multiple object-related data can be associated or related with a single object. For example, multiple contacts can be related to a single organization.
- **Many to Many Relationship** - Multiple object-related data can be associated or related with multiple objects. For example, different SKUs (Store Keeping Unit) can be associated with one or more Warehouses for tracking and storage.

### Catalog Management

- **Assets** - downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products.
- **Associations** - one or more products can be related to or associated to another product so that these associated products can be displayed or advertised on the public site as a product accessory, or as an upselling/cross-selling item. Associations can be made from any of the individual products (Product Entries, SKUs, Bundles, Packages, and Dynamic Packages).
- **Catalog** - a catalog is a top-level container for all catalog entries such as Categories, Products and SKUs.
- **Category** - a category is a grouping of purchasable products.
- **Node** - a node is the same thing as a category.
  - **Product** - a product represents various forms of merchandise that you can display and purchase from the public site, including Products, Variations/SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.

- **Product Entry** - a product entry typically contains a product name, part number, description and images.
- **Variation/SKU** - a variation or SKU (Store Keeping Unit) corresponds to a specific type of product with specific characteristics. For example, a product of Shirts will have an individual variation/SKU which includes size, color and sleeve length.
- **Bundle** - a bundle is a collection of variations and SKUs allowing customers to purchase two or more items at once.
- **Package** - a package is comparable to an individual SKU because the package item must be purchased as a whole (i.e. computer system).
- **Dynamic Package** - a dynamic package is similar to the package definition above with the added ability to configure the package during checkout.
- **Tax Category** - this separation of taxes by category allows you to charge a different rate of taxes depending on what is being purchased; for example, you can have one rate for "General Sales" items and another rate for "Luxury Sales" items.

### Customer Management

- **Account** - a user account that can be created under a Contact. Once an Account has been created, the Contact can be assigned Roles and access the Commerce Manager. A user account is automatically created for a user who registers from the front-end public website which allows a customer to login prior to checking out. They default to the "Everyone" and "Registered" roles and permissions.
- **Contacts** - these are users that are created either when an external customer registers on the public site or when a Commerce Manager admin creates them directly from the Commerce Manager; typically, users that are internal to your organization are assigned to organizations or organization units and assigned varying permissions based on role. By default, new users that are created by registering from the public site are given the "Registered" and "Everyone" roles.
- **Organizations** (or organization units) - groups or sub-groups of registered users and customers. An organizational unit is a "child" or subsidiary of a "parent" organization. Within Commerce Manager, you can assign an organization as a parent of another organization. For example, the parent company Company X, and the organizational units are Company X West and Company X East. Organization units include regional branches or departments or you could name them by business categories such as "Computer and Electronics" or "Clothing and Accessories." Organizations can be structured into a tree structure with sub-units with different levels of permissions assigned to each. So for example, you can set up your company as a parent level organization while your departments such as Sales & Marketing, IT/Development, and Operations as organization units. With this scenario, you can allow users in each departments to have access to only relevant sub-systems, screens and functionality within Commerce Manager.
- **Roles** - these control the level of access privileges of each user account in Commerce Manager. Users can be either granted or restricted access to an entire subsystem or a particular menu item within a subsystem based on the role assigned to them. Different roles may be added to user accounts (i.g., store operator or webmaster) so that they can access, edit, or process relevant information. By default, a customer who registered his/her account to make a purchase in the front-end site will have no roles assigned to them, hence giving him/her preventing access to both the editing feature of the front-end site as well as the back-end Commerce Manager.

### Marketing

- **Campaigns** - a way to organize marketing activities. Campaigns must be associated with Promotions in order to provide customer discounts. Optionally, Campaigns can also be tied to

Customer Segments for targeted marketing purposes.

- For example, you can create a seasonal campaign that will include different Promotions targeted for the Spring season.
- **Customer Segments** - these determine the target audience for the Promotions. Customer Segments determine the target audience for the Promotions. Within a Campaign, all Promotions will be applied to whatever Customer Segments associated with the same Campaign. Members of the Customer Segments can be pre-defined in static groups or you can use the Expressions Engine to create dynamic groups whenever Promotions are run.
  - For example, you can have a Customer Segment that targets all users from the Los Angeles area. You can create an Expression that will include all the customers whose home city is Los Angeles. Thus, when a user registers on the site he immediately becomes part of the target Customer Segment.
- **Expressions** - these are customizable Conditions which allow users to extend different aspects of the Marketing system -- Promotions, Customer Segments and Policies all rely on Expressions. There is an Expressions Engine which is a core technology behind the Marketing system.
  - For example, you want to set a Promotion for "40% off Item X." The Expression or Condition to enable this Promotion would include: Catalog ID for Item X and Reward of 40%.
- **Policies** - rules that are always executed when Promotions are applied. This allows a Marketing manager to declare rules just once for the whole site.
  - An example of a rule is as follows: Do not allow negative orders.
- **Promotions** - a way to apply various discounts to the products, order totals or shipping. A Promotion is a marketing tool used to increase sales of certain products or product lines. Various incentives such as lowered pricing and other discounts can be employed as part of a Promotion.
  - Promotions are always tied to Campaigns.
  - Promotions can be classified into two types: 1) either you can create a Promotion that is visible prior to checkout or 2) you can configure the Promotion to be displayed during the checkout process.
  - The most powerful aspect of the Marketing system is the Expression Engine which allows variable conditions to be applied when creating a Promotion. These conditions vary from the number of items, the percentage discount, shipping rates and many others.

## Order Management

- **Browsing and Creating Purchase Orders**
  - **Purchase Orders** - the manual method of generating an order for a customer (rather than having the customer checkout and complete an order from the front-end website). It allows Commerce Manager users to generate orders directly from the Commerce Manager.
  - **Status** - set to "NewOrder," "Submitted," "Processing," "Canceled," "Rejected," "Shipped".
  - **Currency** - select a Currency type from the drop-down menu.
  - **Customer** - select a Customer from the drop-down list of Contacts.
  - **Billing Address** - select a Billing Address from the drop-down menu.
  - **Affiliate** - select an Affiliate from the drop-down list. (Affiliates can be used when integrating with other systems and can only be edited in the database. Users do not have Commerce Manager access for managing Affiliates).
  - **Tracking Number** - enter in a Tracking Number of the shipment.

- **Expiration Date** - enter in an Expiration Date for the order if this order is tied to a recurring payment plan for subscription-based transactions.
- **Parent Order Id** - this can be used to relate Purchase Orders to a payment plan or other order. When creating a Purchase Order from a Recurring Payment Plan, the Parent Order ID is automatically associated with the Payment Plan ID.
- **Line Items** - you can associate actual Products/SKUs/Packages/Bundles to orders or Purchase Orders.
  - **ID** - it is automatically generated.
  - **Display Name** - this can be edited and changed.
  - **List Price** - enter in the price that will appear for the item.
  - **Discount** - enter is the Discount value that will subtract from the List Price.
  - **Shipping Address** - This is automatically generated if a Shipping Address has already been associated with the Purchase Order.
  - **Shipping Method** - This is automatically generated if a Shipping Address has already been associated with the Purchase Order.
- **Creating a Recurring Payment Plan**
  - **Recurring Payment Plans** - payments that are initiated by the Commerce Manager on a regular cycle (i.e. applicable in a subscription-based scenario).
  - **Plan Cycle** - this determines the period of time that a payment plan will be initiated. Options include: "No Cycle," "Daily Cycle," "Weekly Cycle," "Monthly Cycle," "Yearly Cycle."
  - **Cycle Length** - Unit of the PlanCycle.
  - **Max Cycle** - the maximum number of cycles that this payment plan will be initiated.
  - **Completed Cycles** - this value displays the number of times that this payment plan has been initiated.

## Reporting

- **Best Sellers Report** this report is used to determine which products sold the most in terms of quantity and total revenue over a period of time.
- **Low Stock Report** - this report is used to determine which products are running low in inventory. If a product's inventory is less than its reorder minimum quantity, it will be included in this report.
- **Sales Report** - this report provides an overview of a site's sales performance over a period of time.
- **Shipping Report** - this report provides the shipping method, number of orders and total shipping cost over a period of time.

## Prerequisites

This documentation is intended for website editors, and store and system administrators. The documentation describes a **sample installation** based on EPiServer CMS and the sample template package of EPiServer Commerce. Please be aware that your specific system may differ from what is described here, since your website is most likely customized and may be integrated with additional products.



In order for EPiServer Commerce to work properly, it is essential that you are using the specific language culture setting "UI Culture" (ASP.NET) on your website (i.e. "en-US", "en-GB", "nl-BE" etc.). This is crucial in order for the different languages to display correctly on the site. Make sure this is set up correctly from the start to avoid problems later on. Find out more about this topic in the *Globalization* section.

In this documentation you will learn about specific functions and features of the EPiServer Commerce sample site and templates. Prior knowledge of EPiServer CMS and e-commerce procedures is required to fully understand what is described. To find out more about other EPiServer products such as EPiServer CMS, please refer to the documentation for each specific product available on [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com).

# Getting Started

In the following sections we will describe how you can access, log on to and navigate an EPiServer Commerce website. Note that the logon procedures may be slightly different from what is described here, depending on how your website and infrastructure is set up.

## Logging on to the Website

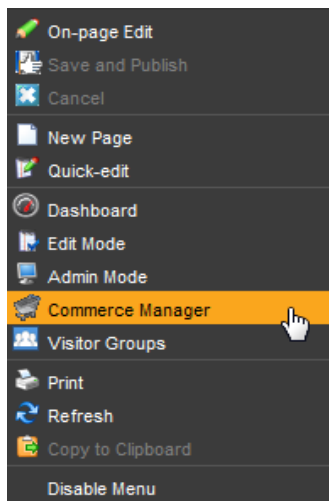
To access the website, open a web browser and enter the address of the website. Most often, Commerce Manager is accessed through the front-end of the EPiServer CMS site. There are different ways of logging on as an editor or administrator of an EPiServer Commerce site. Often you add a path such as "epi/ui/edit" or "epi/ui/admin" to the URL of your website, or there might be a login link as for the EPiServer Commerce sample site.

On the EPiServer Commerce sample site, clicking on **Log in** in the top menu will take you to the login page of the website. Enter your user name and password, and click **Log In**. Note that this login page is the same for both customers logging on to their account, as well as for web editors and store administrators logging on to work with content or administer the online store parts. What you are allowed to do after logging on to the website depends on your access rights.

## Accessing the Different Modes

When you are logged on to your EPiServer Commerce website, right-clicking on a page will display a menu with a number of options. What you see here depends on your access rights, here we assume that you have full permission to the different parts.

From the EPiServer right-click menu you can directly access the **Commerce Manager** module of EPiServer Commerce. Choosing this option will take you directly to the Commerce Manager administration interface. Selecting the **Edit** or **Admin** mode will take you to the EPiServer CMS editor or administration interface. If you select **Dashboard** you will be taken to the Dashboard of the EPiServer OnlineCenter.



For the other options available, please refer to the EpiServer CMS user documentation.

## Logging on to Commerce Manager

You can access Commerce Manager through right-clicking in View mode after logging in to the website, and then select **Commerce Manager** in the right-click menu. You can also select **Commerce** in the top menu when you are in the EpiServer Online Center or from the EpiServer CMS Edit mode.



You may be required to provide your logon credentials once more when accessing the Commerce Manager module. When you log on you will be taken to the **Commerce Manager Dashboard Home** page.

## Navigation

EpiServer Commerce has an intuitive navigation. When logged on to EpiServer Commerce, use the right-click menu to go directly to the **Commerce Manager** interface to work with web store back-end procedures. Or, choose the **EpiServer CMS Edit or Admin mode** to work with content management or system administrative tasks. See also *Accessing the different modes*.

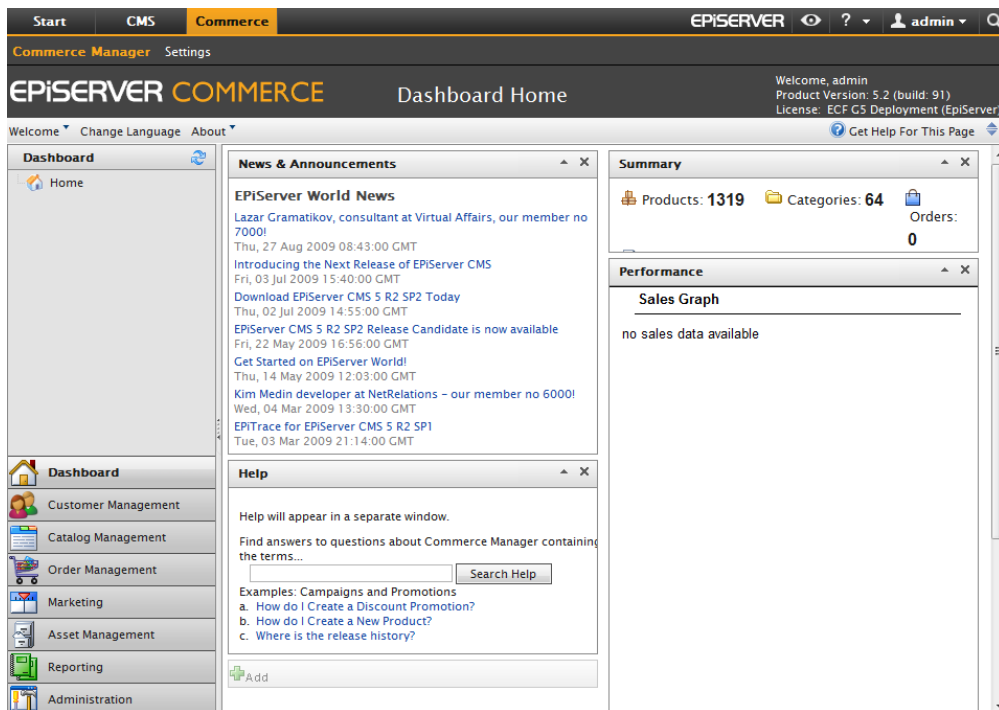
### Navigating Commerce Manager

Once you first login to Commerce Manager, you are directed to the Dashboard homepage.

- The Dashboard has Controls showing various information, including **Alerts, News & Announcements, Help**, and a **Summary**.
- More Controls can be added by clicking on **Add**.
- On the left is the Left Menu or Navigation iframe where users can switch between Commerce Manager systems and navigate a folder trees of options.
- On the top-right, you can see your login name, product version, and installed license.
- By clicking on the top-left header, you will be directed back to the front-end site.
- On the menu bar below header, there are additional options available to the user.
  - By clicking **Welcome**, you can adjust your **Settings, Sign In As a Different User**, or **Sign Out of Commerce Manager**. You can also change the language used to a different one if your Commerce Manager is configured for multiple languages.
  - By clicking **About**, you can **Send Feedback** using a form, get information on the **Database Schema** for support purposes, and open up our **Online Help** repository.



- On the right side of the menu bar, you can click on **Get Help For this Page** to get help on a specific page you are in, such as the **Catalog Edit page** under **Catalog Management**.
- Right next to the **Get Help For This Page** button is an **Up-Down Arrow**, which allows you to hide or unhide the header above the menu bar to save screen space.



## Other Basic UI and Navigation Elements

- The Dashboard Controls can be collapsed, rearranged, and closed by clicking on the **Arrow** button, clicking on the **X** button, and click-dragging the title bar, respectively.
- There are tabs below the left navigation frame that corresponding to a specific system of the Commerce Manager. Clicking on each button results in a change of the top side menu.
- A common navigational model is the hierarchical folder/node structure.
- Some systems, such as Customer Management, do not have collapsible nodes. Instead, you click directly on the menu options to access its contents.

## Working Procedures

There are many different types of e-commerce websites, however the two most common ones are:

- **Business-to-Consumer (B2C)** - typically designed for selling goods and services to consumers.
- **Business-to-Business (B2B)** - used to build strategic relationships with other businesses, and to ease the supply and procurement processes that characterize trade among those organizations.

Sites can also have multiple roles, and a single EPiServer Commerce site can provide several functions.

Working with EPiServer Commerce involves various tasks and roles using different parts of the system. In the following we will describe the tasks involved when working with the different parts of EPiServer Commerce:

- **EPiServer OnlineCenter** - for monitoring website activities.
- **EPiServer CMS** - for managing and displaying content on the website.
- **Commerce Manager** - for administration of back-end online store tasks.

Depending on how you choose to work with editorial content and your online store administration, you will define your user roles and groups, and give them access rights to the different parts. Example of user roles in EPiServer Commerce are content editors, marketers, business owners, and store and system administrators.

## EPiServer OnlineCenter

All users of EPiServer CMS and Commerce Manager, including business and website owners, can use EPiServer OnlineCenter to get an overview of the website and activities of interest. Through the usage of customized gadgets on the personalized dashboard, you can create your own website workspace. The OnlineCenter also has a global search function where you can search for topics in both pages and files on the entire website.

## EPiServer CMS

In EPiServer CMS you will work with your editorial content, just as you would with any website. The different tasks are done in the EPiServer CMS Edit and Admin modes.

### Edit mode

Web editors will work inside the EPiServer CMS editorial interface to update content of web pages. Perhaps you want to create news or article content related to the products in your online store. This is most typically done by web editors creating EPiServer CMS pages. The EPiServer Commerce page types in the sample site do not require much editorial work, since most of these are only for display purposes fetching data from elsewhere. Some editorial efforts are often needed on content pages such as news listings, privacy and shopping policies and similar.

### Admin mode

The EPiServer administration interface is where you will manage the administrative tasks for the website. These may involve setting access rights for EPiServer CMS web pages in the page tree structure, configuration of page types, management of scheduled jobs, and globalization settings.

## Commerce Manager

This section describes the most common tasks for users including business managers, marketing staff, UI staff and IT professionals. For your convenience, these tasks have been categorized by functional area.

### System Administration and Configuration

System Administration includes various configuration tasks such as setting up shipping and payment gateways, your default language, currency, units, tax configuration, licensing, and search settings.

- *System Administration*

### Administrative Users and Customers

Users and customers are managed by the Customer Management system. Users are internal to your organization and should not be confused with customers, partners and organizations. Generally, only your team of internal users will have access to the Commerce Manager and depending on their permissions will have varying access to the systems and menu items within each system.

- *Customer Management*

### Catalogs and Product Entries

An Commerce Manager front-end site allows customers to shop for products. Products are arranged into a particular catalog. Catalogs are independent from one another and you may create as many catalogs as you need. Catalogs can be structured in a number of ways and organized into Categories, Products, SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.

The Catalog Management system provides users with the ability to manage catalogs, product categories and products. A default B2C Sample Site along with a default electronics catalog (consisting of a Brands catalog + Everything catalog) is included giving you a running demo site after you run the installer.

- *Catalog Management*

#### **Purchase Orders, Shopping Carts, Shipping, and Returns/Exchanges**

The Order Management system is where you can monitor, track, change or create new orders, ship out items, and create returns/exchanges. Orders are highly flexible, giving internal Commerce Manager users the ability to create Purchase Orders with various options including split payments, split shipping, and split shipping addresses.

- *Order Management*

#### **Customer Campaigns, Promotions, and Discounts**

One area handled by the Marketing system is promotions. A Promotion is a marketing tool used to increase sales of certain products or product lines. Various incentives such as lowered pricing and other discounts can be employed as part of a promotion.

Promotions can be classified into two types: either you can create a promotion that is visible prior to check-out or you can configure the promotion to be displayed during the checkout process. The most powerful aspect of the Marketing system is the Workflow Engine which allows variable conditions to be applied when creating a Promotion. These conditions vary from the number of items, the percentage discount, shipping rates and many others.

Creating custom promotions is incredibly powerful; users have many ways in which to configure promotions based on their needs.

Marketing teams also have the ability to target specific customer segments by region, individual customers or customer groups.

- *Marketing*

#### **Assets and Web Files**

The Asset Management system allows for Assets including images, mp3s, pdfs, software packages and other downloadable files to be centrally stored, displayed on either the public site or the Commerce Manager site and ultimately to be shared or purchased.

- *Asset Management*

# User Access and Roles

By default, EPiServer Commerce uses a customized role and membership provider where groups and users are stored in the Commerce Manager database. The information is then shared between EPiServer CMS and Commerce Manager. This means that the same users and groups will be available both from the EPiServer CMS Admin mode as well as from Commerce Manager under Customer Management. Both website administrators and customers registering on the e-commerce site will be managed by the same provider and the user account information will be saved in the same place.

Most of the user and group/role management for the e-commerce part will be done from Commerce Manager. This includes managing user accounts and adding roles to users (contacts). When you need to set access rights for editorial content management in the page tree of the website, this will be done from the EPiServer CMS Admin mode.

The EPiServer Commerce sample site has a number of predefined users and groups (roles), both for managing editorial content as well as for administering the e-commerce tasks. Remember that these users and groups are only examples of how you can set up access rights for your website.

## User Access from Commerce Manager

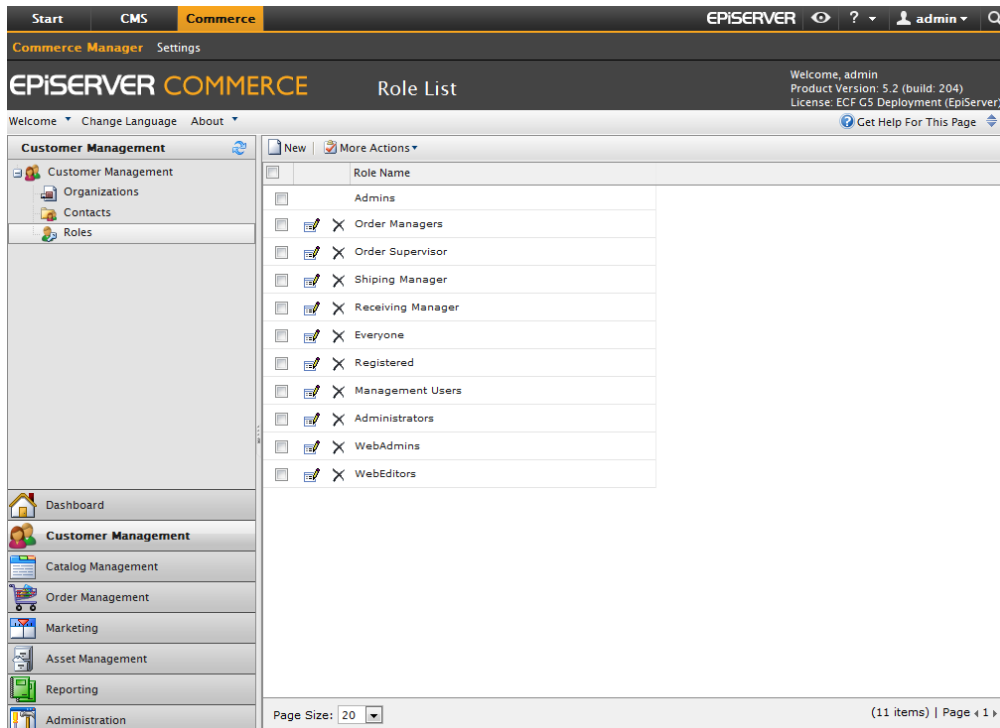
Managing users and roles for store administrators is done from Commerce Manager under the **Customer Management** sub-system. EPiServer Commerce is built with flexibility in mind for structuring internal teams and departments as well as external organizations, partners and customers. The Customer Management system allows for creating users and groups with either **pre-configured Roles** or **custom Roles** which control access to different systems or individual elements within a system.

When you install EPiServer Commerce, you are provided with an **administration account**. This account is given full privileges, meaning it is full access to all systems and all elements within each system. Additional accounts used by your internal team to access Commerce Manager must have one or more **Roles** assigned to them. A role can be for instance "Catalog Viewers", "Marketing Admins" or "Asset Managers".



Commerce Manager users are **internal** to your organization and should not be confused with customers. By default, customers who register from your public site are given the "Everyone" and "Registered" Roles, but these roles do **not** allow access to Commerce Manager.

A standard installation of the EPiServer Commerce sample site has a number of predefined roles. These roles are based on common e-commerce working procedures and provides a suggestion to how you can work with the system.



Each role is associated with a range of permissions on different levels, related to the various parts of the Commerce Manager system.

The following roles are available by default, with a set of permissions for each role:

- **Admins** - default role allowing to fully administer most areas of the Commerce Manager.
- **Order Managers** - this role can create returns and exchanges, view and edit orders, send notifications, process payments and split shipments. You can also allow order managers to manage discounts and/or change the line item price.
- **Order Supervisors** - this role has full permissions for the entire order management procedure, including the entire Order Managers permissions.
- **Shipping Manager** - this role allows for viewing, packing and completing shipments.
- **Receiving Manager** - this role can view shipments and receive returns.
- **Everyone** - assigned when a customer registers an account from the front-end public site.
- **Registered** - assigned when you register from an Account from the front-end public site.
- **Management Users** - this role allows users access to Commerce Manager.
- **Administrators** - this role has extensive administration rights in areas such as assets, catalogs, core functions, marketing and customer and order management.
- **WebAdmins** - this role is EPiServer CMS specific and provides access to the EPiServer CMS **administration** interface, needed when administering the content management parts of EPiServer Commerce.
- **WebEditors** - this role is EPiServer CMS specific and provides access to the EPiServer CMS **editing** interface, needed when working with content on the EPiServer Commerce website.

You can change the detailed permissions for each of these roles, as well as define your own roles and set permissions, all in order to match the specific working procedures in your organization.

## User Access from EPiServer CMS

You will need to access the EPiServer CMS Admin mode to manage access rights for content editors. In the EPiServer CMS Admin mode, you will be able to view all users and user groups under **Search User/Groups**.

Setting access rights for editorial content and the page tree structure is done from the **Set access rights** section, just as you normally do in EPiServer CMS.

In EPiServer CMS, there are the following **default** roles:

- **Everyone** - an anonymous visitor browsing to your website. Can only access the View mode of the website.
- **WebAdmins** - membership in this group provides access to the EPiServer CMS **administration** interface.
- **WebEditors** - membership in this group provides access to the EPiServer CMS **editing** interface.

Please refer to the EPiServer CMS administration documentation on [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com), for more information on how to work with access rights for editorial content.

The screenshot displays the EPiServer CMS Admin interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Start', 'CMS', and 'Commerce' tabs. Below this, the 'Admin Mode' is selected. The left sidebar contains several navigation menus: 'System Administration' (Delete Unused Files, Edit Categories), 'Access Rights' (Set Access Rights, Administer Groups, Search User/Group, Create User), 'Scheduled Jobs' (Publish Delayed Page Versions, Subscription, Automatic Emptying of Recycle Bin, Clear Commerce Cache, Archive Function, Link Validation, Mirroring Service, Remove Permanent Editing, Change Log Auto Truncate, Remove Autosaved Page Drafts), and 'Tools' (Export Data, Import Data, File Management, Content Channels, Workflows). The main content area is titled 'Search Users/Groups'. It features a search form with a 'Type' dropdown set to 'Groups', a 'Name' input field, and a 'Number of hits per page' set to 20. A 'Search' button is located below the form. Below the search form is a table with two columns: 'Name' and 'Provider'. The table lists the following groups and providers:

Name	Provider
Administrators	CMSRoleProvider
Admins	CMSRoleProvider
Everyone	CMSRoleProvider
Management Users	CMSRoleProvider
Order Manager	CMSRoleProvider
Order Supervisor	CMSRoleProvider
Receiving Manager	CMSRoleProvider
Registered	CMSRoleProvider
Shipping Manager	CMSRoleProvider
WebAdmins	CMSRoleProvider
WebEditors	CMSRoleProvider

At the bottom of the page, a footer indicates 'Product licensed to EPiServer AB Dung Le'.

As with any EPiServer CMS website, you can work with role and membership providers from Windows or SQL, or both using the multiplexing setting. You can also build your own user and membership provider to be used with EPiServer Commerce. Find out more about membership and role provide management in the documentation for EPiServer CMS on [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com).

# Globalization

With "globalization" we mean the possibility to **display content** in different languages to website visitor groups with different language preferences. When a visitor to the website selects a language option, the content for that language will be displayed. If content doesn't exist in a selected language, a fallback procedure may be applied if this has been configured. Another dimension of globalization is the possibility for users to select different language options for the **user interface** inside EPiServer Commerce.

Find out more about globalization and language management in general on a website in the documentation for EPiServer CMS on [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com). In this section we will describe in more detail how you work with the different language settings in EPiServer Commerce.

## Working With Language Settings

### Specific Language Settings

In EPiServer CMS there are three different language concepts, two which are defined by ASP.NET (Culture and UI Culture), and one which is the EPiServer content language. The ASP.NET Culture is referred to as "System Language", and UI Culture as "User Interface Language". A typical culture is "en-US" which defines the language as English (en) with the culturally defined specifics for United States (US).



In EPiServer Commerce, "UI Culture" is used and "English (United States)" is the default language used by the system. This is due to the Commerce Manager database which uses "UI culture" in the matching. In order for EPiServer Commerce to work properly, it is therefore essential that you are using the "UI Culture" setting on your website to make the different languages display correctly.

Make sure this is set up right from the start to avoid problems later on. It is recommended that only "UI Culture" languages, i.e. "en-US", "en-GB", "nl-BE" etc., are enabled on the website.

### Content Language

To display content in the desired language on your EPiServer Commerce website, you may apply the language management options available in EPiServer CMS Edit mode, to create pages in different languages. Available languages for CMS pages are enabled from the EPiServer CMS Admin mode under **Config** and **Manage Website Languages**. For more detailed information on how the language settings work, please refer to the user documentation for EPiServer CMS.



**Manage Website Languages**

Define the languages that should be available to visitors on your website.

[Add Language](#)

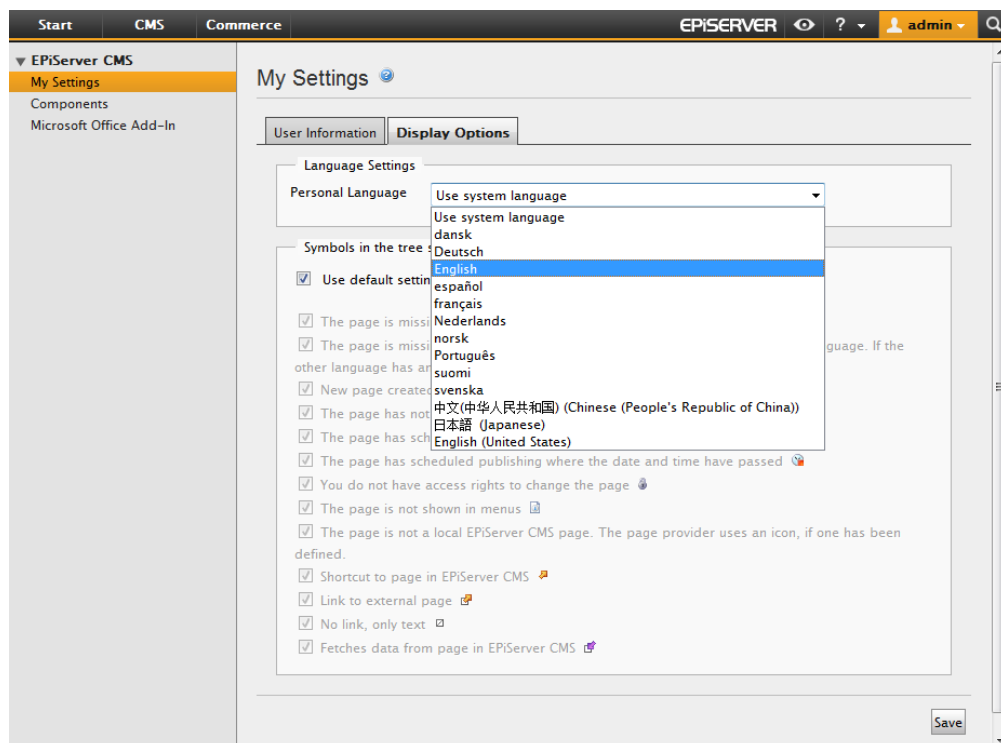
Move Up	Move Down	Name	Language Code	Enabled	System Icon	Template Icon
↓	↓	English	en	✓		
↑	↓	English (United Kingdom)	en-GB			
↑	↓	English (New Zealand)	en-NZ			
↑	↓	English (South Africa)	en-ZA			
↑	↓	Deutsch	de			
↑	↓	français	fr			
↑	↓	español	es			
↑	↓	svenska	sv	✓		
↑	↓	norsk	no			
↑	↓	dansk	da			
↑	↓	suomi	fi			
↑	↓	Nederlands	nl			
↑	↓	Nederlands (Belgie)	nl-BE			
↑	↓	Português (Brasil)	pt-BR			
↑	↓	English (United States)	en-US	✓		
↑	↓	Deutsch (Deutschland)	de-DE	✓		
↑		español (España)	es-ES	✓		

## Languages for Product Catalogs

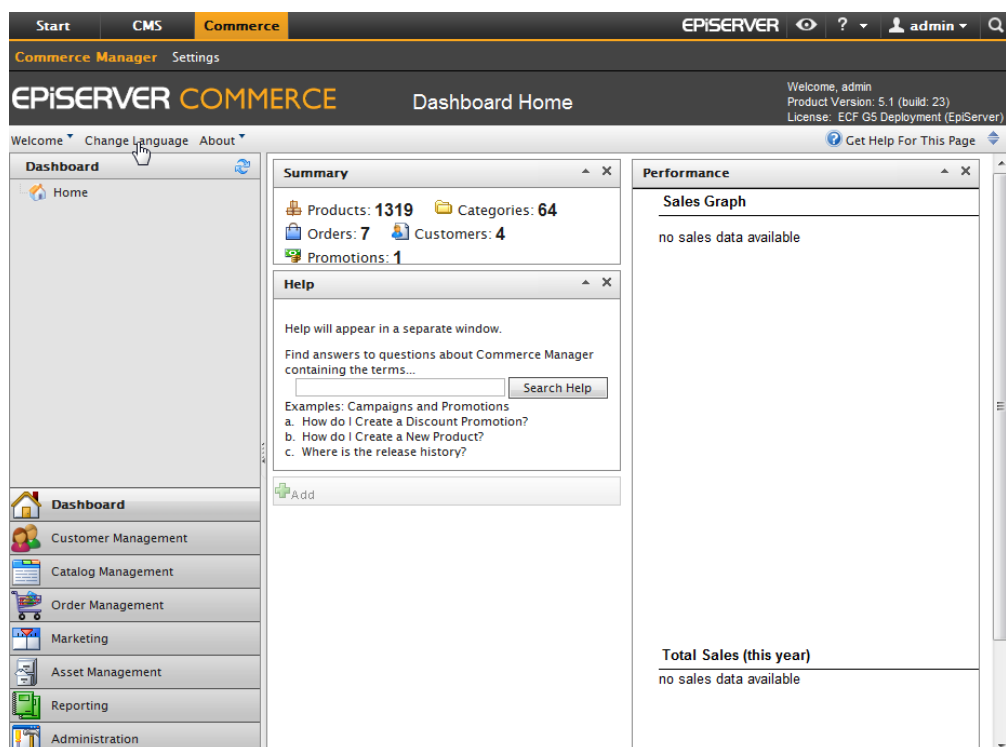
For products in the product catalog, the language information is set in the product database. EPiServer Commerce will display the product information in the language selected by the website visitor. Languages for the content of a product catalog is set when you create the product catalog. Find out more about this under Create a Catalog in the *Catalog Management* section.

## User Interface Language

To set the user interface language from **EPiServer CMS**, click your **user profile name** in the upper right corner. Select **My Settings** and then the **Display Options** tab. Select the language of your choice in the list, and click **Save**. Note that you may need to refresh the browser window for the changes to apply.



To set the user interface language from **Commerce Manager**, select **Change Language** in the upper menu of Commerce Manager. Choose the language of your choice in the list and click **OK** to save your changes.



# File Management

In EPiServer Commerce, there are two places to store content files (assets):

- In the **File Manager** of EPiServer CMS.
- In the **Asset Management** sub-system of Commerce Manager in EPiServer Commerce.

However, files can be managed entirely from the File Manager in EPiServer CMS. Using the Virtual Path Provider (VPP) technique, the two storage areas are "synchronized" meaning that when you create folders and add files in one place, the same content will be available in the other location. Assets can be created, updated, moved and deleted from the File Manager, and changes will be reflected in the Asset Manager as well.

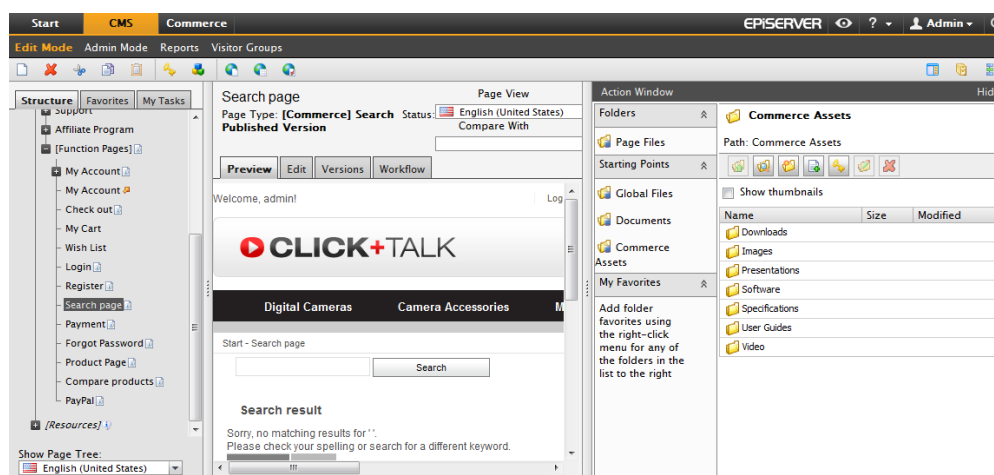
When installing the EPiServer Commerce sample site, the Asset Management sub-system will be automatically configured and available in the File Manager as the **Commerce Assets** starting point. In the following we will briefly describe how files are managed in EPiServer Commerce.

## Working With File Management

### Working with the File Manager

Files such as images and documents, that are used in the editorial parts of the sample website, are stored in the File Manager of EPiServer CMS, just as for any other EPiServer CMS site. With editorial content, we hereby mean web pages with content that is created from the EPiServer CMS Edit mode. For instance, this could be a news section with news items, or articles related to products on the e-commerce website.

The Asset Manager sub-system is made available in the File Manager of the sample site as the **Commerce Assets** starting point, making it possible to work with all files on the website in one place.

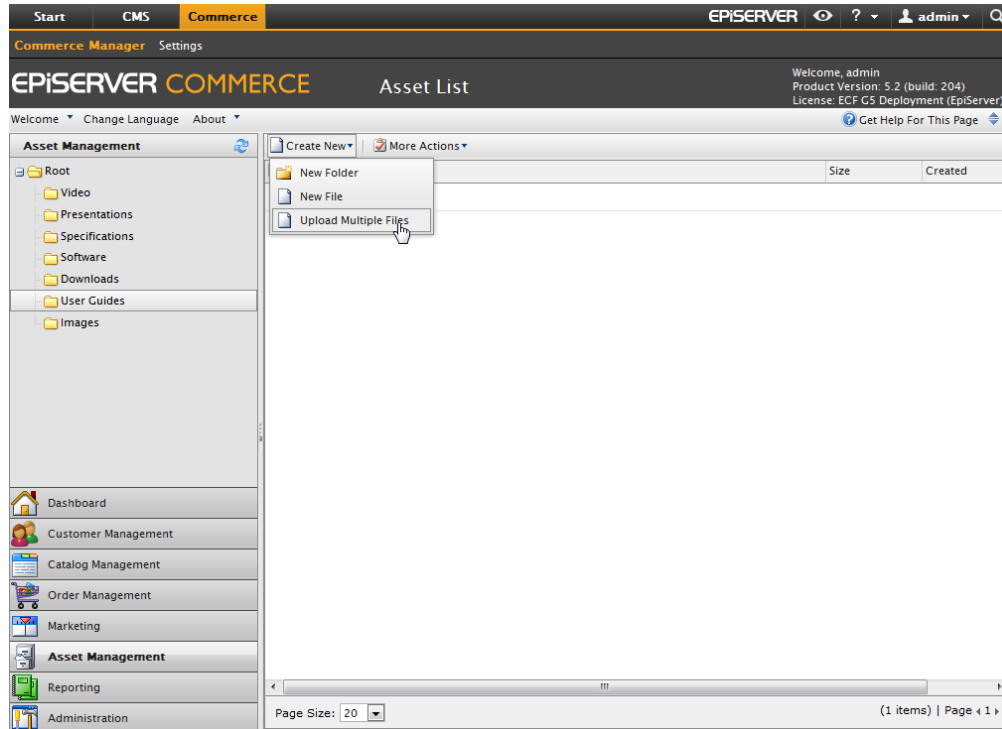


You work with folders and files in the Commerce Assets folder structure just as you do with other parts of the File Manager. You can copy and move folders from Commerce Assets to other starting points such as **Global Files**. However you cannot move or copy folders and files from other starting points to Commerce Assets, since versioning is not supported. Also, metadata is not supported for the files under Commerce Assets structure, so these fields need not to be filled in when adding new files to the structure.

To find out more about general file management in EPiServer CMS, please refer to the EPiServer CMS user documentation.

## Working with the Asset Manager

Files can also be managed from the Asset Management sub-system in Commerce Manager. The Asset Manager folder structure can be used for storing documents related to products in the product catalog. This can be for instance user guides, software downloads or product sheets. Each asset file can then be related to a product in the product catalog.



For more information about asset management, please refer to the *Asset Management* section.



Product images in the EPiServer Commerce sample site are stored in the database, and thus are not available from the File Manager or the Asset Management sub-system.

## File Formats

Files stored in EPiServer Commerce are often image files in different formats such as .jpg or .png, or documents in .pdf formats. However, files stored in EPiServer Commerce can be of almost any type since a wide selection of file formats are supported. Depending on how your website is configured, files will also be indexed and appear in the global search for the website.

# Commerce Manager

This section explains how end users can administer the EPiServer Commerce site by logging into the back-end Commerce Manager module. Commerce Manager includes a number of sub-systems for managing the different parts of an online store.

## Dashboard

The Dashboard is an aggregated view of a site's status. Typically, the **Dashboard > Home** is the first screen seen that a user sees when he/she logs into Commerce Manager. This is the area that a user can get a quick overall snapshot of his ecommerce site, including notifications and alerts, an overall summary of products, categories, orders, customers, and promotions, sales performance graphs, customizable news and announcements, and a search field for help.

## Customizing the Dashboard

The user can customize the Dashboard by re-arranging the layout of the Controls, remove or add Controls, or adjust the page template. The five Controls available are: **Help**, **Summary**, **News & Announcements**, **Alerts**, and **Performance**.

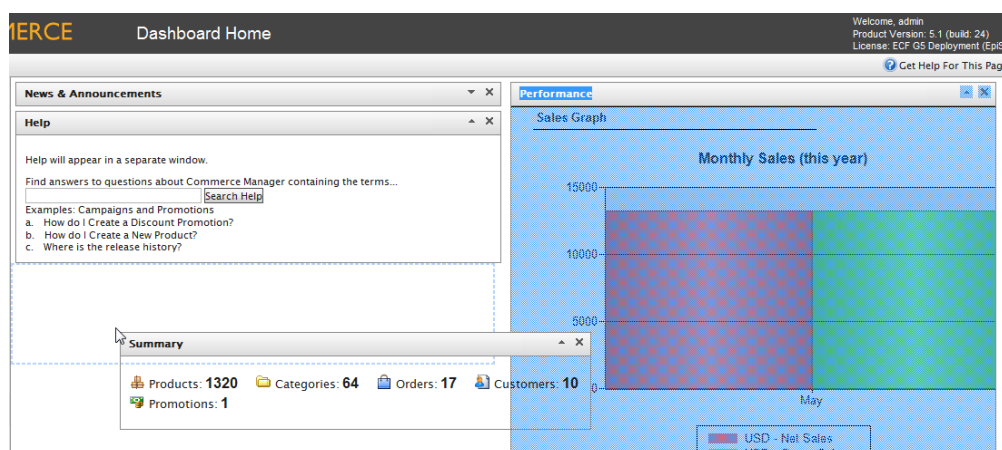
To access the Dashboard, click on **Dashboard > Home** from the left navigation frame.

Users have five controls out of the box:

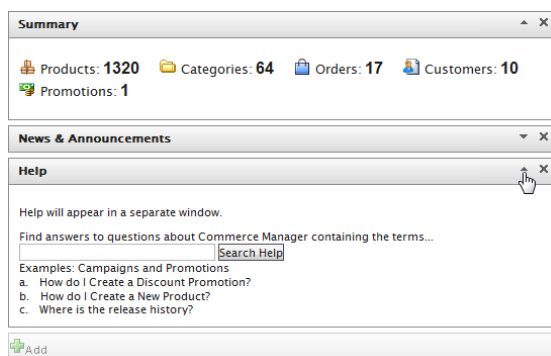
- The **Help** control allows users to search for help topics that links directly to the EPiServer Commerce documentation site.
- The **Summary** control displays the total number of **Products**, **Categories**, **Orders**, **Customers**, and **Promotions**.
- The **News & Announcements** control displays a feed of the latest articles from a selected source.
- The **Alerts** control displays warnings about each site that may hinder performance and sales, such as the lack of site analytics installed on the site
- The **Performance** control displays a **Sales Graph** and a graph for the **Total Sales** of the year.

## Rearranging, Collapsing, and Removing Controls

To rearrange Controls, hover the mouse cursor over the title bar and drag the Control to another "space" in the Dashboard.



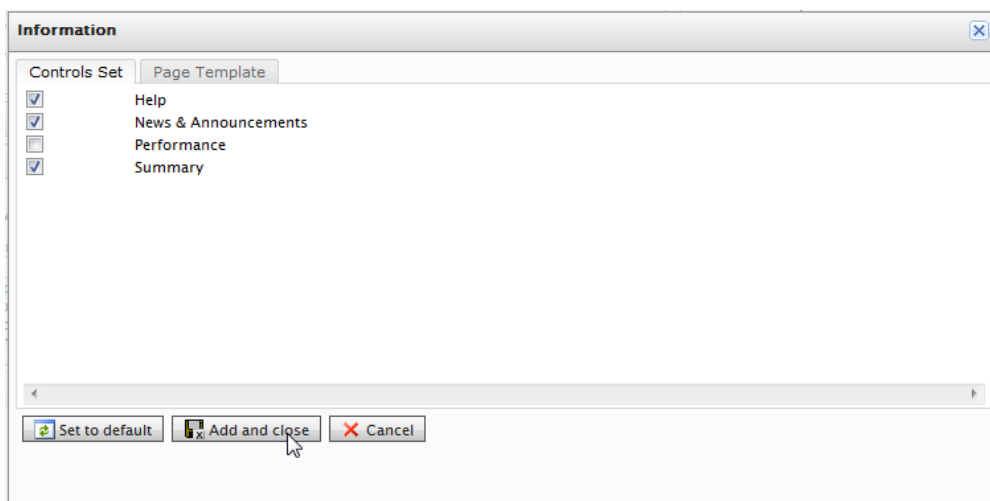
To collapse Controls, click on the **Up-arrow** icon. To expand a collapsed Control, click on the **Down-arrow**.



To remove a Control, click on the **X** icon.

### Adding Controls and Adjusting the Page Template

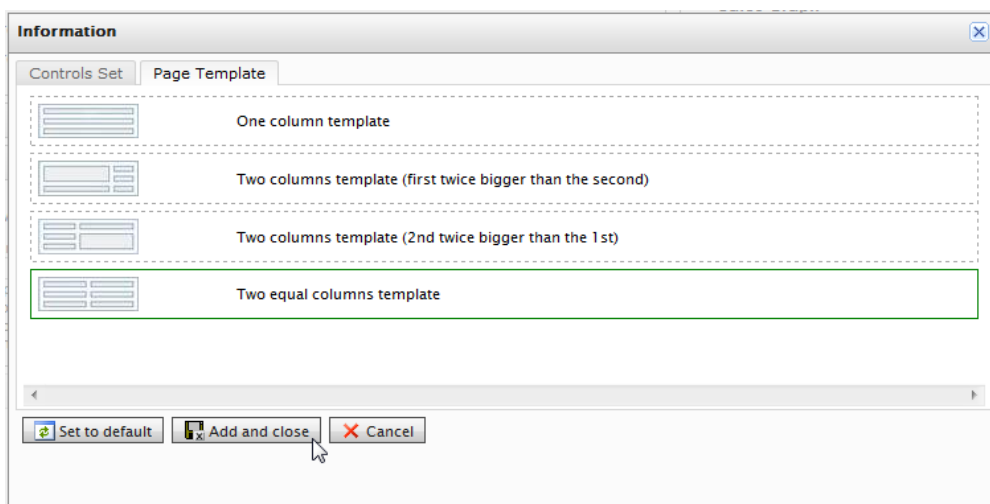
Click on **Add** on the Dashboard page. The **Information** form pops up above the Dashboard page.



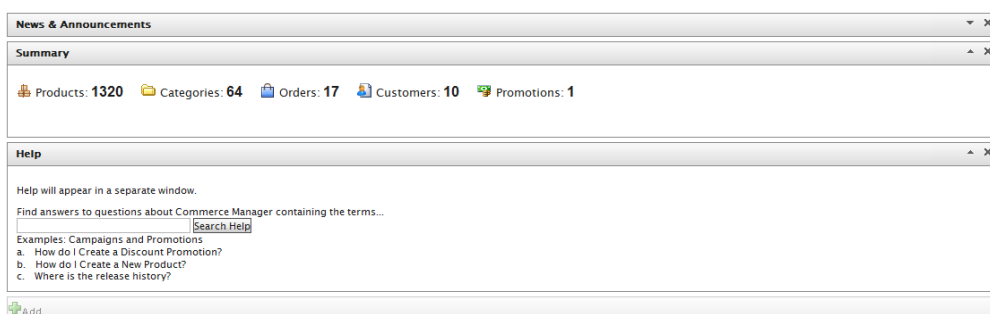
The **Controls Set** tab allows you to select which Controls you want to add to the Dashboard. Check the boxes and then click on **Add and Close**. The Controls you selected will appear on the Dashboard.

To reset the Dashboard back to the default state before any customizations were made, click on **Set to Default**.

On the **Page Template** tab, you can adjust the Dashboard page layout to a **One column template**, **Two columns template (first twice bigger than the second)**, **Two columns template (2nd twice bigger than the 1st)**, and **Two equal columns template**. Click on the layout you want and then click on **Add and close**.



The screen below is an example of how a **One column template** looks.



## Customer Management

The Customer Management system is where you can add individual organizations, contacts, and Commerce Manager users. You can also create purchase orders for each individual customer account.

- **Organizations** - groups or sub-groups of Contacts
- **Contacts** - individuals with a certain set of personalized information (name, address, email, etc.). Contacts can be customers or users with Commerce Manager permissions to manage one or more systems.
- **Commerce Manager User** - this is a user with an assigned role which provides access to the Commerce Manager site.

### Organizations

In the Organizations section, Commerce Manager users can create new organizations or organization units, which are basically groups or sub-groups of assigned contacts.

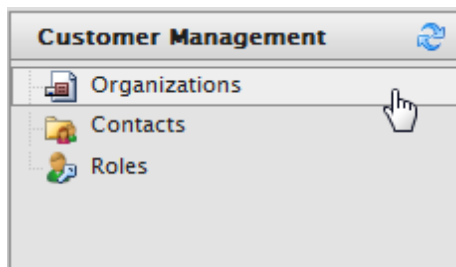
Organizations can be categorized into different types such as organization or organization units (i.e., regional branches, departments) and also business categories such as "Computer and Electronics" or "Clothing and Accessories." Organizations can be structured into a tree structure with sub-units with different levels of permissions assigned to each. For example, you can set up your company as a parent level organization while your departments such as Sales & Marketing, IT/Development, and operations as organization units. With this scenario, you can allow users in each departments to have access to only relevant systems, screens and functionality within Commerce Manager.

The Organizations section also comes with a new customizable filtering feature to display organizations and sub-units based on any of their attributes such as name, organization types, business categories, etc.

### Browsing Organizations

Organizations are one of the major function areas of the Customer Management system. You can browse and view existing Organizations.

To browse Organizations, go to **Customer Management > Organization** on the left menu.

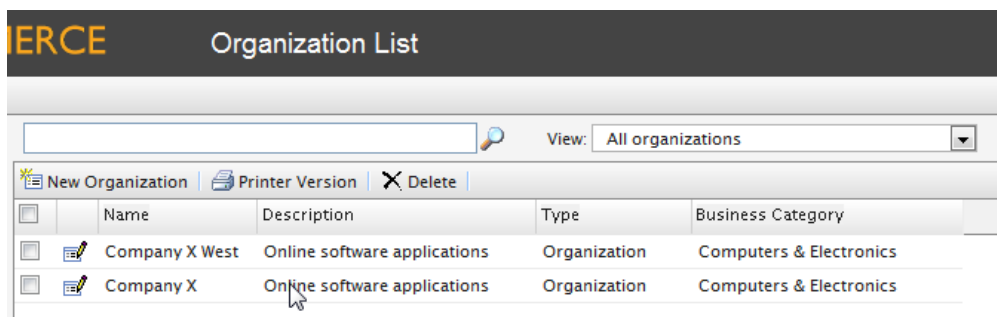


This will open the **Organization List** page.

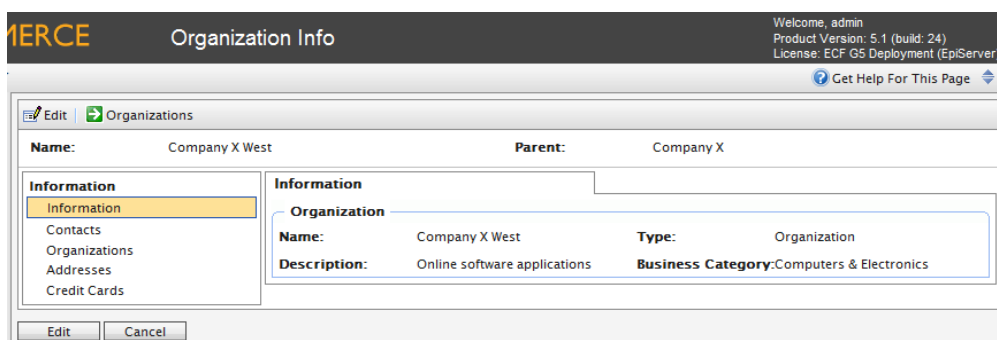
### Viewing Organization Details

Organization details are separated by four columns:

Field	Description
Name	Name of the organization
Description	Additional details of the organization
Type	The kind of organization it is
Business Category	Under which category the organization falls



You can click through the name of the Organization to view more details about it.





### Searching for Organizations

You can also use the search field on the **Organization List** to find specific Organizations by name. To conduct a search, enter in your search terms and click on the **Search** button.

To conduct a new search, click on the **Reset** button to reset the form and enter your new search terms.

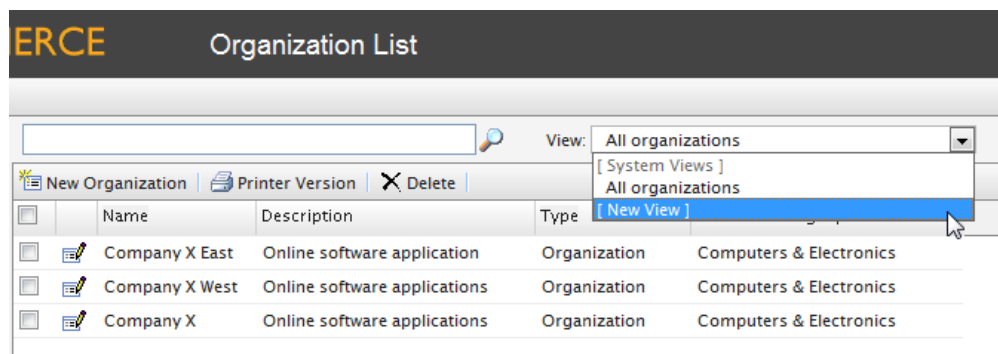
### Printing a List of Organizations

If you want to generate a printer-friendly list of Organizations, click on **Printer Version**. A new window will pop-up and render a simple table suitable for printing. Click on the **Print** button on the upper right corner of the page.

### Creating or Customizing Views for Browsing Organizations

As an **Organization List** gets longer, users can create and customize views to filter the list.

To create a new view, click on the **View** drop-down menu and select "New View."



A pop-up form appears above the **Organization List**. This form gives users the ability to customize which columns appear and apply a variety of filters.

The default tab is **General**. Enter in a **Title** for the custom View. Click the check-box **Show this view for all users**, if you want other users to see this custom View.

**New View**

General Fields Filters

**Enter Title**

Professional Services Companies

☒ Show this view for all users

Everything is ready to create a new view for entities list. Please, type view name.

Save Close

Click on the **Fields** tab to select which columns you want to appear in the custom View. Select the columns you want to have appear by clicking and highlighting the column name and moving it over to the **Visible columns** list by clicking on the **Right Arrow** icon.

**New View**

General **Fields** Filters

Available columns:

- Description
- Id
- Modified
- Modifier
- Name
- Parent**
- Parent (ref)
- Primary Contact
- Primary Contact (ref)
- Type

Visible columns:

- Creator
- Business Category

Save Close

To deselect a column, click and highlight a column name from the **Visible columns** list and then click on the **Left Arrow** icon.

To change the ordering of the **Visible columns** list, click and highlight a column name and click on the **Up and Down Arrow** icons on the right of the list to reposition the column.

Click on the **Filters** tab to set the View filters. Users are given precise controls over filters for setting up rules for their custom View. Clicking on the + icon allows you add an additional filter.

Click on **Save** to save the settings and return to the **Organization List** screen.

To edit an existing View or a View you just created, select the View from the drop-down menu and click on the **Edit** icon next to it. The **View Editing** form pops up and you are able to edit all properties.

To delete a custom View, click on the **X** icon next to the **Edit** icon.

There are a multitude of options available for customization, but here are some examples to get you started.

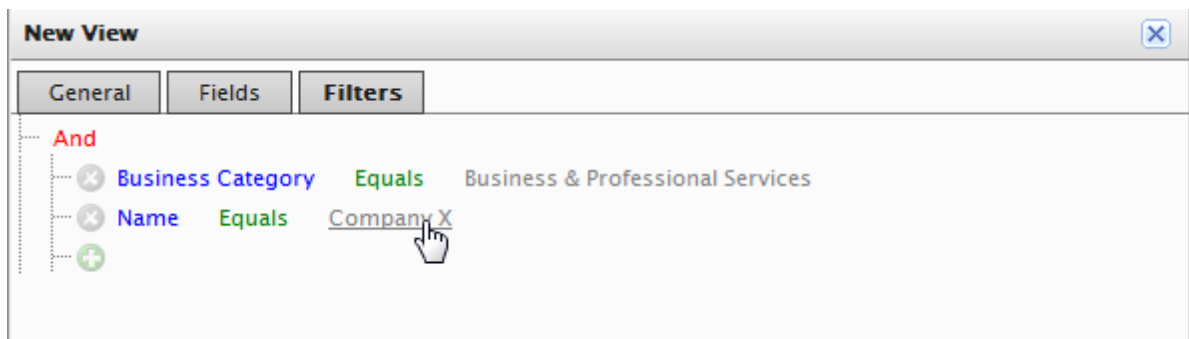
#### Example View Filter Setups

The examples here will start off with the following list of sample Organizations, Organization Units, and Divisional Units:

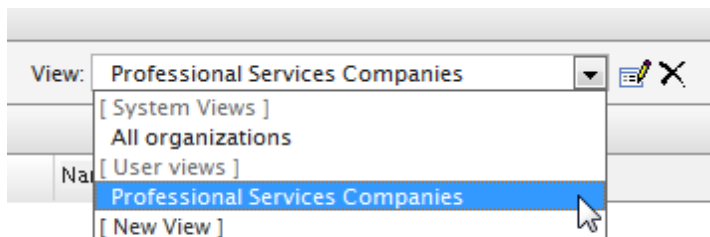
	Name	Description	Type	Business Category
	Company X East	Online software application	Organization Unit	Computers & Electronics
	Company X West	Online software applications	Organization Unit	Computers & Electronics
	Company X IT W...	Online software application IT s...	Divisional Unit	Computers & Electronics
	Company X	Online software applications	Organization	Computers & Electronics

**Example 1: Creating a View to Only Show Organizations that Match a Business Category and Organization Name**

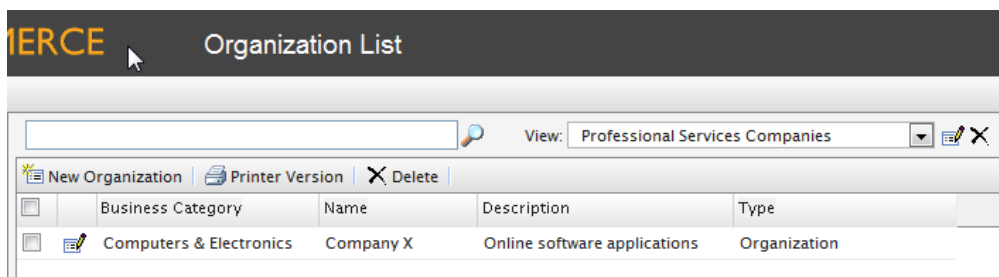
1. In this example, we will create a filter condition that display Organizations with a Business Category that equals "Business & Professional Services" and an Organization Name that equals "Company X."
2. Click on the + icon and from the drop-down select "Business Category." Two fields, which default to "Equals" and "Arts & Entertainment," automatically appear. Click on "Equals" and a drop-down appears. Keep the field as "Equals." Click the field to the right of it and select a "Business Category" name (such as "Business and Professional Services").
3. Since we want to add another filter so that the Organization not only matches this "Business Category," but also a specified name, click on the following + icon and then on the drop-down select "Name."
4. In the next field, select "Equals" and then on the field that says "Text" enter in the name of the Organization (such as "Mediachase").
5. Once done, click **Save** to save the View.

**Applying and Editing a View**

Once a View is created and saved, it appears in the View drop-down box.

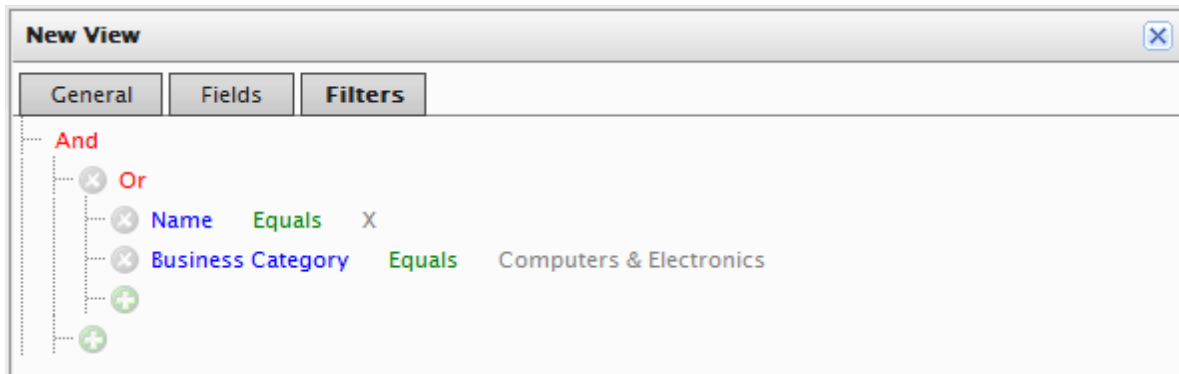


To apply the **View**, select it from the drop-down. Based on the columns and filters you applied for the custom View, your Organization List will reflect those options.



**Example 2: Creating a View to Display Companies with Specific Business Category or Organization Name**

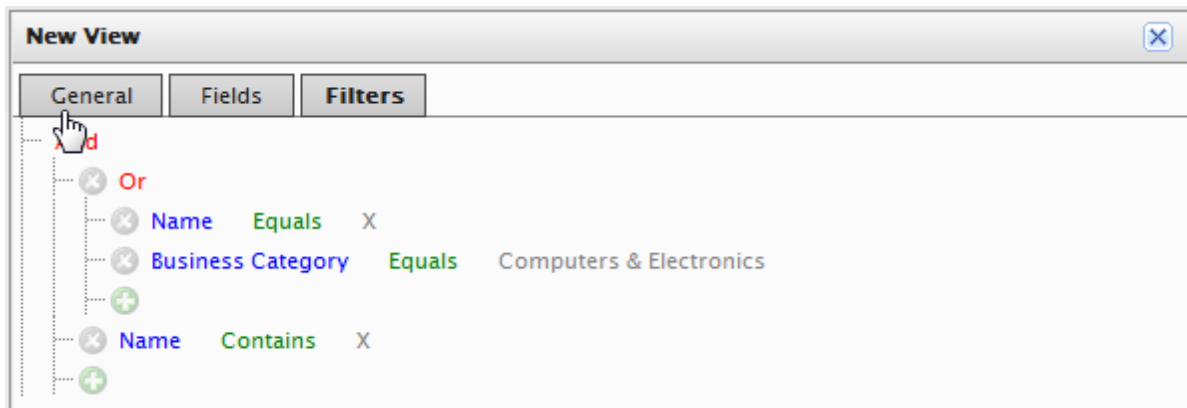
In this example, we will create a filter condition that display Organizations with a Business Category that equals "Computer & Electronics" or an Organization Name that contains "X."

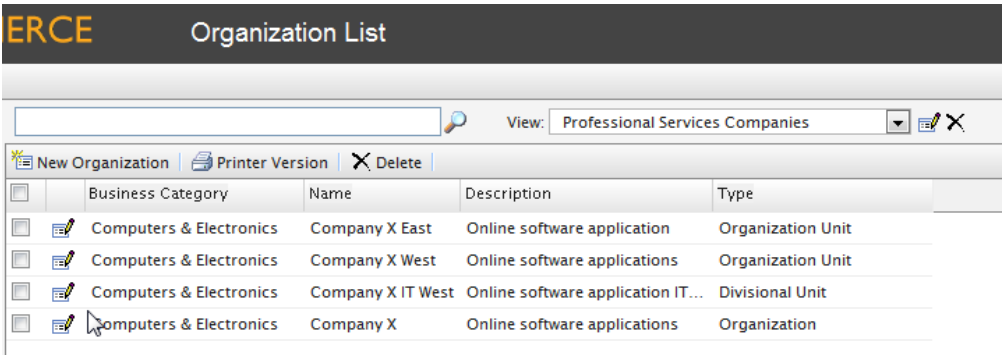


ERCE Organization List				
View: Professional Services Companies				
New Organization   Printer Version   Delete				
	Business Category	Name	Description	Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X East	Online software application	Organization Unit
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X West	Online software applications	Organization Unit
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X IT West	Online software application IT...	Divisional Unit
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computers & Electronics	Company X	Online software applications	Organization

**Example 3: Creating a View to Display Companies with Specific Business Category and/or Name**

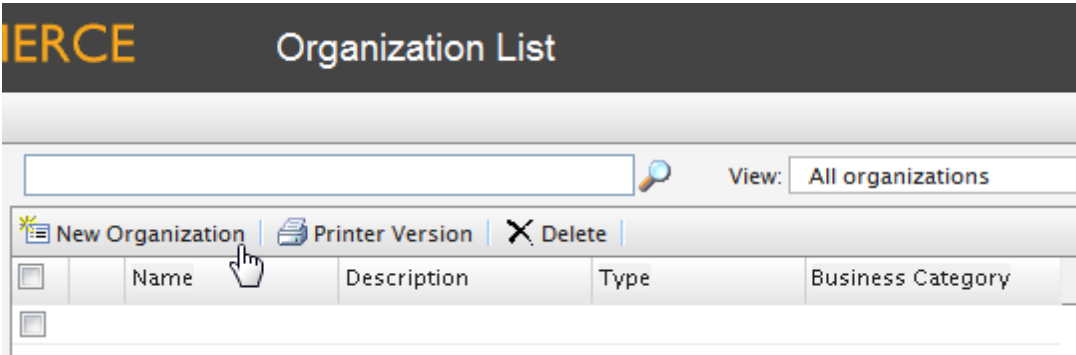
In this example, we will create a filter condition that displays Organizations with a "Business Category" that equals "Computer & Electronics" and/or an Organization Name that contains "X."





Creating an Organization

To create an Organization, click on **New Organization**.



The **Organization Edit** page appears.

Field	Description
Name	Enter in the organization name (this is the only required field).
Description	For additional details about the organization.
Type	Select from the drop-down menu to assign a type to the organization. More types can be added to the drop-down by clicking on the icon.
Business Cat-egory	Select from the drop-down menu to assign a category to the organization. You can add more categories by clicking on the icon.
Parent	You can assign a parent organization to an organization. If the organization you are creating is a sub-unit of a larger organization, then select the parent in the drop-down menu. If you do not see the Organization listed on the drop-down menu, click on "More..."

Once you have entered all relevant information, click on **OK**. The Organization Info window of the organization appears.

From here, you can view **Information** about the Organization you just created. Out of the box, you can also see associated **Contracts**, **Organizations**, **Addresses**, and **Credit Cards**. You can further edit the Organization by clicking the **Edit** button. To go back to the **Organization List**, click on **Organizations** on the menu bar next to **Edit**.

**Organization Info**

Welcome, admin  
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)  
License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)

Get Help For This Page

Edit Organizations

Name: Company X West Parent: Company X

**Information**

Information  
Contacts  
Organizations  
Addresses  
Credit Cards

**Organization**

Name: Company X West Type: Organization  
Description: Online software applications Business Category: Computers & Electronics

Edit Cancel

### Creating an Organization Unit

An Organizational Unit is a "child" or subsidiary of a Parent organization. Within Commerce Manager, you can assign an Organization as a Parent of another Organization. For example, the Parent company "Company X," and the Organizational Units are "Company X West" and "Company X East."

To create an Organization Unit, either create a **New Organization** or **Edit** an existing one.

1. Enter in a **Name** and **Description**.
2. From the drop-down, select the **Type** as "Organization Unit."
3. Select a **Business Category**.
4. Select a **Parent Organization** from the drop-down menu. Selecting a Parent Organization will designate this Organization as a unit (or in other words, a division, sub-organization, subsidiary, etc.)
5. Click **OK** to save the changes.

**Overview**

Name: Company X North

Description: Online software applications

Type: Organization Unit

Business Category: Business & Professional Services

Parent: Company X  
*Parent Organization*

OK Cancel

You will see in the **Organization Info View** form that the Organization is now a child or Organization Unit of the Parent Organization you selected.

**Organization Info**

Welcome, admin  
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)  
License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)

Get Help For This Page

Edit Organizations

Name: Company X North Parent: Company X

**Information**

Information  
Contacts  
Organizations  
Addresses  
Credit Cards

**Organization**

Name: Company X North Type: Organization Unit  
Description: Online software applications Business Category: Business & Professional Services

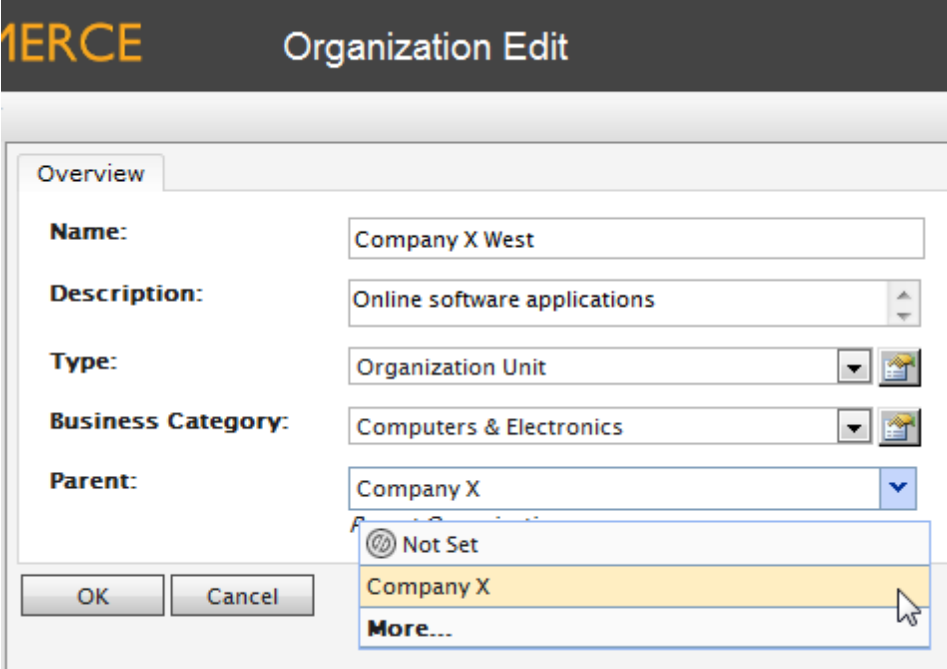
Edit Cancel

### Creating an Organizational Hierarchy

You can create Organization Hierarchies by assigning a Parent Organization to a "child" Organization and then another Organization to the child. Permissions can be set to determine which users can view certain Organizations in the hierarchy.

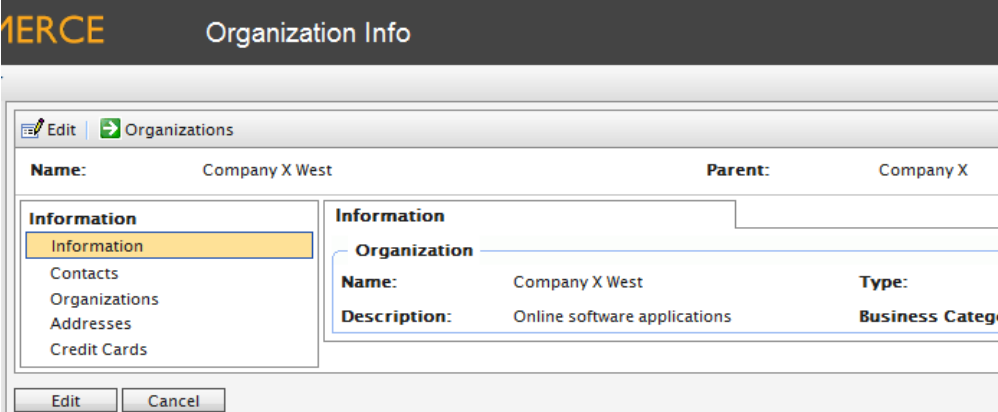
Create an *Organization Unit* by assigning a **Parent** with a child Organization. For example, "Company X" is the Parent Organization and "Company X West" is the Organization Unit.

Assign another Organization with the child Organization ("Company X West"). Click **OK**.



The screenshot shows the 'Organization Edit' interface. The 'Parent' dropdown menu is open, displaying a list of options: 'Not Set', 'Company X' (highlighted), and 'More...'. The other fields are filled with: Name: 'Company X West', Description: 'Online software applications', Type: 'Organization Unit', and Business Category: 'Computers & Electronics'.

In the **Organization Info** page, the Organization becomes the child to the Organization Unit you selected.



The screenshot shows the 'Organization Info' page. The main content area displays the organization 'Company X West' with its parent 'Company X'. The left sidebar has a menu with 'Information' selected, and the main area shows the organization's details: Name: 'Company X West', Description: 'Online software applications', and Type: 'Organization Unit'.

Repeat the steps above to create further subunits of the **Parent** Organization.

### Creating and Editing Dictionary Entries

By default, when creating or editing an Organization, there is a default list of Types and Business Categories available to the user. More options can be created by editing the Dictionary within the Organization Edit page.

#### Adding New Dictionaries for Organization Type

1. To edit the **Dictionary**, open the **Organization Edit** page by creating a new organization or editing an existing one. Click on the icon next to the Type drop-down menu.
2. The new window appears allowing you to edit the existing organization Type dictionary. To add a new item to the dictionary, click on New Item.
3. Select the order of the item from the drop-down on the left.



4. Enter in a name of the item on the field next to the drop-down.
5. Click **Save** to save the dictionary item.
6. The dictionary item is now available in the **Type** drop-down.

#### Adding New Business Categories

Out of the box, there is a list of categories you can assign to an organization. You can add more categories the same way you add organization types.

1. Click on the dictionary icon next to the **Business Category** drop-down menu.
2. Click on **New Item** to add a new category.
3. Enter in a category name and then click . You can change the order the category is on the list by clicking on number drop-down menu.
4. The category now appears in the drop-down menu.

## Contacts

Contacts are individuals with a certain set of personalized information (name, address, email, etc.).

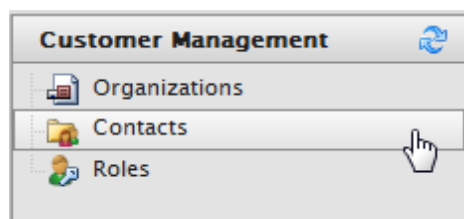
- **Contacts with Accounts** - a customer who registers on the public site. If this customer chooses, he/she can login to his/her *Account* from the public site and access his/her order history and other personalized information. He/she cannot access the Commerce Manager.
- **Contacts with User Permissions** - someone internal to your team who has varying levels of access to the systems within Commerce Manager.

Contacts consisting of users who will be accessing the Commerce Manager can be assigned *Roles* based on varying permissions. For example, a user with the "Cms Admins" role will have full access to only the Content Management system. In addition, notes regarding the Contact's registration source can be recorded.

The Contact section also comes with a new customizable filtering feature to display contacts based on any of their attributes such as Name, Last Order Date and Customer Group.

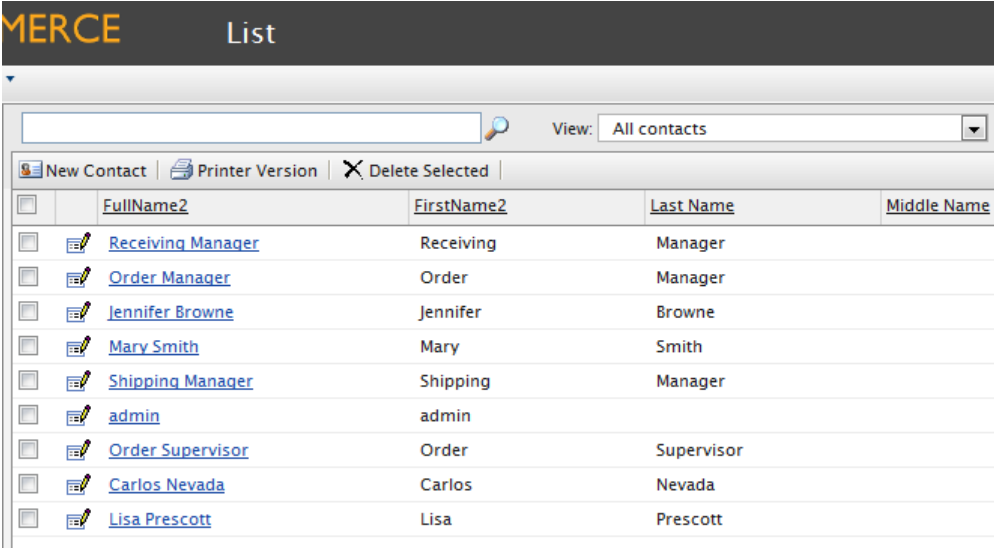
#### Browsing Contacts

To browse Contacts, go to **Customer Management > Contacts**.



#### Viewing Detailed Contact Information

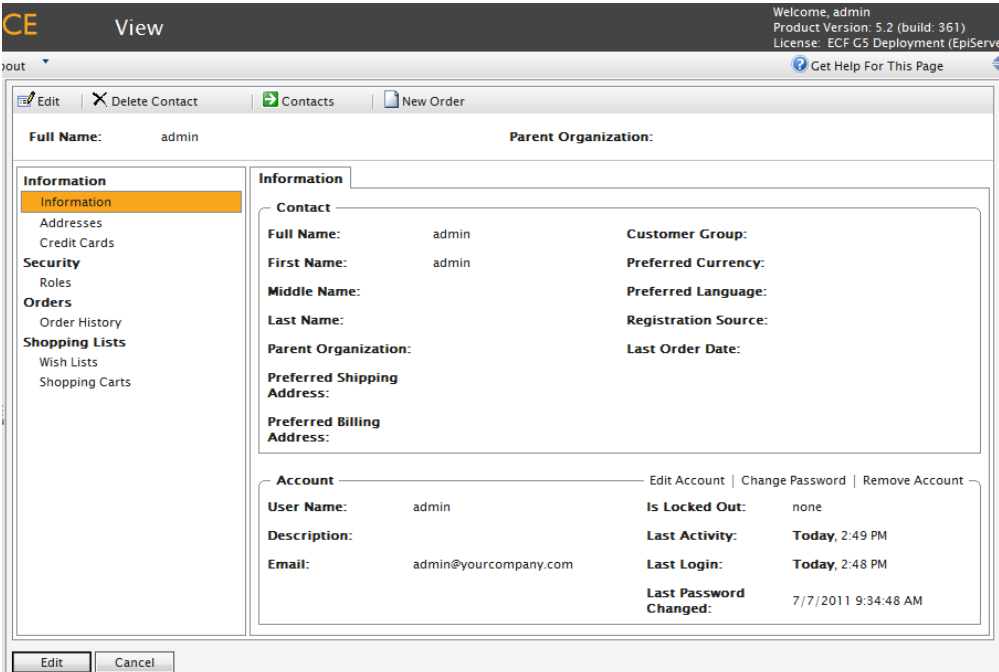
The **Contact List** page shows a list of existing Contacts.



The screenshot shows the 'List' view of the EPiServer Commerce interface. At the top, there's a search bar and a 'View: All contacts' dropdown. Below the search bar are links for 'New Contact', 'Printer Version', and 'Delete Selected'. The main content is a table with columns: 'FullName2', 'FirstName2', 'Last Name', and 'Middle Name'. Each row represents a contact and includes a small icon and a link to the contact's details page.

	FullName2	FirstName2	Last Name	Middle Name
	<a href="#">Receiving Manager</a>	Receiving	Manager	
	<a href="#">Order Manager</a>	Order	Manager	
	<a href="#">Jennifer Browne</a>	Jennifer	Browne	
	<a href="#">Mary Smith</a>	Mary	Smith	
	<a href="#">Shipping Manager</a>	Shipping	Manager	
	<a href="#">admin</a>	admin		
	<a href="#">Order Supervisor</a>	Order	Supervisor	
	<a href="#">Carlos Nevada</a>	Carlos	Nevada	
	<a href="#">Lisa Prescott</a>	Lisa	Prescott	

You can click through the name an existing Contact to view more information.



The screenshot shows the 'View' form for a contact named 'admin'. The form is divided into two main sections: 'Contact' and 'Account'. The 'Contact' section includes fields for 'Full Name', 'First Name', 'Middle Name', 'Last Name', 'Parent Organization', 'Preferred Shipping Address', and 'Preferred Billing Address'. The 'Account' section includes fields for 'User Name', 'Description', 'Email', 'Is Locked Out', 'Last Activity', 'Last Login', and 'Last Password Changed'. There are also links for 'Edit Account', 'Change Password', and 'Remove Account'.

**Full Name:** admin **Parent Organization:**

**Information**

**Contact**

**Full Name:** admin **Customer Group:**

**First Name:** admin **Preferred Currency:**

**Middle Name:** **Preferred Language:**

**Last Name:** **Registration Source:**

**Parent Organization:** **Last Order Date:**

**Preferred Shipping Address:**

**Preferred Billing Address:**

**Account** **Edit Account | Change Password | Remove Account**

**User Name:** admin **Is Locked Out:** none

**Description:** **Last Activity:** Today, 2:49 PM

**Email:** admin@yourcompany.com **Last Login:** Today, 2:48 PM

**Last Password Changed:** 7/7/2011 9:34:48 AM

**Edit** **Cancel**

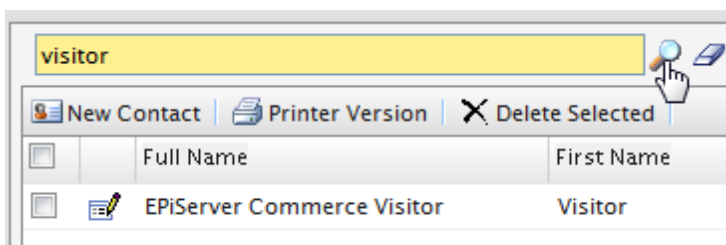
From within the **Contact Info** form, you can view other recorded information about the Contact. For example, you can view **Addresses** and **Order History** related to this Contact.



More objects or metadata can be added to the default View Form via *Business Foundation*.

#### Searching for Contacts

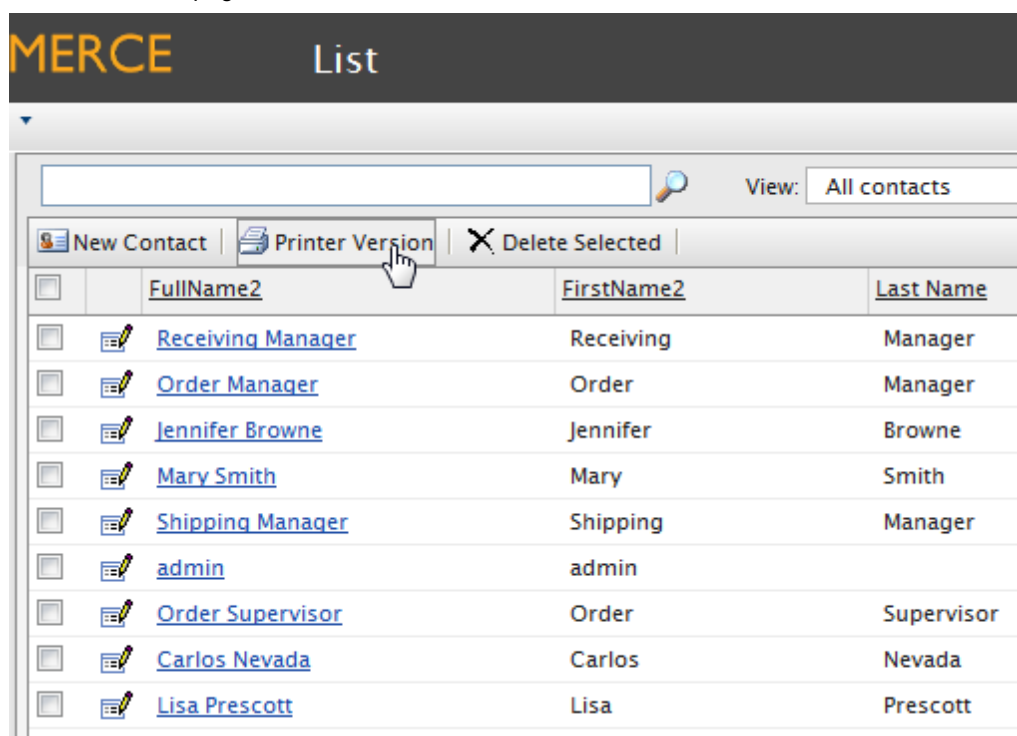
On the **Contact Info** page, you can use the search form above to search for a particular Contact using key terms. Conduct the search by clicking on the **Search** icon (magnifying glass). Contacts that match the search terms will appear on the list.



To clear the search and revert back to show all Contacts, click on the **Reset** icon (eraser) next to the Search icon.

#### Generating a Printer Friendly List of Contacts

To generate a printer friendly layout of the **Contact List**, click on **Printer** Version from the menu bar on the **Contact List** page.



A new browser window opens showing a printer-friendly version of the Contact List. Click on **Print** on the far right corner of the browser window.

## Contact

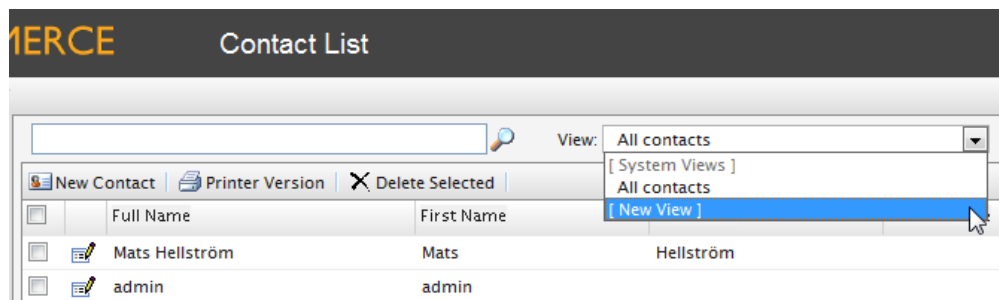
Full Name	First Name	Last Name	Middle Name	Last Order Date	Customer Group
Receiving Manager	Receiving	Manager			
Order Manager	Order	Manager			
Jennifer Browne	Jennifer	Browne			
Mary Smith	Mary	Smith			
Shipping Manager	Shipping	Manager			
admin	admin				
Order Supervisor	Order	Supervisor			
Carlos Nevada	Carlos	Nevada			
Lisa Prescott	Lisa	Prescott			

#### Creating or Customizing Views for Browsing Contacts

Like Organizations, users can create or customize **Views** when browsing objects.

### Creating a New View

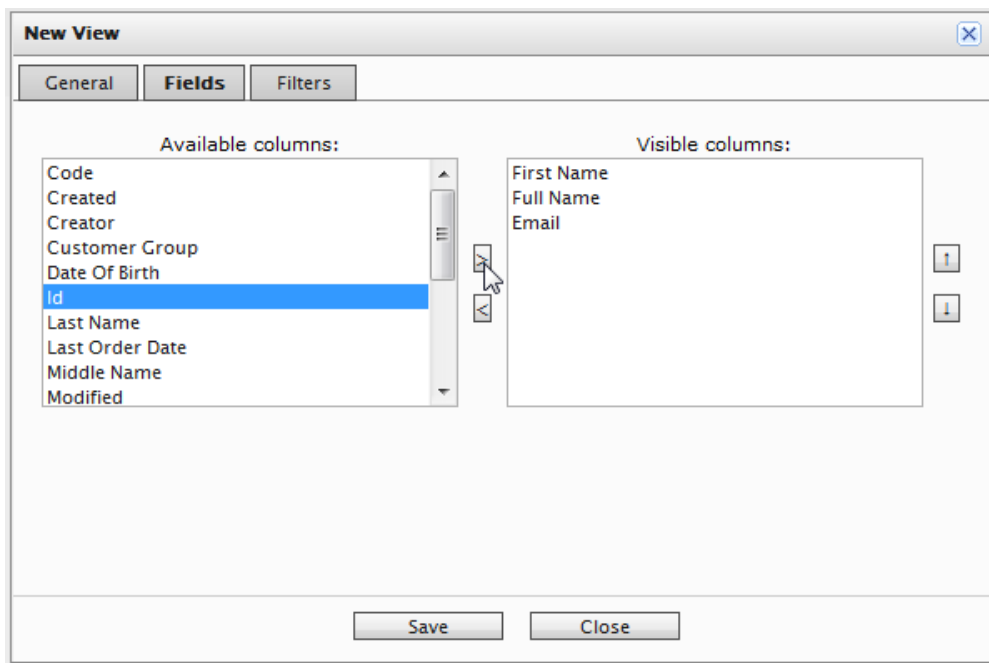
On the **Contact List** page, click on the **View** drop-down menu and select **New View**.



A pop-up appears, very similar to the one found in *Organizations*. This form gives users the ability to customize which columns appear and apply a variety of filters.

The default tab is **General**. Enter in a **Title** for the custom **View**. Check the box **Show this view for all users** if you want other users to see this custom View.

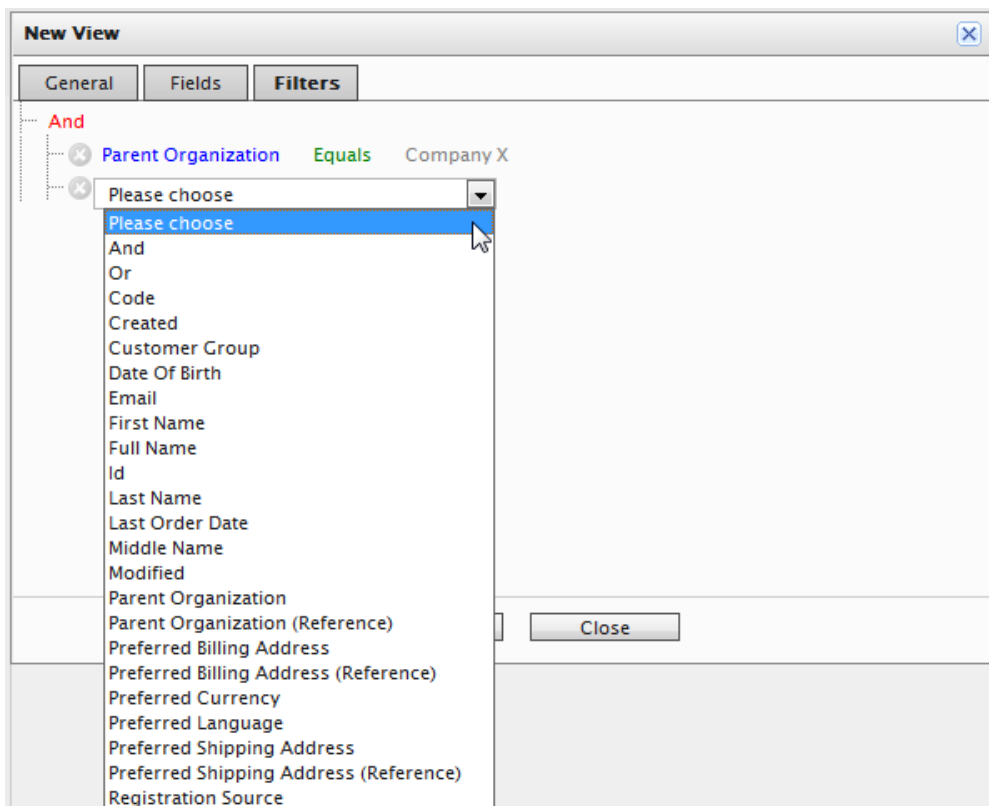
Click on the **Fields** tab to select which columns you want to appear in the custom View. Select the columns you want to have appear by clicking and highlighting the column name and moving it over to the **Visible columns** list by clicking on the **Right Arrow** icon.



To deselect a column, click and highlight a column name from the **Visible columns** list and then click on the **Left Arrow** icon.

To change the ordering of the **Visible column** list, click and highlight a column name and click on the **Up and Down Arrows** on the right of the list to reposition the column.

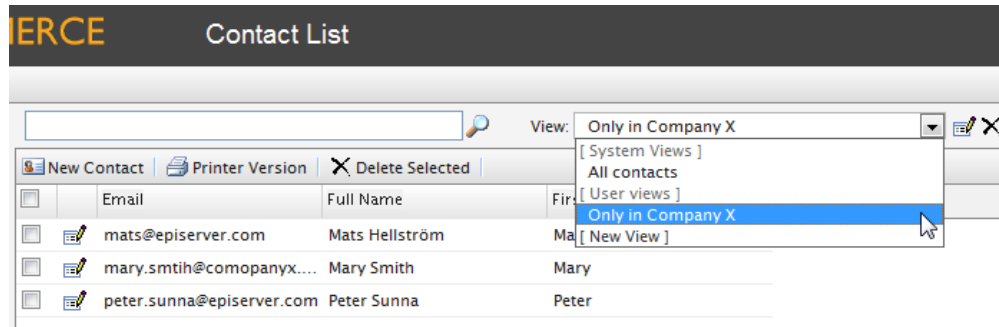
Click on the **Filters** tab to set the view filters. Users are given precise controls over filters for setting up rules for their custom View. Clicking on the + icon allows you add an additional filter.



There are a multitude of options available for customization.

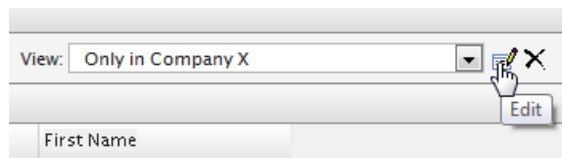
### Applying and Editing a View

Once a **View** is created and saved, it appears in the **View** drop-down box.



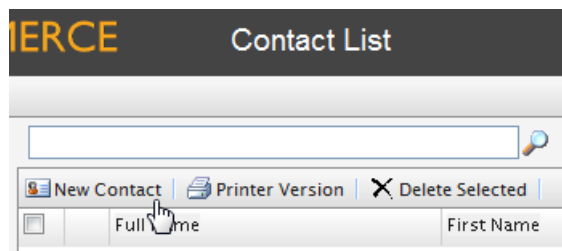
To apply the **View**, select it from the drop-down. Based on the columns and filters you applied for the custom View, your **Contact List** will reflect those options.

To edit an existing View or a View you just created, select the **View** from the drop-down menu and click on the **Edit** icon next to it. The **View Editing** form pops up and you are able to edit all properties.



### Creating a Contact

To create a new Contact, from the **Contact List** page, click on **New Contact**.



The **Contact Edit** page appears where you can enter all relevant information about the contact. The only required fields to complete are **Full Name**, **First Name**, **Last Name**, and **Email**. The rest of the fields are optional but are recommended.

1. Select a **Parent Organization** from the drop-down menu to associate the Contact with a single Parent Organization.
2. Assign the Contact to a **Customer Group**. More Customer Groups can be added by editing the *Customer Group Dictionaries*. Customer Groups become useful when setting specific permissions and targeted *Marketing Campaigns*. (For more information, see "How to Assign a Customer Group Sales Price for a Particular Item" section below.)
3. Select a **Preferred Currency** for the contact. If the Contact is in France, you may want to associate the Euro currency. Available currency options are based on settings in **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Currencies**.
4. Select a **Preferred Language** to associate with the Contact. Languages are populated based on the languages set under **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Languages**.

5. The **Registration Source** field is a text field for entering in notes about the Contact. For instance, you may want to reference which website the Contact is currently registered under.



The **Registration Source** field is automatically filled when a user creates a new Account from the public website.

**ERCE** Contact Edit

Overview

**Full Name:** Mary Smith

**First Name:** Mary

**Middle Name:**

**Last Name:** Smith

**Email:** mary.smtih@comopanyx.com  
*Contact Email Description*

**Parent Organization:** Company X  
*Contact Organization*

**Customer Group:** Customer

**Preferred Currency:** US dollar

**Preferred Language:** English (United States)

**Registration Source:** companyx

OK Cancel

Click **OK** to save the Contact. The **Contact Info View Form**, where you can enter in additional information about the Contact as well as go back and edit the Contact again.



The screenshot below shows the default layout of the **Contact Info** form. This can be customized using *Business Foundation*.

**ERCE** Contact Info

Welcome, admin  
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)  
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EpiServer)

Get Help For This Page

Edit Delete Contacts

**Full Name:** Mary Smith **Parent Organization:** Company X

**Information**

**Information**

**Contact**

**Full Name:** Mary Smith **Customer Group:** Customer

**First Name:** Mary **Preferred Currency:** USD

**Middle Name:** **Preferred Language:** en-US

**Last Name:** Smith **Registration Source:** companyx

**Parent Organization:** Company X **Last Order Date:**

**Account** Create account

**Account not found:**

Edit Cancel

To go back to the Contact List, click **Cancel** or the **Contacts** button next to the **Right Arrow** icon.

### Creating an Account

An Account can be created with a Contact. Once an Account has been created, the Contact can be assigned permissions using Roles and access the Commerce Manager.



A customer Account is automatically created for a customer who registers from the front-end public website, allowing them to login and view personalized information.

To create an Account for an existing Contact, click on a Contact name from the **Contact List**. On the **Contact Info** page, click on **Create Account**.

The screenshot shows the 'Contact Info' page for 'Mary Smith'. The 'Account' section at the bottom right contains the 'Create account' button. The page also displays contact information such as 'Full Name: Mary Smith', 'First Name: Mary', 'Middle Name:', 'Last Name: Smith', and 'Parent Organization: Company X'. Other fields include 'Customer Group: Customer', 'Preferred Currency: USD', 'Preferred Language: en-US', 'Registration Source: companyx', and 'Last Order Date:'.

A pop-up appears to enter in their user account credentials. A **User Name** and **Password** are required to create the Account.

1. Enter in a **User Name**, which can include spaces and special characters.
2. Enter in a **Password**, which must be four or more characters.
3. Enter in a **Description** and **Email Address**, which are both optional.
4. To enable the account, select "Yes" under **Approved**. Otherwise, select "No" to keep the account inactive and inaccessible by the user.
5. Click **OK** to save the account.

The 'Create account' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- User Name:** Text field with 'Mary' entered.
- Password:** Password field with masked characters.
- Description:** Text field with 'mary.smith@companyx.com' entered.
- Email:** Text field with 'mary.smtih@companyx.com' entered.
- Approved:** Radio buttons for 'Yes' (selected) and 'No'.
- Buttons:** 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

User account information appears under the **Account** section of the **Contact Information** form.

### Fields Explained:



- **Last Activity** - last time the user logged in or made any changes to the site
- **Last Lockout** - last time a user was locked out due to too many failed login attempts
- **Last Login** - last time the user logged into his or her account
- **Last Password Changed** - last time the user account password changed

The screenshot shows the ERCE Contact Info page. The top header includes the ERCE logo, the title 'Contact Info', and a welcome message for 'admin' along with product version and license information. Below the header, there's a navigation bar with 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Contacts' buttons. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Information' on the left and 'Contact' on the right. The 'Information' section has a sidebar with links to 'Addresses', 'Credit Cards', 'Security', 'Roles', 'Orders', 'Order History', 'Shopping Lists', 'Wish Lists', and 'Shopping Carts'. The 'Contact' section displays details for 'Mary Smith', including 'Full Name', 'First Name', 'Middle Name', 'Last Name', 'Parent Organization', 'Customer Group', 'Preferred Currency', 'Preferred Language', 'Registration Source', and 'Last Order Date'. Below this, there's an 'Account' section with fields for 'User Name', 'Description', 'Email', 'Last Activity', 'Last Lockout', 'Last Login', and 'Last Password Changed'. At the bottom, there are 'Edit' and 'Cancel' buttons.

### Editing an Account, Changing an Account Password, and Removing Accounts

To edit an Account, click on **Edit Account**. The same pop-up will appear. You cannot change the **User Name** unless you remove the Account and recreate the same Account.

To change the password, click on **Change Password**. A password pop-up appears with an editable field that allows you to enter in the new password.

To delete or remote the account, click on **Remove Account**.

### Create an Order Within a Contact

For customer accounts, you can create purchase orders.

1. Click on a contact name. You will see the contact details.
2. Click on **New Order** on the menu bar.
3. The **New Order** form appears to generate an order for the customer.

The screenshot shows the EPiServer Commerce Customer Management page. The top header includes the EPiServer Commerce logo, the title 'View', and a welcome message for 'admin' along with product version and license information. Below the header, there's a navigation bar with 'Edit', 'Delete Contact', 'Contacts', and 'New Order' buttons. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Information' on the left and 'Contact' on the right. The 'Information' section has a sidebar with links to 'Addresses', 'Credit Cards', 'Security', 'Roles', 'Orders', 'Order History', 'Shopping Lists', 'Wish Lists', and 'Shopping Carts'. The 'Contact' section displays details for 'Carlos Nevada', including 'Full Name', 'First Name', 'Middle Name', 'Last Name', 'Parent Organization', 'Preferred Shipping Address', and 'Preferred Billing Address'. Below this, there's an 'Account' section with fields for 'User Name', 'Description', 'Email', 'Is Locked', 'Last Activity', 'Last Login', and 'Last Password Changed'. At the bottom, there are 'Edit' and 'Cancel' buttons.

## Roles and Permissions

In the Roles section, Commerce Manager users can be either granted or restricted access to an entire system or a particular menu item within a system. Each Role is defined by a set of *Permissions* that can be added or changed based on user selection. Existing Roles can be customized; new Roles can also be created to suit your unique business needs.

Roles control the level of access permissions of each user account in Commerce Manager. Different Roles may be added to user accounts (i.e., store operator or webmaster) so that they can access, edit, or process relevant information.

There are three main categories that determine the different levels of permissions: Admin, Manager, and Schema Manager.

- **Admin Role** - allows users to fully access and administer a particular Commerce Manager system.
- **Manager Role** - allows users to manage (View/Create/Edit/Delete) existing aspects of a particular Commerce Manager system .
- **Schema Manager** - allows users to access only the administrative side of an Commerce Manager system (e.g. setting up Meta Data).

### Definitions of Roles

Selecting Roles in the left menu opens a Roles List page with the default Roles shown below. The Roles List page allows Commerce Manager administrative users to add new, edit or delete these existing roles.

Here is a listing of the roles available out-of-the-box followed by a brief high-level description of what a user with this role can access:

- **Admins** - allows users to fully administer most areas of the Commerce Manager.
- **Everyone** - one of the default roles which is assigned when a customer registers an account from the front-end public site.
- **Management Users** - allows users access to the Commerce Manager.
- **Order Supervisor** - allows users to fully administer the Order Management system.
- **Order Managers** - allows users to manage (View/Create/Edit/Delete/Others) elements within the Order Management system.
- **Registered** - one of the default roles which is assigned when you register from an account from the front-end public site.
- **Shipping Manager** - has the ability to view, pack, and complete shipments.
- **Receiving Manager** - has the ability to view shipments and receive returns.



You can easily modify these existing roles or consolidate roles. In addition, custom roles can be created depending on your business needs.

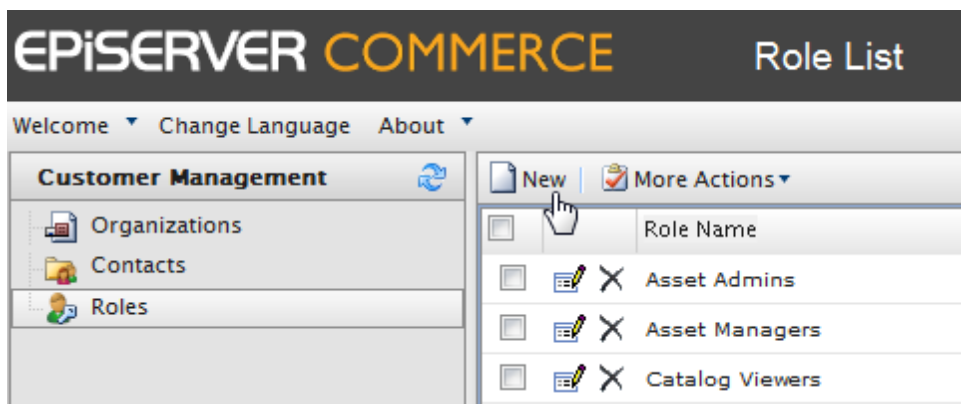
See also the *User Access and Roles section*, to find out more about access rights and role management in EPiServer CMS.

### Creating, Editing, and Deleting Roles

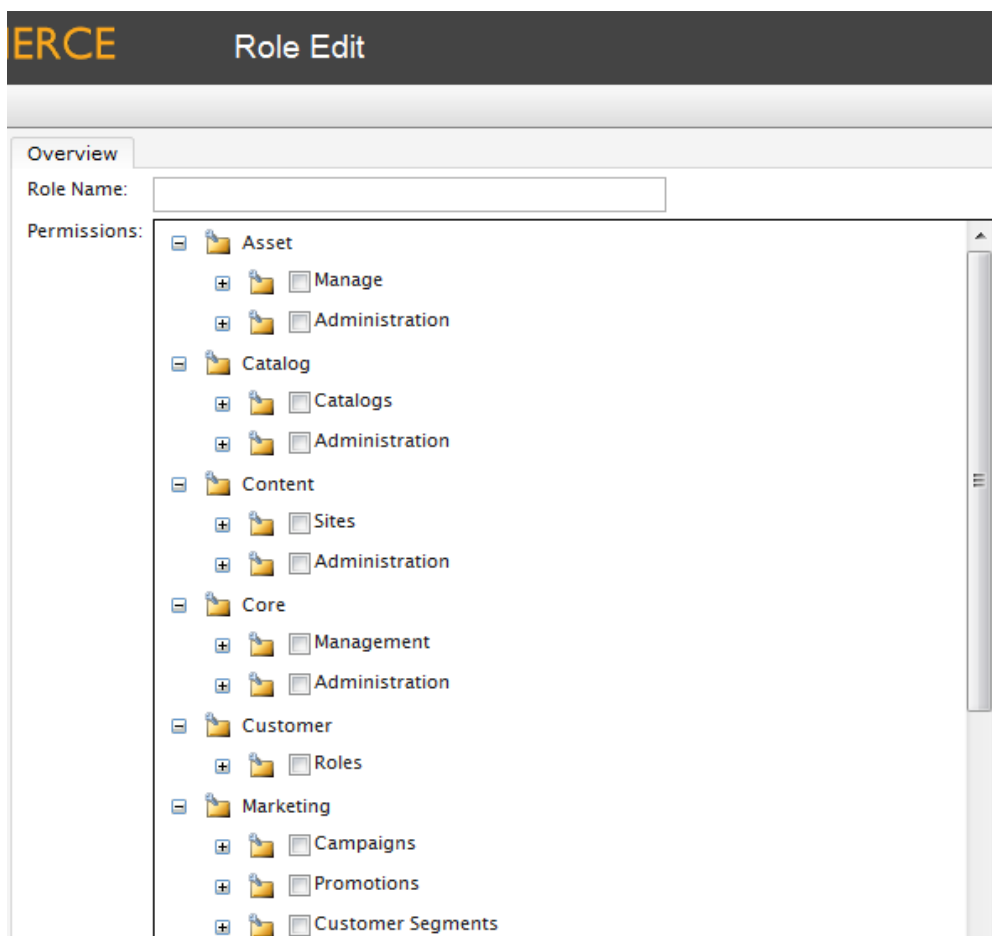
Out of the box, Commerce Manager includes a list of pre-existing Roles that can be assigned to Accounts. Users can also create their own Roles based on a set of Permissions. Roles allow Administrators to restrict users from accessing different systems or folders depending on their needs.

#### Creating a Role

To create a new Role, go to **Customer Management > Roles** to see the **Role List**.



Click on **New** to open up the **Role Edit** page.



There is a wealth of Permissions options Administrators can set for a Role.

Enter a **Role Name**.

Checkmark the boxes to give Permissions to the Account for this particular function or action. For example, if you want an Account to only **View** and **Edit Assets**, you will need to expand **Assets > Manage** and checkmark **View and Edit**.

Once done defining the Role, click on **OK**. The new Role will appear on the **Role List**.

#### Editing Existing Roles

All existing Roles, including the ones included out of the box with Commerce Manager, can be edited and customized. It is also a recommended reference to how each pre-existing Role works.

To edit a Role, click on the **Edit** icon.

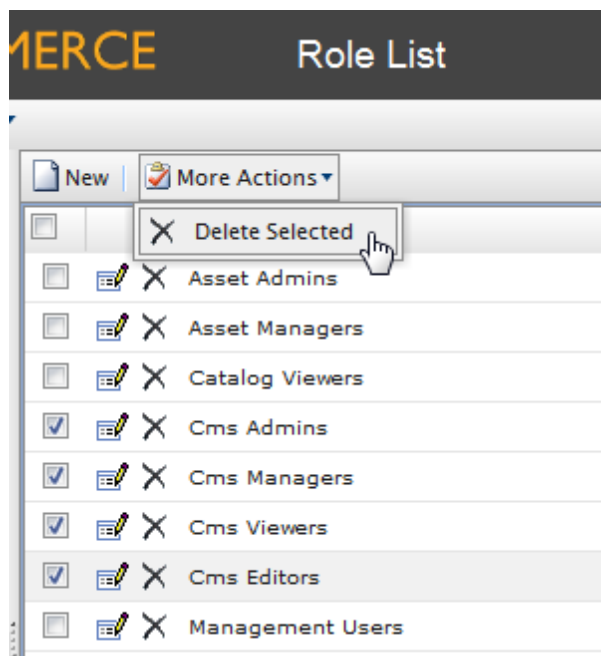
The **Role Edit** page appears. You can customize the Permissions settings for the Role. Once done, click **OK**.

#### Deleting Roles

To delete any Role on the list, there are two ways:

Click on the **X** button next to the name of the Role to delete one at a time.

To delete multiple Roles, checkmark each box and on the menu bar, click on **More Actions > Delete Selected**. Click **OK** when the pop-up appears.



### Assigning Roles to Individual Accounts

Roles are designed to allow and disallow certain functionality and folders to individual accounts. When a Contact logs into his or her account, that Account is bound by the Roles it was assigned.

To assign one or more Roles to an account, go to **Customer Management > Contacts** and click on an existing Contact with an Account.

Under **Security**, click on **Roles**. The **Security** section only appears after an Account was created for the Contact.

The **Roles** form appear, allowing you to assign Roles to the Account. By default, an Account is already assigned to the "Registered" and "Everyone" roles.

Full Name: Mary Smith Parent Organization: Company X

**Roles**

Assign Role Remove Roles

<input type="checkbox"/>	Role Name	Organization	Inheritance
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Registered	none	[ Undefined ]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Everyone	none	[ Undefined ]

Page Size: 20 (2 items) | Page < 1 >

Edit Cancel

Click on **Assign Role** to assign a new Role to the Account. A pop-up appears allowing you to assign a specific Role from the drop-down menu.

**Assign Role**

Security Role: Cms Admins

Organization: Company X

Inheritance: Inherit From Parent

Save Cancel

Select a **Security Role** from the drop-down to assign to the Account.

Optionally, you can assign an Organization to the Account, which enables the Inheritance drop-down menu below. If specific permissions are set for an Organization, you can set to "Inherit from Parent" (inherit permissions from the Parent organization) or "Overwrite parent."

Click **Save** to assign the role. Repeat these steps to assign more roles to the Account.

Full Name: Mary Smith Parent Organization: Company X

**Roles**

Assign Role Remove Roles

<input type="checkbox"/>	Role Name	Organization	Inheritance
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Registered	none	[ Undefined ]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Everyone	none	[ Undefined ]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Cms Admins	Company X	Overwrite parent

Page Size: 20 (3 items) | Page < 1 >

Edit Cancel

## Catalog Management

An EPiServer Commerce front-end public site allows customers to shop for products. To manage products, you can go to the back-end Commerce Manager and you will notice that products are arranged into one or more catalog(s). Catalogs are independent from one another and you may create as many catalogs as you need. Catalogs can be structured in a number of ways. For example, you may have various brands or product lines. Each brand or product line can have its own catalog. Or, a retailer may have multiple suppliers, in which case, you can segment each supplier into its own catalog.

A default B2C Sample Site along with a default electronics catalog (consisting of a Brands catalog + an Everything catalog) is included giving you a running demo site after you run the installer.

The EPiServer Commerce Catalog Management provides full complement of tools and capabilities to create and manage a diverse range of products, variations, pricing strategies, languages, and related website functions.

EPiServer Commerce allows you to easily and flexibly organize and categorize your products. All products referenced on a front-end site reside in a catalog created in Commerce Manager. Multiple catalogs can be created and assigned to one or more sites. The dates that each catalog will be available to the customer can also be defined. In this way, future revisions to items and pricing can be prepared easily and reviewed in advance of the release date to the site.

Catalogs can be organized into Categories, Products, SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.

### Catalog and Catalog Entries

- **Catalogs** - a catalog is a top-level container for all catalog entries such as Categories, Products and SKUs. Catalogs - a Catalog is a top-level container for all Catalog Entries such as Categories, Products and SKUs.
- **Categories** - a Category is a grouping of purchasable products.
- **Products** - a Product represents various forms of merchandise that you can display and purchase from the front-end site, including Products, Variations/SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.
  - **Product Entries** - a Product Entry typically contains a product name, part number, description and images.
  - **Variations/SKUs** - a Variation or SKU corresponds to a specific type of product with specific characteristics. For example, a shirt product will have an individual Variation/SKU which includes size, color and sleeve length.
  - **Bundles** - a Bundle is a collection of Variations and SKUs allowing customers to purchase two or more items at once.
  - **Packages** - a Package is comparable to an individual SKU because the Package item must be purchased as a whole (i.e. computer system).
  - **Dynamic Packages** - a Dynamic Package is similar to the Package definition above with the added ability to configure the Package during checkout.

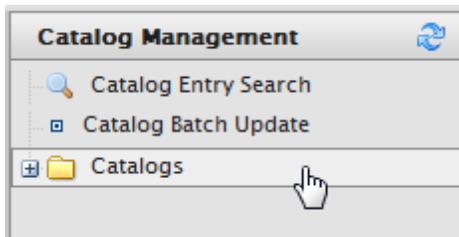
### Working with Catalogs

A catalog is a top-level container for all catalog entries such as Categories, Products and SKUs. In this section, you will learn how to browse, create, and delete catalogs. We recommend that you start with the catalog that came with the EPiServer Commerce sample site, which contains the **Everything/Brands** catalog. You can use the import functionality to get this into one of your environments, edit/master the content and export it so that this polished catalog can be used in a different environment. Also, you are given the flexibility to use a CSV file to rapidly create a new catalog from scratch.

## Browsing Catalogs

All Catalogs are managed under the Catalog Management system.

To browse the Catalog, click on **Catalog Management** on the left menu. Click on **Catalogs** to browse the list of Catalogs.



The **Catalog List** page shows the following two sample nodes by default:

- **Brands** - this node contains information regarding different brands.
- **Everything** - this node contains information on individual sales items grouped in different categories ("Digital Cameras," "Daily Specials," etc.).

Clicking on the **Memo** icon, located between the check box and the folder icon, will display more information and settings of the particular Catalog in the Catalog Edit page.

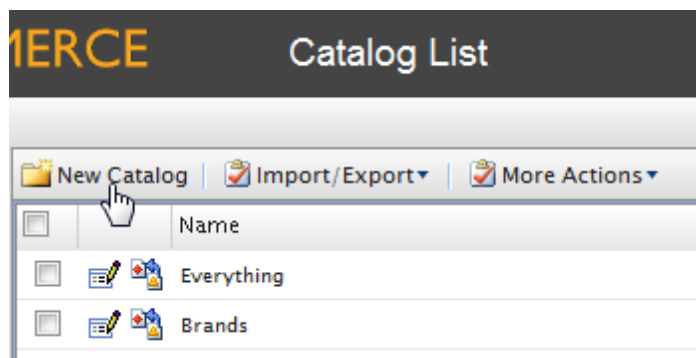
Clicking on the Catalog names ("Brands" and "Everything" highlighted in blue) will take you to the **Node List** page, which is the list of Sub-Categories under the selected Catalog.

	Name	Available from	Expires	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	Everything	12/18/2007 9:00:00 AM	12/18/2020 9:00:00 AM	True
<input type="checkbox"/>	Brands	6/24/2008 7:00:00 PM	6/24/2020 7:00:00 PM	True

## Creating a Catalog

The **Catalog List** page, used to organize and manage catalogs, contains information regarding brands and sales items. These sets of information will either be displayed on the front-end site, or used for other purposes such as for pricing and *Promotions*.

To create a new Catalog, click on **New Catalog**.



- **Category Name** - this name will appear in the Catalog List Page (e.g., Brands, Everything).
- **Catalog Owner** - designate an existing user as the Catalog owner.
- **Available from** - select the date to which the Category is activated.
- **Expires on** - select the expiration date; once the expiration date passes, the Product will no longer appear on the front-end site.
- **Default Currency** - this setting will set the Default Currency for the relevant Catalog contents.



- **Default Language** - this will set the Default Language for the contents.
- **Base Weight** - this assigns the weight units for the contents of the Catalog (e.g. pounds or kilograms). More units may be added.
- **Other Languages** - you can also select other available Languages other than your default Language.
- **Sites** - this determines the site/sites that the relevant Products will be displayed in. At least one site must be highlighted, but you can highlight multiple sites to apply the catalog more than one site.
- **Sort Order** - the Sort Order determines the order to which the Catalog appears in the Catalog List page.
- **Available** - select "Yes" to make the Catalog contents appear on the front end site; select "No" to hide the Catalog from the front-end site.

Once done setting up your catalog attributes, select **OK** to save the catalog. You will be brought back to the **Catalog List** with the new catalog. Select **Cancel** to cancel out of the **Catalog Edit** page and back to the Catalog List.

**IERCE Catalog Edit**

Overview

Catalog Name:   
*catalog name description*

Catalog owner:

Available from:

Expires on:

Default Currency:

Default Language:

Base Weight:

Other Languages:

Sites:

Sort Order:

Available: ☒ Yes ☐ No

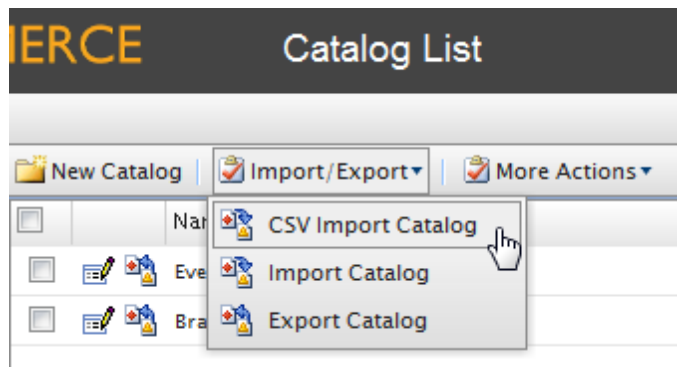
### Importing and Exporting Catalogs

Preexisting catalog data can be imported or exported quickly to and from the Commerce Manager.

#### Accessing the Import & Export Functions

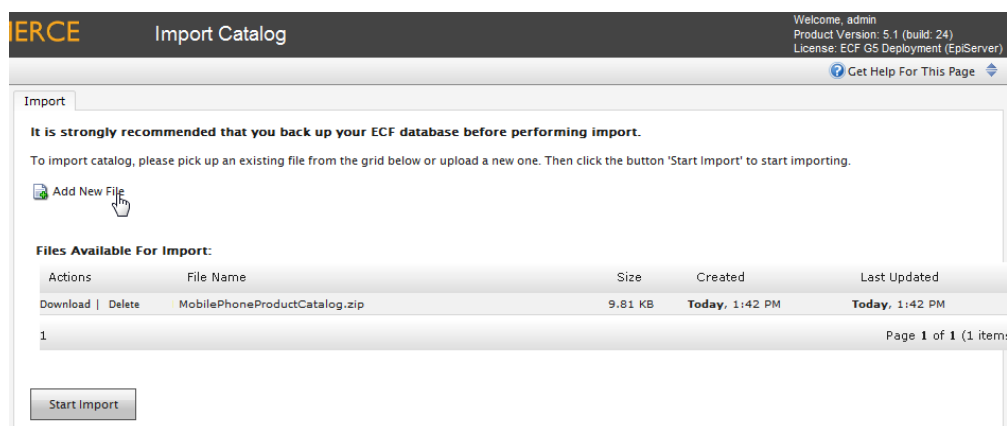
1. Access the **Catalog List** page in the Catalog Management subsystem. The Import/Export menu is located in the upper left corner of the main window.
2. For exporting catalogs, click on the check box for the appropriate catalog nodes.

- Click on the **Import/Export** pull-down menu to choose either import or export. The corresponding page will appear in the main window.



### Importing Catalogs

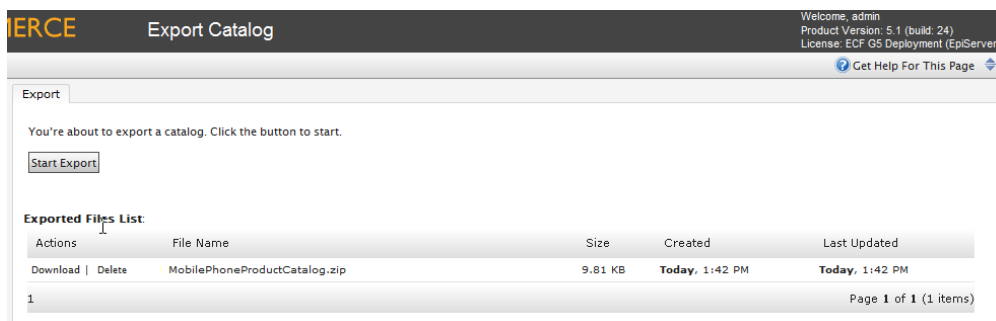
- Browse and select the file to upload.
- Click on the **Upload** file button. The files upload will appear in the list below.
- Click on the **Start Import** button. The progress window will show that the import is taking place.
- When the import is 100% complete, close the progress window.



### Exporting Catalogs

There are two ways to export catalogs in the Export Catalogs page.

- Export everything included in the catalog node that you've selected.
  - To do this, click on the **Start Export** button. The progress window appears and shows the status of the export.
  - When the export is 100% complete, click on **Close** to close the progress window
- Export only the desired files.
  - To do this, click on the **Download** links highlighted in blue.



## Using CSV Files to Quickly Create Custom Catalogs

### Why Should I Use a CSV File?

The CSV catalog import is a feature in the Catalog Management system that enables you to import and manage catalog entries (such as Products, Variations/SKUs, Packages) in bulk using an excel spreadsheet (.csv format). It is an alternative to manually creating catalog entries directly in Commerce Manager, which can be tedious when dealing with a large amount of catalog data.

This feature enables you to accomplish these key tasks:

- Import your .csv spreadsheets and create new catalog entries in Commerce Manager.
- Set your catalog items into a desired category structure of your choosing
- Create entry relations to associate one entry with others (e.g., variation/SKUs will appear within a product or a package)
- Edit or delete existing catalog items..

The CSV catalog import feature can be used for your entire catalog data, or just portions of them.

### Import Overview

Here are the basic steps you can take to import and set up a new catalog using the CSV import feature. Before you start, choose an existing catalog folder or create a new one (in the Catalog Management system) to import the CSV files to.

1. Create CSV data files (using Excel Spreadsheet, Notepad, etc.) with information about your categories, entries, and entry relations.
2. Create necessary meta fields for the new catalog entries (in the Administration system).
3. Upload the CSV data files to the **CSV Import** page.
4. Create a mapping file for each CSV file. A mapping file is needed to link each column of data in a CSV file to the correct attributes in Commerce Manager.
5. Import the CSV files and their corresponding mapping files into a specific catalog.
6. Create entry relations to associate one entry with another (e.g., a Package and a Product, a Product and a Variation/SKU, etc.).

### Format for CSV Files

CSV files you create and import into Commerce Manager need to have a particular format.

- The first row should have headers that correspond to different attributes of the data you want to import (e.g., product name, price, description, image file location, etc.).
- There are a few attributes that are in your CSV file to correctly structure your catalog:
- **Code:** A unique code to identify each category or entry
- **Name:** A unique name for each row of data

- **Entry Type** (for entries only): Each row must contain one of the following five words in order for the Commerce Manager to correctly recognize its entry type --"Variation", "Product", "Package", "Bundle" or "Dynamic Package"
- **Parent & Child Entry Code** (for entry relations only): A CSV file containing these codes can specify relationships between entries (e.g., display different Variations within a Product). Although, the following attribute is useful in creating a hierarchy in your catalog:
- **Action**: A command to specify the action that will be taken during the import. Choose one of the three options: **Insert/Update/Delete** or **I/U/D**.

**Note:** Please make sure to specify an appropriate command for each line of the CSV files. Entering "Insert" when that data already exist, or "Update" when no data exist will give an error during import and those line of data will not get successfully imported.

- **Category Code** (by comma): By assigning a category code to an entry, you can specify the category that you want to place your entry in.  
Also please note this rule:
- **SEO URL**: By design, this attribute that is present in both categories and entries must be unique for each item in your catalog. Importing files that contain more than one identical url will result in an error.

#### Mapping Types

Different mapping types are used to create the mapping files mentioned in step 4 above.

- **Category w/ Meta Data** – select this type to create a mapping file for your category files.
- **Entry w/ Meta Data** – select this type to create a mapping file for all the entry files (i.e., Packages, Products, Variation/SKUs, Bundles, and Dynamic Packages).
- **Entry Relation** – select this type to create a mapping file for your entry relation file that specifies the relationships between entries such as many SKUs to one Product, or SKUs and Products to a Package.
- **Entry Association** – select this type when creating a mapping file for entry associations (Advertising other items under titles such as "You may also be interested in...").
- **Variation w/ Inventory** – select this type to create a mapping file to import your Pricing/Inventory data located in your Variation/SKU Edit screen.
- **Sale Price** – Select this type to create a mapping file for Sale Price file, which specifies different currencies for each item.

By selecting these options, the Commerce Manager will display different sets of Fields and Attributes for you to manually assign to each data column of your CSV file. Figure 8 and 9 below shows the display of the mapping files with the Category w/ Meta and Entry Relations Data type respectively. The items under **Fields and Attributes** with superscripts 1 and/or 2 are headers that are required attributes that must exist in the CSV files you are importing (1- required field for Insert, 2 – required field for Update).

#### Example: Importing and Setting up a New Catalog

The example below demonstrates how to use CSV import using the guidelines provided above.

Let's say you want to set up a "Baby Stuff" catalog with categories and entries as shown here in Figure 1.

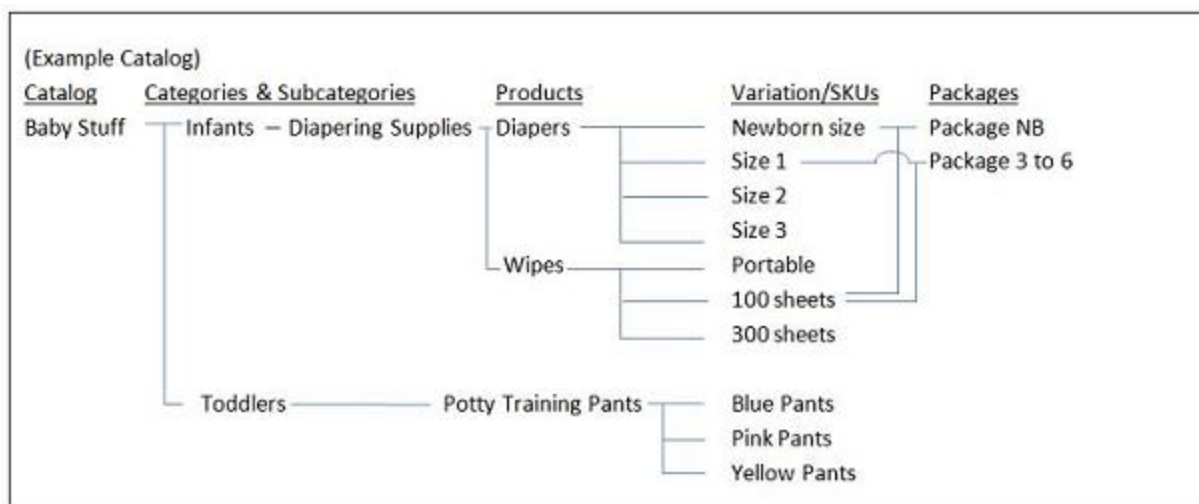


Figure 1

**Prerequisite: Create a new catalog**

First, create a new catalog called "Baby Stuff" in the Catalog Management system.

**Step 1: Create CSV files containing data for your new entries**

The example below is based on an a set of sample .csv files.

These files provide the base for the discussion in the following section.

The sample files contain the following:

- BabyStuffCategories.csv
- BabyProducts.csv
- BabyPackages.csv
- BabyVariations.csv
- BabyVariationInventoryPricing.csv
- BabyEntryRelations.csv
- BabyAssociations.csv
- BabySalePrice.csv

**CSV File Type 1 - Category File**

This file specifies data for categories and/or subcategories within a Catalog.

The top line has column headers that will be matched with the Meta fields in the later steps. The headers can also have different names. As you will see in later steps, Category Code in column 1 is important since it specifies where the entry data will be stored. The code entered in under Parent Code in column 2 can be used to create subcategories. If the Parent Code is set to "null" or "root," then that category will be created in the root level of a catalog. In this example, the "Infants" and "Toddlers" category will be created at the root level, while the "Diapering Supplies" category will be located under "Infants" as a subcategory.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Action	Category Code	Parent Code	Category Name	Available from	Expires on	Available (True/False)
2	Insert	Cat1	null	Infants	1/1/2009	6/1/2009	TRUE
3	Insert	Cat2	null	Toddlers	1/1/2009	6/1/2009	TRUE
4	Insert	Cat10	Cat1	Diapering Supplies	1/1/2009	5/1/2009	TRUE
5							

Figure 2

**CSV File Type 2 – Entry Files**

These files specifies data for Catalog Entries. The Products, Variation/SKUS, and Packages CSV files for this example are shown in Figure 3, 4, and 5 respectively.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
1	Action	Product Code	Product Name	Entry Type	Category Code	Available from	Expires on	Availa
2	Insert	Prod1	Diapers	Product	Cat10	1/1/2009	6/1/2009	
3	Insert	Prod2	Wipes	Product	Cat10	1/1/2009	5/1/2009	
4	Insert	Prod3	Potty Training Pants	Product	Cat2	1/1/2009	6/1/2009	
5								

Figure 3

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
1	Action	Variation Code	Variation Name	Entry Type	Category Code	Available from	Expires on	(
2	Insert	Var1	Diapers - Newborn size	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
3	Insert	Var2	Diapers - size 1	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
4	Insert	Var3	Diapers - size 2	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
5	Insert	Var4	Diapers - size 3	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
6	Insert	Var5	Diapers - size 4	Variation	Cat10	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
7	Insert	Var6	Training Pants - Blue	Variation	Cat2	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
8	Insert	Var7	Training Pants - Pink	Variation	Cat2	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
9	Insert	Var8	Training Pants - Yellow	Variation	Cat2	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
10	Insert	Var9	Baby Wipes - Portable 80 ct	Variation	Cat10	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
11	Insert	Var10	Baby Wipes - 300 ct	Variation	Cat10	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
12	Insert	Var11	Baby Wipes - 700 ct	Variation	Cat10	1/2/2009 11:00	10/1/2012 18:00	
13								
14								

Figure 4

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
1	Action	Package Code	Package Name	Entry Type	Category Code	Available from	Expires on	Availa
2	Insert	Package NB	Newborn Package	Package	Cat10	1/1/2009	12/31/2010	
3	Insert	Package3to6	3 to 6 mo Package	Package	Cat10	1/1/2009	12/31/2010	
4								

Figure 5

**CSV File Type 3 – Entry Relations File**

This file is used to link one entry to others. In this example, Var1 ~ Var5 (different diaper sizes) are associated to Prod1 "Diapers," Var9 ~ Var11 (different quantity for wipes) are associated with Prod2 "Wipes" and so forth. Also some variations are assigned to packages. Please note that the Prod, Var and Package codes MUST BE the codes from the entry CSV files (Figure 3, 4, and 5). If you include codes that are not defined in the entry CSV files, you will get an error while importing them into Commerce Manager in Step 4.

	A	B	C	D
1	Action	Parent Entry Code	Child Entry Code	
2	Insert	Prod1	Var1	
3	Insert	Prod1	Var2	
4	Insert	Prod1	Var3	
5	Insert	Prod1	Var4	
6	Insert	Prod1	Var5	
7	Insert	Prod2	Var9	
8	Insert	Prod2	Var10	
9	Insert	Prod2	Var11	
10	Insert	Prod3	Var6	
11	Insert	Prod3	Var7	
12	Insert	Prod3	Var8	
13	Insert	Package NB	Var1	
14	Insert	Package NB	Var10	
15	Insert	Package3to6	Var2	
16	Insert	Package3to6	Var10	
17				

Figure 6

**CSV file type 4 - Associations file**

This file is used to create associations between different entries. In this example, Var 10 is associated to Var 1 as an Accessory, and Var 2 to Var 1 as a cross-sell item.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Action	Baby Catalog Association Name		Parent Entry Code	Child Entry Code	Sort Order
2	Insert	Accessories		Var1	Var10	1
3	Insert	Customers Who Bought This Item Also Bought		Var1	Var2	2
4						

Figure 7

**CSV file type 5 - Pricing/Inventory file**

This file is used to specify the information for the Pricing/Inventory tab of each individual entry.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	Action	Entry Code	Price	Tax Category	Track Inventory (True/False)	Warehouse	Weight	Package	Min Quantity	Max Quantity
2	Update	Var1	16.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
3	Update	Var2	17.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
4	Update	Var3	17.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
5	Update	Var4	18.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
6	Update	Var5	18.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
7	Update	Var6	25.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
8	Update	Var7	25.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
9	Update	Var8	25.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
10	Update	Var9	4.49	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
11	Update	Var10	15.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
12	Update	Var11	25.99	General Sales	TRUE	Default Warehouse	1	box		1
13										

Figure 8

**CSV file type 6 - Sale Price file**

This file is used to specify the information for the Pricing section of the Pricing/Inventory page.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	Action	Entry Code	Sale Type	Sale Code	Unit Price	Currency	Start Date	End Date	
2	Insert	Var1		BBV1	16.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
3	Insert	Var2		BBV2	17.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
4	Insert	Var3		BBV3	17.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
5	Insert	Var4		BBV4	18.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
6	Insert	Var5		BBV5	18.99	USD	1/1/2009 6:00	10/1/2009 18:00	
7	Insert	Var6		BBV6	25.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/3/2009 23:00	
8	Insert	Var7		BBV7	25.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/2/2009 22:00	
9	Insert	Var8		BBV8	25.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/1/2009 19:00	
10	Insert	Var9		BBV9	4.49	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/2/2009 22:00	
11	Insert	Var10		BBV10	15.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/2/2009 22:00	
12	Insert	Var11		BBV11	25.99	USD	1/2/2009 11:00	6/2/2009 22:00	
13									

Figure 9

#### Step 2: Create necessary meta fields for the new catalog entries

For this example, no additional meta fields need to be created because the sample spreadsheet uses only the default attributes.

To create new meta fields follow these steps here.

- Go to the Administration system in Commerce Manager.
- Select the "Catalog System" folder and then "Meta Classes" node located in the left navigation frame.
- Select Create New, then New Meta Class from its pull-down menu.
  - Enter in a Name, Friendly Name (e.g., Baby Catalog), and some description (optional) for the meta class, and choose "Catalog Entry" for Entry Type.
  - Click OK to save the new class.
- Next Select Create New, then New Meta Field from its pull-down menu.
  - Enter in a Name, Friendly Name (e.g., Baby Diaper Size), and some optional description.
  - Also Choose the data type for this meta field and other properties by clicking on the checkboxes.
  - Click OK to save the new field.
  - Repeat the steps to create all the necessary fields.
- Associate the new meta fields to the meta class you created.
  - Select to "Meta Classes" node on the left navigation frame again.
  - For "Element" choose "Catalog Entry" in the pull-down menu.
  - Under "Type" choose your meta class (e.g., Baby Catalog) you created earlier.
  - Select the desired meta fields from the list displayed at the bottom of the screen.
  - Select OK to save the new meta class to fields association.



- You are done with setting up your meta fields.

**Step 3: Upload the CSV data files to the CSV Import page**

Follow these steps to prepare the CSV files for import:

- Select the Catalog Management system.
- In the upper-left detail area, click on Catalogs folder and you will see the Catalog List view in the main area.
- In the action area above the main view, click the Import/Export drop-down button and select CSV Import Catalog.
- You will now see the CSV Import Catalog page in the main screen. The screen contains two tabs 1) CSV Import and 2) Mapping File, which we will be talking about next.

**CSV Import Tab**

- In the "CSV Import" tab in the main view, click "Add New File."
- Browse for the CSV file you wish to import, then click "Upload File."
- When you get the "Uploaded File:" confirmation, click "Save the file."
- The CSV file you uploaded will be added to the "Files available for import:" list.
- Repeat the previous four steps for each CSV file you wish to upload.

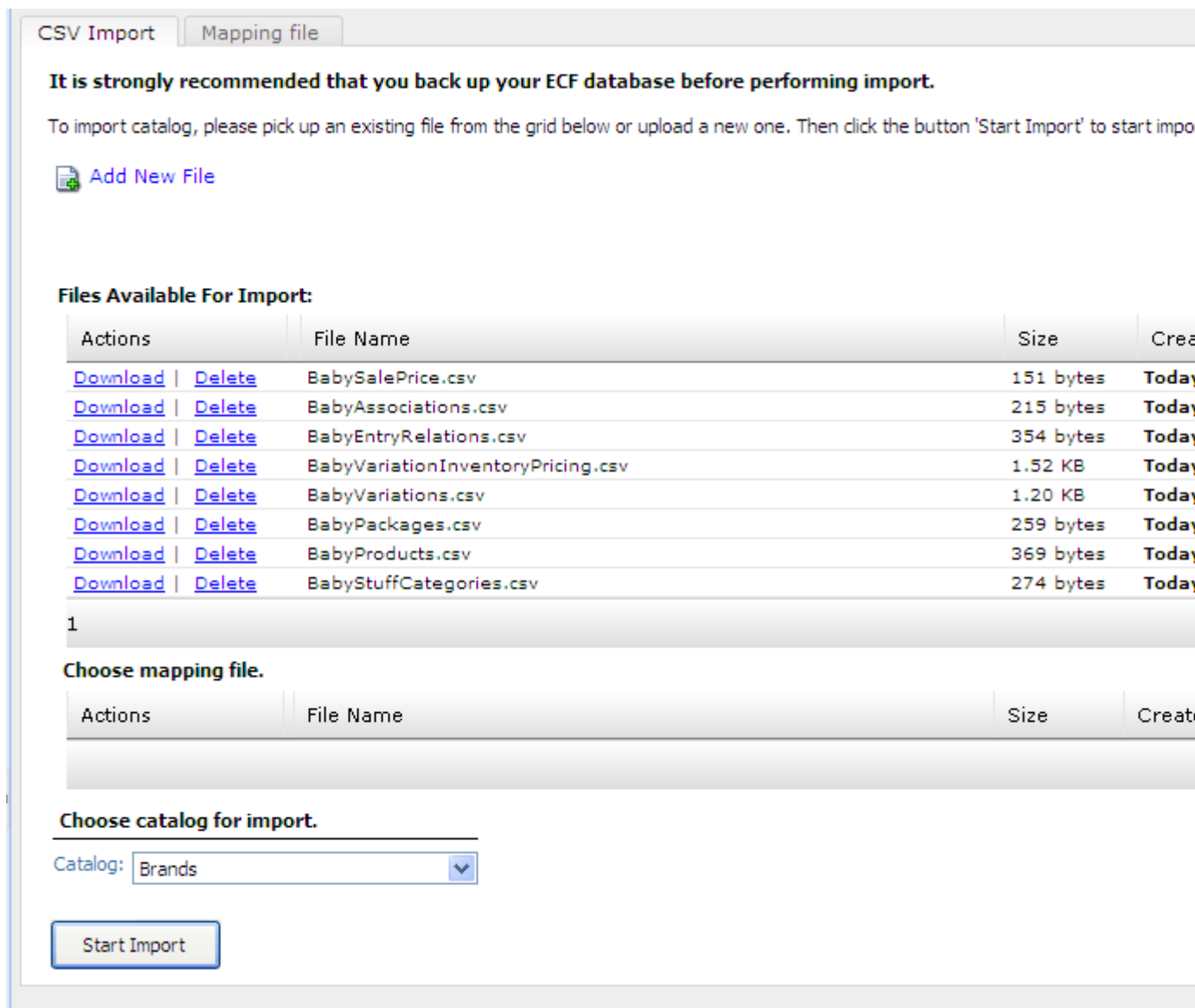


Figure 10

**Step 4: Create a mapping file for each CSV file**

Now create a mapping file that will specify the data in the CSV file to its corresponding attributes in the Commerce Manager.

**Mapping file tab**

- Click the "Mapping file" tab in the main view. You will now see the "Mapping file" tab view of the CSV Import Catalog view as shown in Figure 11.

**CSV Import** | **Mapping file**

**Edit existing mapping file.**

Load mapping file:

**MetaClass, Language**

Mapping Type:

Meta Class:

Language:

**Data File And CSV Adjustment**

Data File:

Delimiter:

Text Qualifier:

Encoding:

**Fields and Attributes**

Action (Insert/Update/Delete or I/U/D)

Code<sup>1,2</sup>

Parent Code

Name<sup>1</sup>

Available from

Expires on

Display Template

Available (True/False)

Sort Order

SeoTitle (en-us)

SeoUrl (en-us)

SeoDescription (en-us)

SeoKeywords (en-us)

Display Name (en-us)

Primary Image

Description (en-us)

**Column headers in the data file**

Column 1 - Action

Column 2 - Category Code

Column 3 - Parent Code

Column 4 - Category Name

Column 5 - Available from

Column 6 - Expires on

Column 7 - Available (True/False)

Column 8 - Sort Order

**Custom values**

<Custom value>

Column 1 - Action

Column 2 - Category Code

Column 3 - Parent Code

Column 4 - Category Name

Column 5 - Available from

Column 6 - Expires on

Column 7 - Available (True/False)

Column 8 - Sort Order

**Save mapping file.**

Enter file name:  .xml

Figure 11

### Edit existing mapping file section

- **Load mapping file:** This section is used to retrieve previously created and saved mapping files. Since there is no existing mapping file in this example, leave this section blank.

### Meta Class, Language section

- Mapping Type\*: Select "Category w/ Meta Data"
- Meta Class\*: Select "Default Catalog Node"
- Language\*: English

### Data file and CSV adjustment section

- Data File\*: The drop down values presented here are dependent on the different CSV data files you uploaded on the "CSV Import" tab in step 2.
- For this example, first choose "BabyStuffCategory.csv." Leave the rest of the field as default and move on to the next section.

### Fields and Attributes, Column headers in the data file, and Selected values section

The values presented under the "Fields and Attributes" column are representative of the "Meta Class" selected in the "MetaClass, Language" section above (which were either previously imported or created within Commerce Manager).

The values presented in the drop-down menus under the "Column headers in the data file" column are representative of the "Data file" selected in the "Data file and CSV adjustment" section above (which were previously imported above).

- Select the appropriate "Column header" drop-down value to "map" with the MetaClass "Fields and Attributes" to the left; the value selected will be reflected in the "Selected values" column to the right.

### Save mapping file section

- Enter a file name for the "Enter file name" textbox. For this example, save the mapping files using the same CSV file names.
- Click the "Save" button. The browser returns to the CSV Import tab, and the mapping file in .XML format will be added to the list in the "Choose mapping file" section.
- Repeat Step 3 to create and save a mapping file for each CSV files you wish to import.
- For CSV Entry files, select the "Entry w/ Meta Data" option under "Mapping Type."
- For CSV Entry Relations file, select "Entry Relation".
- For CSV Associations file, select "Entry Association."
- For CSV Pricing/Inventory file, select "Variation w/ Inventory."
- For CSV Sale Pricing file, select "Sale Price."
- When all the mapping files are saved, your CSV Import tab screen should look something like this.

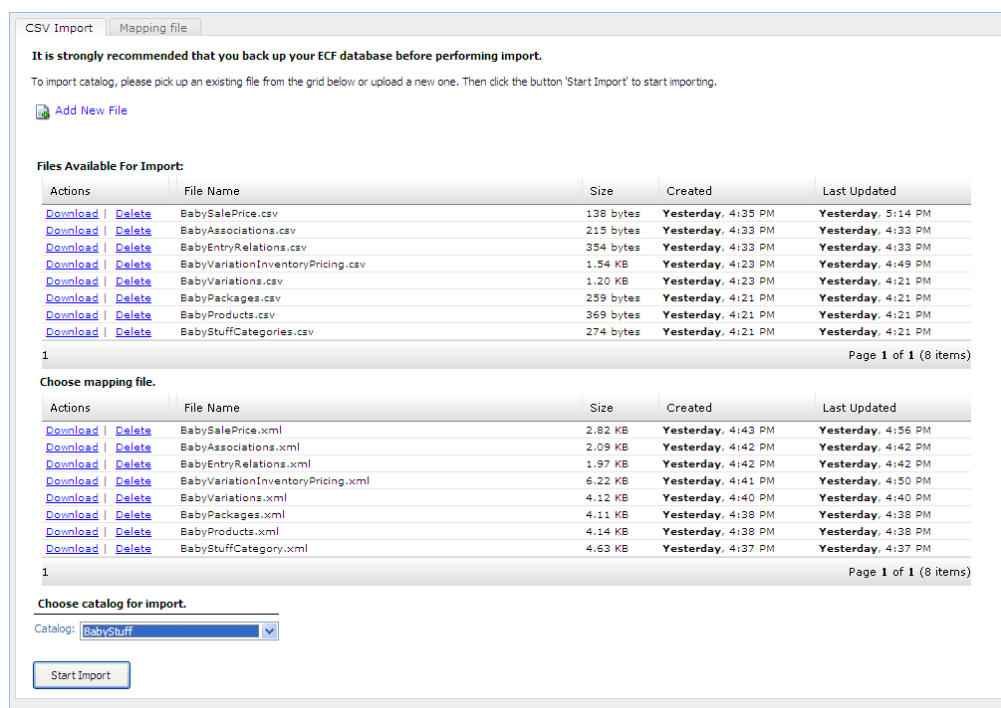


Figure 12

### Step 5. Import the CSV files and their corresponding mapping files into a specific catalog

At the "CSV Import" tab view (Figure 12), do the following:

- Select and highlight the CSV file you wish to import in the "Files available for import" section. For this example, select BabyStuffCategories.csv.
- Select and highlight the mapping file that corresponds to the selected CSV file in the "Choose mapping file for import" section. For this example, select BabyStuffCategories.xml.
- Select the catalog in the "Catalog" drop-down into which you would like to import your CSV data. In this example choose "Baby Stuff".

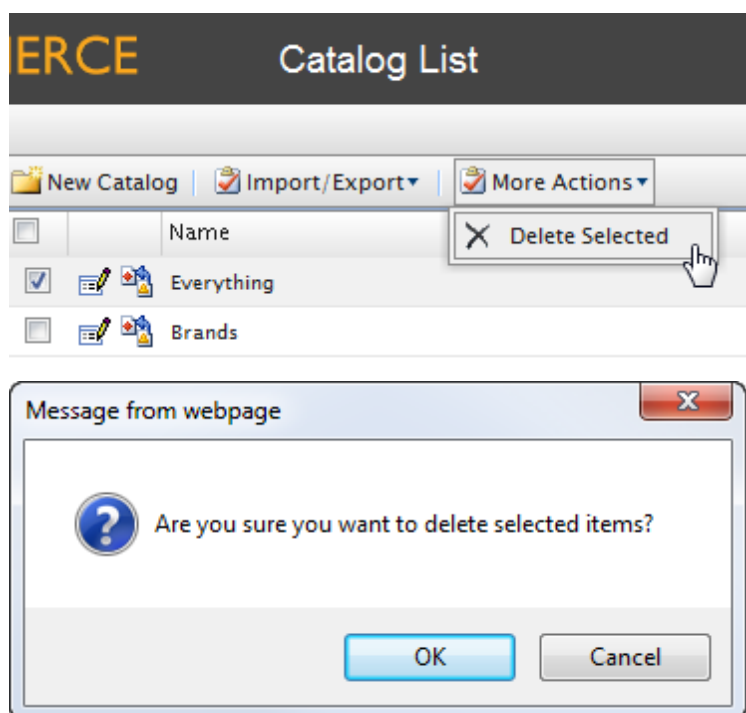
- Click the "Start import" button. You will see the "Importing catalog" modal dialog box which will notify you of the percentage of completion as well as logging messages.
- Click "Close Window" at the bottom of the modal dialog to complete the operation.
- Repeat Step 4 to import all the remaining CSV & Mapping pairs.

#### Step 6. Verify Your Import

In the Catalog Management system, expand the "Baby Stuff" folder under Catalog and verify that the contents of your CSV file were imported into the appropriate catalog.

#### Deleting a Catalog

1. At the **Catalog** List page, check off the box to the respective Catalog you wish delete.
2. Select **More Actions** and then **Delete Selected** from its pull-down menu, located in the menu bar.
3. A pop up will appear to confirm your action. Select **OK** to delete it. The chosen catalog will be deleted from the list.



## Categories and Nodes

A Category or a Node is a grouping of purchasable Products. In this section, you will learn how to browse, create, clone, move, link, and delete Categories and Sub-Categories.

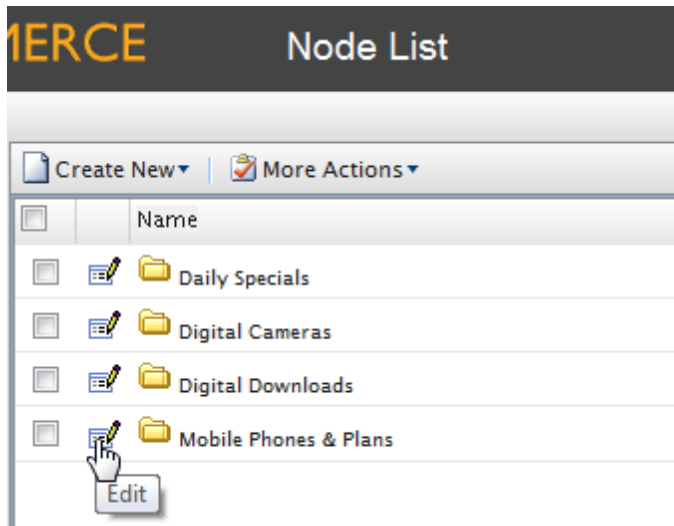
#### Browsing Categories

The Node List (aka the Category List) is used to organize and manage nodes/categories, subcategories created within a Catalog.

The "Brand" Catalog for example, which is available in the Commerce Manager by default, includes nodes assigned with brand names such as "Canon", "IZOD", and "Dell". Also the Everything Catalog contains a node called "Mobile Phones & Plans" which has subcategories called "Phones" and "Plans". Additional nodes or subcategories may be created in the Node List page.

1. Clicking on the memo icon, located between the check box and the folder icon, will display the Catalog Node Edit page, which contains more information and settings of that particular node. Here you can setup the information and status that are common for all its subcategories.

2. Clicking on any node names (highlighted in blue) will take you to the next sublevel, which shows the list of categories under the selected node.



#### Menu Bar Functions

- **Create New**

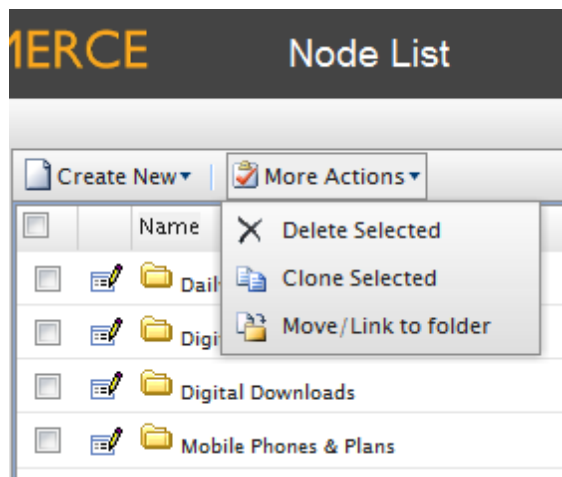
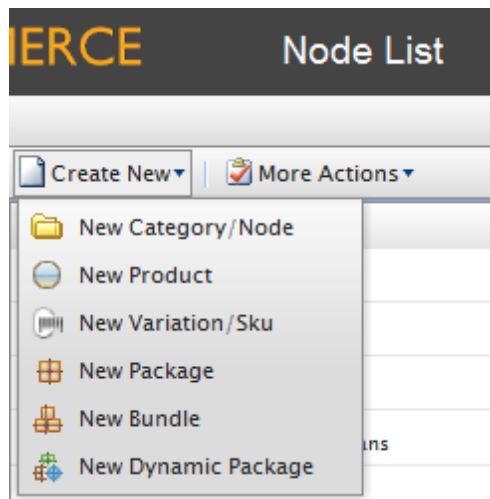
This dropdown allows users to create different types of Categories/Nodes or Product entries as shown below.

- Category/Node
- Product
- Variation/SKU
- Package
- Bundle
- Dynamic Package

- **More Actions**

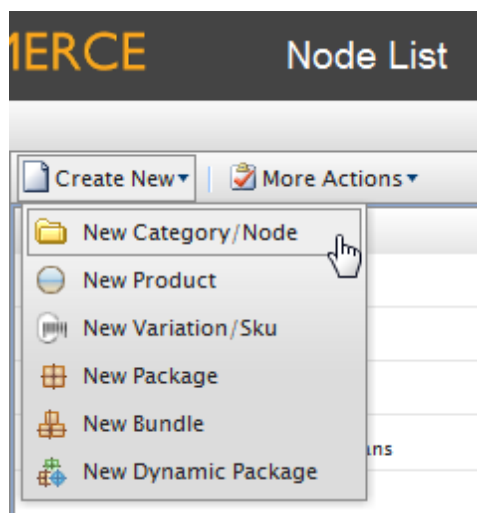
- Delete Selected
- Clone Selected
- Move/Link to Folder

Under "More Actions," cloning creates a duplicates with a unique ID that you can place in any location/hierarchy that you choose. "Move/Link to Folder" allows you either to move a category/product to a new location/hierarchy or to link one category/product to another category/product. So for example, you can create a category called "Featured Products" and link it to items across various other categories. This way, if you make changes to content on the original product page and that same product is part of the "Featured Products" category as a linked product, the changes will be displayed in both locations. In other words, changes are bi-directional. Links can be broken if either of the two are deleted.



### Creating a Category

1. To create a new category, click on **Create New** and then click on **New Category/Node**.



This page will appear when creating a new category or editing an existing one. The **Catalog Node Edit** page will contain information of a **Node** selected from the **Node List** page.

#### Overview Fields

- **Name** - enter a name for the product
- **Available from** - the date to which the product is activated
- **Expires on** - the date on which the product expires; once the expiration date passes, the product will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the products in the public site from this dropdown box; by default, the only available catalog display template is "Digital Camera". To create your custom template, you will need some technical skills with html templates.
- **Code** - enter a product code here (e.g. DIGICAM)
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the product is sorted in the Node List page
- **Available** - select Yes to make the product appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or product attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site
- **Display Name** - enter a name the way you like to be displayed in the public site with appropriate languages
- **Primary Image** - use the browse button to select and upload an image here
- **Description** - enter a description of a product with appropriate languages



Once done, click **OK** on the bottom of the page.

## SEO

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines

**Commerce Catalog Node Edit**

Overview | **SEO** | Assets

Title (en-us):

Url (en-us):

Description (en-us):

Keywords (en-us):

Title (de-de):

Url (de-de):

Description (de-de):

Keywords (de-de):

Title (es-es):

Url (es-es):

Description (es-es):

Keywords (es-es):

OK Cancel

## Assets

Under Assets, you can associate additional files such as images, pdf, and video files all stored in the Asset Management system.

**ERCE** Catalog Node Edit

Overview | **SEO** | **Assets**

Find Assets:

Group Name:

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
Page 1 of 0 (0 items)					

Follow these three simple steps to add an asset file to the current entry.

1. Click on the **Find Assets** pull-down menu to display all files available in the Asset system.
  2. Choose one file at a time and type in an appropriate **Group Name** (see table below), depending now how you would like it to be displayed.
  3. Click on **Add Asset**. The asset associated to this entry will appear in the lower section of the screen.
- You can edit the Group Name or sort order by clicking on the Edit icon to the left of an existing asset. After making any changes, make sure to click **Update** (Clicking **OK** at the bottom of the screen during the editing mode will not save the changes made).
  - You can delete any existing asset by clicking on the "X" icon.

File type	Group Names	How it gets displayed in the public site
Image Files (jpg, png, etc.)	<b>image</b>	Thumbnail icon will appear on the product details page
Downloadable Files (docs, pdf, mp3s)	<b>Downloads</b>	A "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
Specification Files (docs, pdf)	<b>Specifications</b>	A "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

**ERCE** Catalog Node Edit

Overview | **SEO** | **Assets**

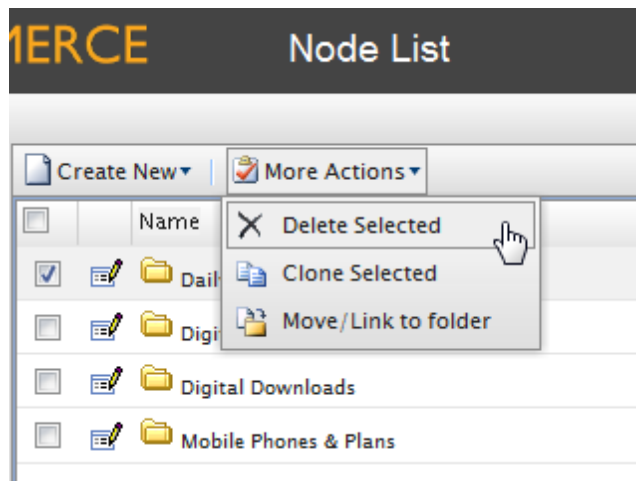
Find Assets:

Group Name:

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
	2	folder	Root/Video/	default	0
Page 1 of 1 (1 items)					

### Deleting a Category

1. To delete a category/node, go to the Node List.
2. Checkmark the box next to the node.
3. Click on **More Actions** and then click on **Delete Selected** to delete the Category/Node.



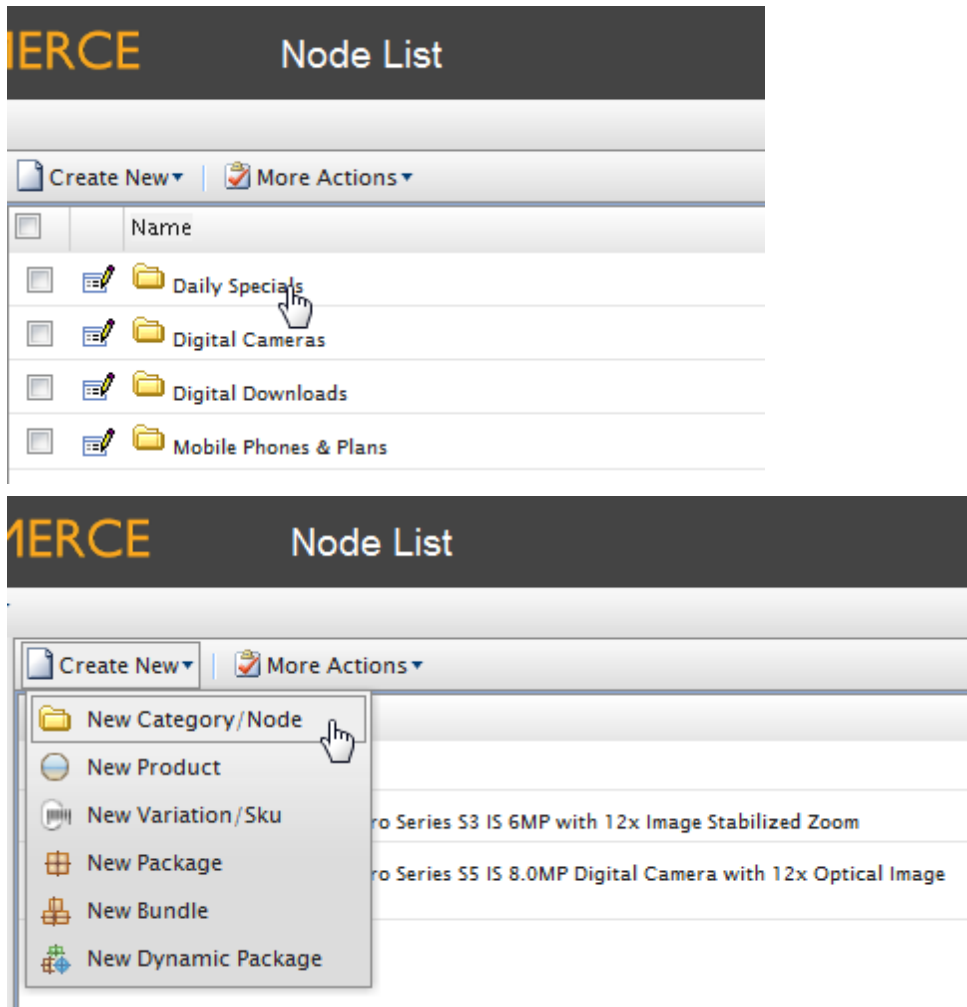
### Organizing Categories

To organize a category, enter a numerical order in the **Sort Order** field within the **Catalog Node Edit** page. Categories and node will sort based on numerical order.

### Creating a Sub-Category

To create a sub-category, it is similar to creating a high-level category.

1. Go to **Node List** and click through an existing Catalog
2. Click on **Create New** and click on **Category Node**. Specify the information under **Catalog Edit** (refer to Creating a Category) and click **OK** to save changes.



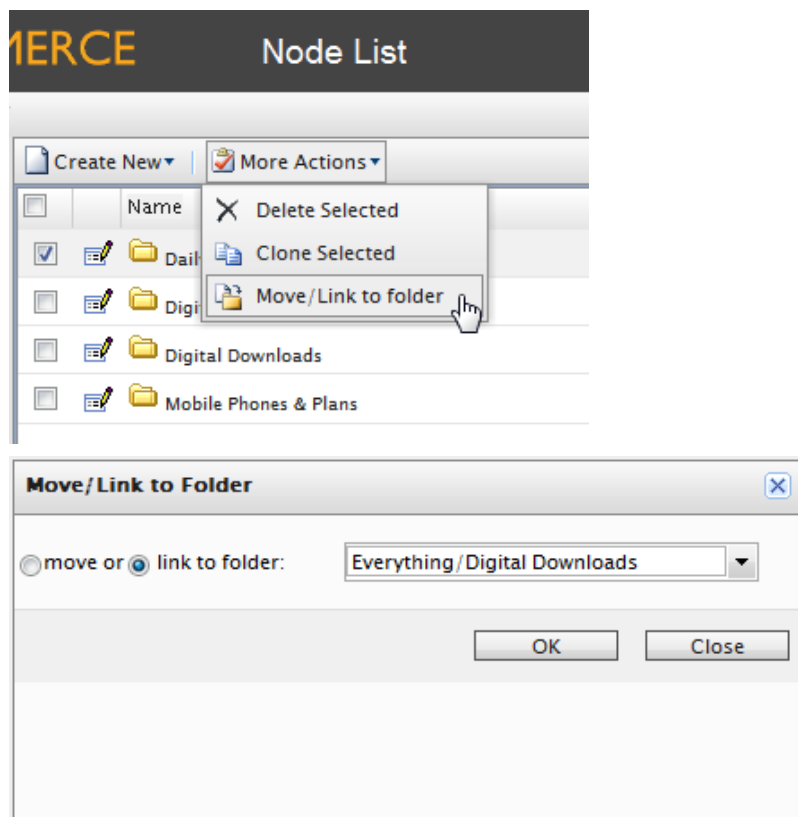
### Cloning, Moving or Linking a Category

Under "More Actions," cloning creates a duplicates with a unique ID that you can place in any location/hierarchy that you choose.

"Move/Link to Folder" allows you either to move a category/product to a new location/hierarchy or to link one category/product to another category/product. So for example, you can create a category called "Featured Products" and link it to items across various other categories.

This way, if you make changes to content on the original product page and that same product is part of the "Featured Products" category as a linked product, the changes will be displayed in both locations. In other words, changes are bi-directional. Links can be broken if either of the two are deleted.

1. To link a category, go to the **Node List** and checkmark a category you want linked back.
2. Click on **More Actions** and then click **Move/Link** folder.
3. Select link to folder and select the link destination from the dropdown menu. Click **OK** to create the link to that category under that directory.



## Products, Variations and SKUs, Bundles, Packages, Dynamic Packages and Associations

A product represents various forms of merchandise that you can display and purchase from the public site, including Products, Variations/SKUs, Bundles, Packages and Dynamic Packages.

- **Product Entries**

A product entry typically contains a product name, part number, description and images.

- **Variations/SKUs**

A variation or SKU corresponds to a specific type of product with specific characteristics. For example, a product of Shirts will have an individual variation/SKU which includes size, color and sleeve length.

- **Bundles**

a bundle is a collection of Variations and SKUs allowing customers to purchase two or more items at once (all pricing is SKU specific and separate, unlike a package which is multiple SKUs put together in a single unified price).

- **Packages**

A package is comparable to an individual SKU because the package item must be purchased as a whole (i.e. computer system). Items can be put within a package and package can have its own unique pricing.

- **Dynamic Packages**

A dynamic package is similar to the package definition above with the added ability to configure the package during checkout.

- **Associations**

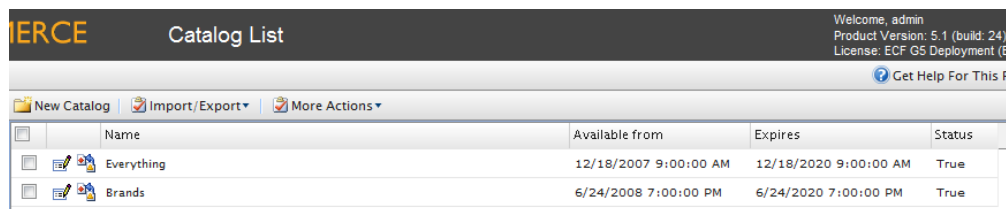
One or more products can be associated to a product so that they can be displayed advertised on the public site as product accessories, or upselling/cross-selling item. Associations can be made

from any of the individual products (Product Entries, SKUs, Bundles, Packages, and Dynamic Packages).

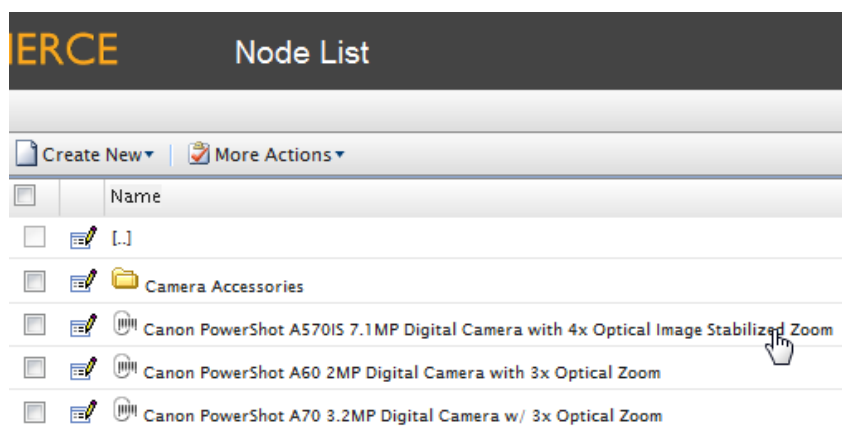
### Browsing Products

Products are created within a catalog. Products can be placed one level beneath the root of a Catalog and further down into subfolders.

To browse products, click on a **Catalog** and drill down categories until you see Products such as the one highlighted below in the second screenshot..



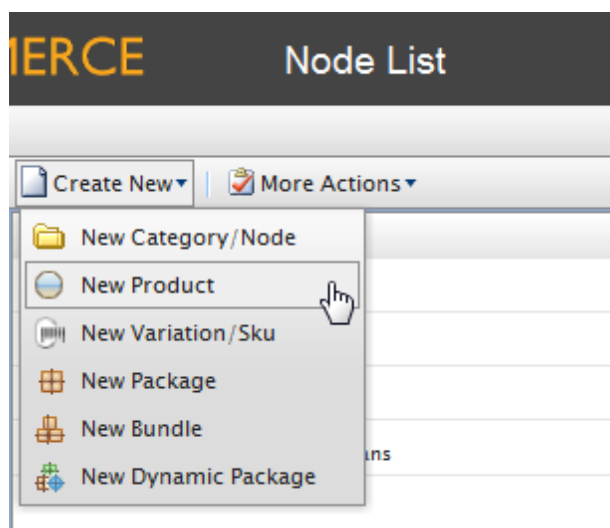
	Name	Available from	Expires	Status
	Everything	12/18/2007 9:00:00 AM	12/18/2020 9:00:00 AM	True
	Brands	6/24/2008 7:00:00 PM	6/24/2020 7:00:00 PM	True



	Name	Available from	Expires	Status
	[...]			
	Camera Accessories			
	Canon PowerShot A570IS 7.1MP Digital Camera with 4x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom			
	Canon PowerShot A60 2MP Digital Camera with 3x Optical Zoom			
	Canon PowerShot A70 3.2MP Digital Camera w/ 3x Optical Zoom			

### Creating a Product (including Variations and SKUs, SEO, Associations, Assets)

To create a product, click through an existing catalog and click on **Create New** and then click on **Create Product**.



### Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Product.

- **Name** - a name for the product.
- **Available from** - the date to which the product is activated

- **Expires on** - the date on which the product expires; once the expiration date passes, the product will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the products in the public site from this dropdown box; by default, the only available catalog display template is "Digital Camera". To create your custom template, you will need some technical skills with html templates.
- **Code** - enter a product code here (e.g. DIGICAM).
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the product is sorted in the Node List page.
- **Available** - select Yes to make the product appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or product attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site.

## Product Edit

Overview

Variations/SKUs

SEO

Associations

Assets

Relations

Name:

Available from:

6/21/2011

02:38 PM

Expires on:

6/21/2021

02:38 PM

Display Template:

Digital Camera Template

Code:

Sort Order:

0

The sort order for the category entry.

Available:

☐ Yes

☒ No



















Meta Class:

Default Catalog Entry

OK

Cancel

Depending on the meta class selected, more fields are available to enter data. For instance, selecting the **Digital Camera** meta class will yield digital camera meta fields and attributes.

	Variations/SKUs	SEO	Associations	Assets
Name:	<input type="text"/>			
Available from:	<input type="text" value="5/27/2010"/>	<input type="text" value="08:41 AM"/>		
Expires on:	<input type="text" value="5/27/2011"/>	<input type="text" value="08:41 AM"/>		
Display Template:	<input type="text" value="Digital Camera"/>			
Code:	<input type="text"/>			
Sort Order:	<input type="text" value="0"/> <i>The sort order for the category entry.</i>			
Available:	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No			
Meta Class:	<input type="text" value="Digital Cameras"/>			
Display Name (en-us):	<input type="text"/>			
Display Name (de-de):	<input type="text"/>			
Display Name (es-es):	<input type="text"/>			
Primary Image (en-us):	<input type="text"/>			<input type="button" value="Browse..."/>
Description (en-us):	<div> <div>Css Class Paragraph Default Font Size</div> <div> <b>B</b> <i>I</i> <u>U</u>                   </div> </div>			

### Variations/SKU Tab

Variations/SKUs are subcategories of a Product, which represents different "variations" of the particular product (colors, sizes, different editions for example). Such Variations/SKUs can be grouped a chosen product from this tabbed page. Follow these steps to group variations/SKUs.

1. Select the **Variations/SKUs** tab
2. Within the drop-down menu next to **Find Item**, select from the list variations or SKUs to associate with the product.
3. Click on **Add Item**.

## Product Edit

Overview
**Variations/SKUs**
SEO
Associations
Assets
Relations

Find Item:

Ultimate Ears-Metro.fi 150 Noise Isolating Earphones (Black)
▲

510 Headset Charger
☰

Plantronics Voyager 510 - Bluetooth Headset Carrying Case
▼

Adapter Car Lighter Explorer / Voyager
▲

Apple Iphone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector
☰

Apple iPhone Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case- Silver - Coziq
▼

Apple iPhone 1G Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case -Black(Co
☰

Headphone Adapter for Apple iPhone Recessed Jack, 3.5mm
▼

Creative Headphones HQ-140
▲

Koss SPARKPLUG - Stereo In Ear Ear Plugs
▼

Add Item

Group

Edit Comments

OK



You can add multiple associations to the product and they will appear in a list under the column headers below.

Overview	Variations/SKUs	SEO	Associations	Assets	Relations
Find Item: <input type="text" value="Apple Iphone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with L"/> <input type="button" value="Add Item"/>					
Edit Command	ID	Name	Qty	Group	Sort Order
	2	510 Headset Ch...	1	default	0
	5	Apple Iphone PD...	1	default	0
1					Page 1 of 1 (2 items)
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>					

### SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the URL field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated url (which depends on the entry name). If the URL field is not empty (you entered some url), it will be saved as it is, and w will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the url to change, leave it blank.

Product Edit					
Overview	Variations/SKUs	SEO	Associations	Assets	Relations
Title (en-us):	<input type="text" value="Digital Camera Powershot"/>				
Url (en-us):	<input type="text"/>				
Description (en-us):	<input type="text"/>				
Keywords (en-us):	<input type="text"/>				
Title (de-de):	<input type="text"/>				
Url (de-de):	<input type="text"/>				
Description (de-de):	<input type="text"/>				
Keywords (de-de):	<input type="text"/>				
Title (es-es):	<input type="text"/>				
Url (es-es):	<input type="text"/>				
Description (es-es):	<input type="text"/>				
Keywords (es-es):	<input type="text"/>				
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>					

## Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this product. Follow these steps to create product associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.

The screenshot shows the 'Product Edit' interface with the 'Associations' tab selected. The 'Add an association' button is highlighted. Below it, there is a 'Modify Existing Association' dropdown menu and buttons for 'Edit Details', 'Modify Association', and 'Delete'. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Association Information' pop-up window. It contains three input fields: 'Name' (with the value 'cts'), 'Description' (a text area), and 'Sort Order' (with the value '1'). Each field has a placeholder text: 'Enter association name.', 'Enter association description.', and 'Enter sort order.' respectively. A 'Save Changes' button is located at the bottom right.

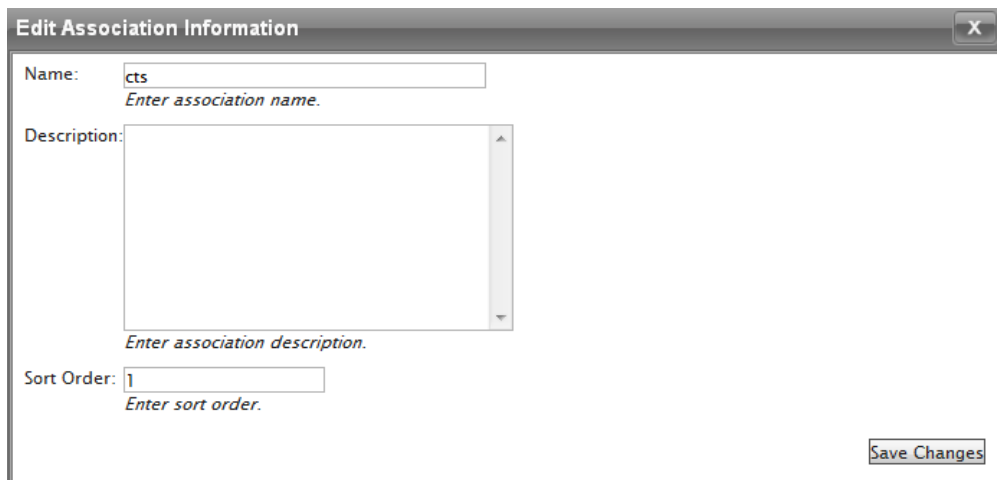
3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.

The screenshot shows the 'Product Edit' interface with the 'Associations' tab selected. The 'Add an association' button is highlighted. Below it, the 'Modify Existing Association' dropdown menu now shows 'CTS'. Buttons for 'Edit Details', 'Modify Association', and 'Delete' are visible. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.

The screenshot shows the 'Product Edit' interface with the 'Associations' tab selected. The 'Add an association' button is highlighted. Below it, the 'Modify Existing Association' dropdown menu shows 'CTS'. The 'Edit Details' button is selected. Below this, there is a 'Pick Item' dropdown menu and an 'Add Item' button. A table with columns 'Edit Command', 'Catalog#', 'Entry Id', 'Name', 'Sort Ord', and 'Type' is shown. Below the table is a pagination bar indicating 'Page 1 of 0 (0 items)'. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.



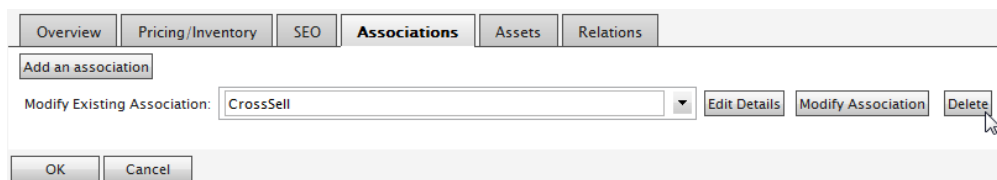
**Edit Association Information**

Name:   
Enter association name.

Description:   
Enter association description.

Sort Order:   
Enter sort order.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

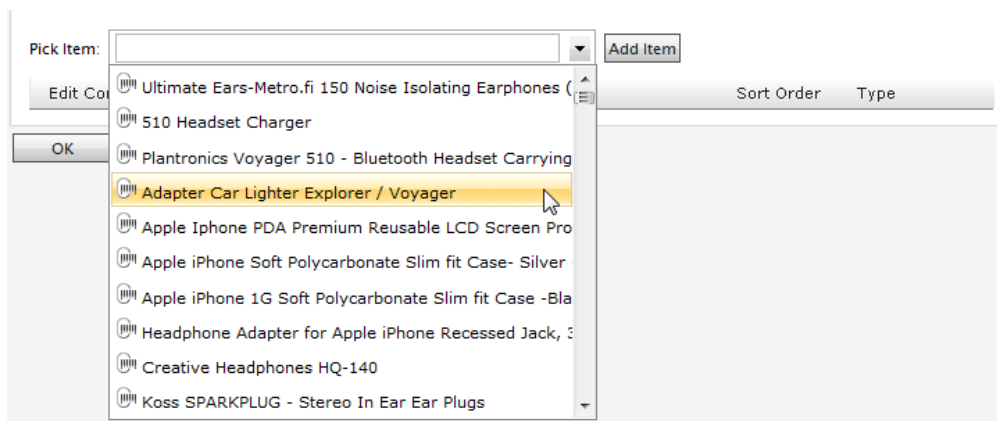


Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

Add an association

Modify Existing Association:

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.



Pick Item:

- Ultimate Ears-Metro.fi 150 Noise Isolating Earphones (510 Headset Charger)
- 510 Headset Charger
- Plantronics Voyager 510 - Bluetooth Headset Carrying
- Adapter Car Lighter Explorer / Voyager**
- Apple iPhone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Pro
- Apple iPhone Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case- Silver
- Apple iPhone 1G Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case -Black
- Headphone Adapter for Apple iPhone Recessed Jack, 3.5mm
- Creative Headphones HQ-140
- Koss SPARKPLUG - Stereo In Ear Ear Plugs

Sort Order	Type
------------	------

7. Once you click on **Add Item**, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.



Pick Item:

Edit Command	Name	Sort Order	Type
<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="X"/>	510 Headset Charger	0	OPTIONAL
<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="X"/>	Creative Headphones HQ-140	0	OPTIONAL

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

#### Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management system.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.

2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default EPiServer Commerce offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO Associations **Assets** Relations

Find Assets:

Group Name:

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
	1	file	Root/Presentati...	default	0

1 Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

### Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Digital Cameras". Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

Start CMS Commerce EPISEVER ? admin

Commerce Manager Settings

EPISEVER COMMERCE Variation/SKU Edit

Welcome, admin  
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 243)  
License: ECF-GS Deployment (EpiServer)

Welcome Change Language About

**Catalog Management**

- Catalog Management
  - Catalog Entry Search
  - Catalog Batch Update
  - Catalogs
  - Everything
  - Brands
  - Templates
- Dashboard
- Customer Management
- Catalog Management
- Order Management
- Marketing
- Asset Management
- Reporting
- Administration

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO Associations **Assets** **Relations**

ID	Name	Catalog Full Path
digital-cameras	Digital Cameras	Everything   Digital Cameras
dailyspecials	Daily Specials	Everything   Daily Specials

1 Page 1 of 1

### Editing Product Tabs

When editing a Product, options are divided by tabbed navigation.

#### Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Product.

- **Name** - a name for the product
- **Available from** - the date to which the product is activated
- **Expires on** - the date on which the product expires; once the expiration date passes, the product will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the products in the public site from this dropdown box; by default, the only available catalog display template is "Digital Camera". To create your custom template, you will need some technical skills with html templates.
- **Code** - enter a product code here (e.g. DIGICAM1, DIGICAM2,...)

- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the product is sorted in the Node List page
- **Available** - select Yes to make the product appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or product attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site

**Product Edit**

Overview Variations/SKUs SEO Associations Assets Relations

Name:

Available from:

Expires on:

Display Template:

Code:

Sort Order:   
*The sort order for the category entry.*

Available: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Meta Class:

OK Cancel

Depending on the meta class selected, more fields are available to enter data. For instance, selecting the Digital Camera meta class will yield digital camera meta fields and attributes.

Overview Variations/SKUs SEO Associations Assets

Name:

Available from:

Expires on:

Display Template:

Code:

Sort Order:   
*The sort order for the category entry.*

Available: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Meta Class:

Display Name (en-us):

Display Name (de-de):

Display Name (es-es):

Primary Image (en-us):

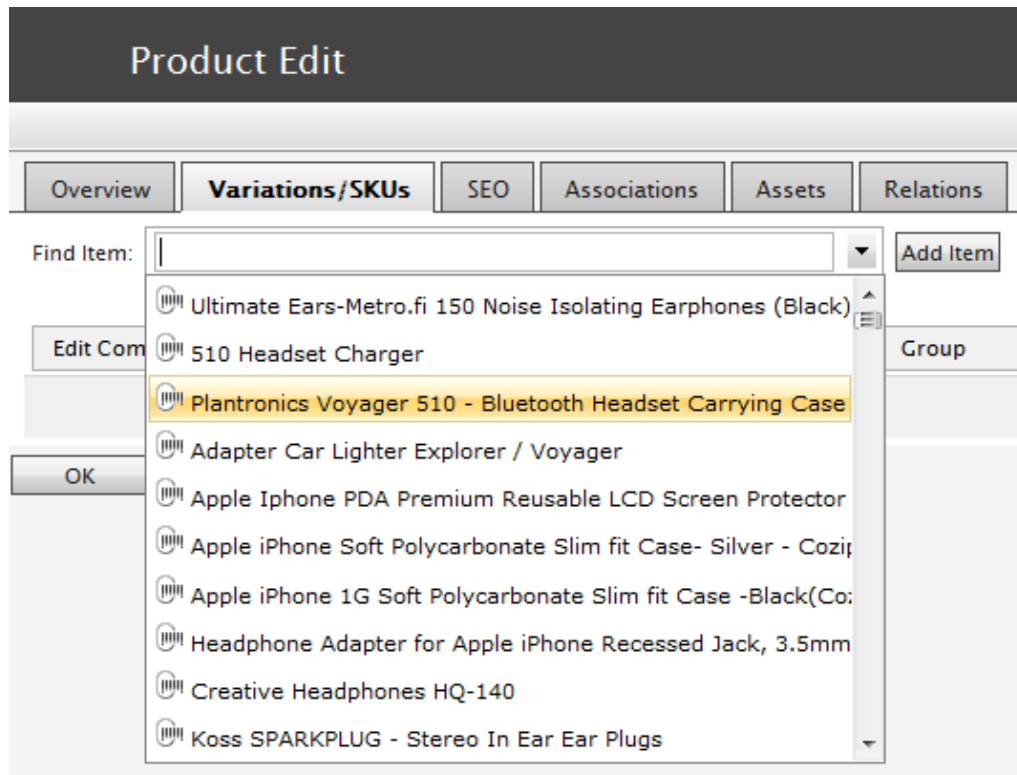
Primary Image

Description (en-us): 

Css Class Paragraph Default Font Size

**B** *I* U

2. Within the drop-down menu next to **Find Item**, select from the list variations or SKUs to associate with the product.
3. Click on **Add Item**.



You can add multiple associations to the product and they will appear in a list under the column headers below.



### SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the URL field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated URL (which depends on the entry name). If the URL field is not empty (you entered some URL), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the URL to change, leave it blank.

## Product Edit

Overview Variations/SKUs **SEO** Associations Assets Relations

Title (en-us):

Url (en-us):

Description (en-us):

Keywords (en-us):

Title (de-de):

Url (de-de):

Description (de-de):

Keywords (de-de):

Title (es-es):

Url (es-es):

Description (es-es):

Keywords (es-es):

### Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this product. Follow these steps to create product associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.

**Edit Association Information**
X

Name:   
*Enter association name.*

Description:   
*Enter association description.*

Sort Order:   
*Enter sort order.*



3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

Add an association

Modify Existing Association: CTS Edit Details Modify Association Delete

OK Cancel

4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

Add an association

Modify Existing Association: CTS Edit Details Modify Association Delete

**CTS**  
**Summer Campaign**

Pick Item: Add Item

Edit Command	Catalog	Entry Id	Name	Sort Ord	Type
--------------	---------	----------	------	----------	------

Page 1 of 0 (0 items)

OK Cancel

5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

**Edit Association Information**

Name: cts  
Enter association name.

Description:  
Enter association description.

Sort Order: 1  
Enter sort order.

Save Changes

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

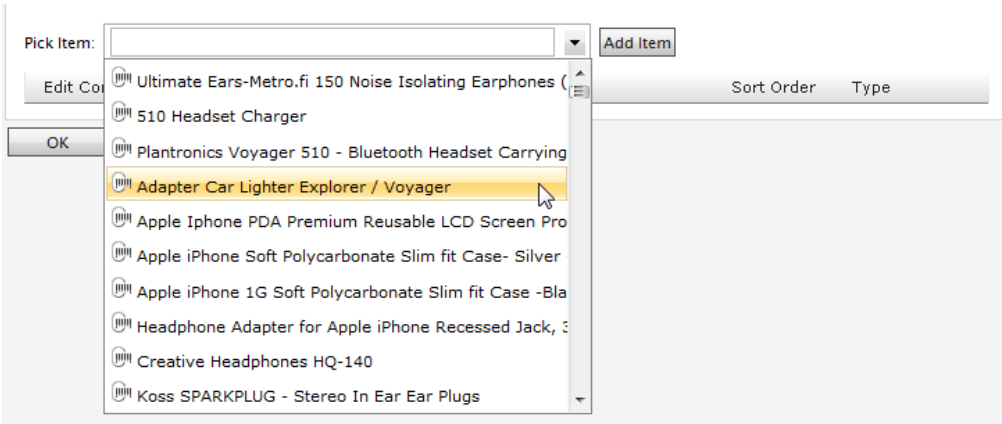
Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO **Associations** Assets Relations

Add an association

Modify Existing Association: CrossSell Edit Details Modify Association Delete

OK Cancel

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.



7. Once you click on **Add Item**, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.



You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

**Assets Tab**

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management subsystem.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.

Variation/SKU Edit Welcome, admin  
Product Version: 5.2 (b)  
License: ECF GS Deploy  
[Get Help](#)

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO Associations **Assets** Relations

Find Assets:  Add Asset

Group Name:

Edit Command

OK

- Root/
- Root/Video/
- Root/Presentations/
- Root/Specifications/
- Root/Software/
- Root/Downloads/
- Root/User Guides/
- Root/Images/

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
Page 1 of 0 (0 items)					

## 2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO Associations **Assets** Relations

Find Assets:  Add Asset

Group Name:

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
Page 1 of 0 (0 items)					

OK

## 3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.

Overview Pricing/Inventory SEO Associations **Assets** Relations

Find Assets:  Add Asset

Group Name:

Edit Command	ID	Type	Name	Group	Sort Order
✎ ✕	1	file	Root/Presentati...	default	0

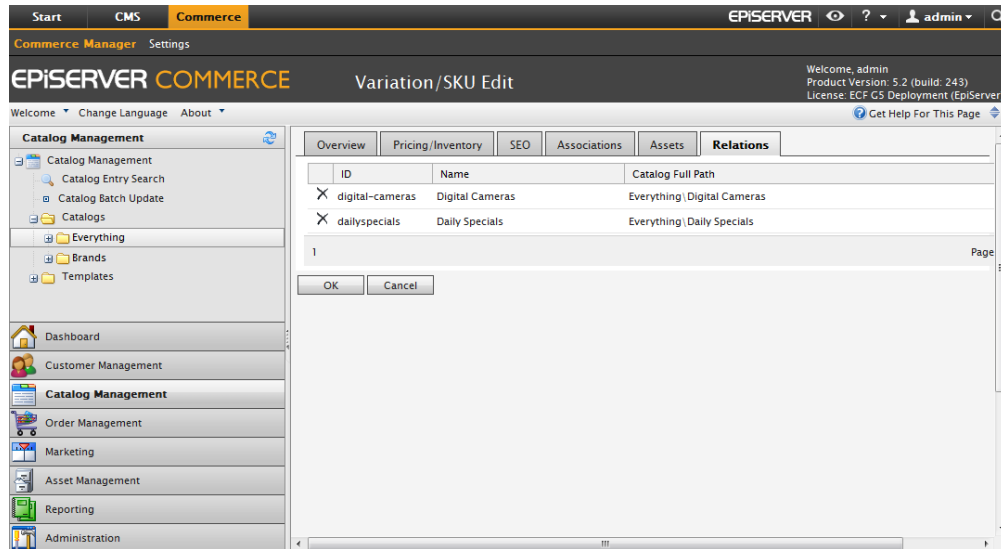
1 Page 1 of 1 (1 items)

OK

4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

### Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Digital Cameras". Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.



### Setting Pricing Data at the Product Level

By default EPiServer Commerce ships with the ability to set pricing information at the variation/SKU level. In certain implementations it may be preferable to set pricing information at the Product level and/or the variation/SKU level. This can be accomplished by editing a configuration file to add the **EntryPricingEditTab** to the list of tabs available at the Product level.





For more information see the section "Setting Pricing Data at the Product Level" in the *EPiServer Commerce Developer's Guide*.

### Creating a Variation or a SKU

1. To create a new variation/SKU for a product, go to **Catalog Management** and **Catalogs**, and then click on an existing catalog. The **Node List** window appears.
2. Select **Create New** and **New Variation/Sku**. The **Variation/SKU Edit** window appears.

### Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Variation/SKU.

Overview	Pricing/Inventory	SEO	Associations	Assets	Relations
Name: <input type="text"/>					
Available from: <input type="text" value="8/1/2011"/>  <input type="text" value="01:22 PM"/>					
Expires on: <input type="text" value="8/1/2021"/>  <input type="text" value="01:22 PM"/>					
Display Template: <input type="text" value="Digital Camera Template"/> 					
Code: <input type="text"/>					
Sort Order: <input type="text" value="0"/> <i>The sort order for the category entry.</i>					
Available: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No					
Meta Class: <input type="text" value="Default Catalog Entry"/> 					
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>					

Field	Description
<b>Name</b>	Enter a friendly name, which can include spaces and special characters.
<b>Available from</b>	Enter the date and time the SKU will be available and active.
<b>Expires On</b>	Enter the date and time the SKU will be unavailable and deactivated.
<b>Display Template</b>	Chose a display template used to display the Variation/SKU in the public site from this drop-down menu. By default, the only available catalog display template is "Digital Camera," however additional templates can be developed.
<b>Code</b>	Enter a value without special characters or spaces, such as "BlueShirtXL."
<b>Sort Order</b>	Enter a numerical value to determine the SKU's sort order on the list of variations and SKUs.
<b>Available</b>	Set "Yes" to activate the SKU. Set "No" to keep the SKU inactive and unsearchable on the front-end site.
<b>Meta Class</b>	Select from the drop-down menu a particular Meta Class (add link to how meta classes are created). Depending on the meta class you select, additional fields will appear in the Overview tab. The values entered within the fields of the meta class you selected will be shown on the front-end public site.

#### Pricing/Inventory Tab

Under this tab, you can set specific pricing and inventory settings for the variation/SKU.

Overview	Pricing/Inventory	SEO	Associations	Assets	Relations
Display Price: (usd)	<input type="text"/>	In Stock:	<input type="text" value="10"/>		
Min. Quantity:	<input type="text" value="1"/>	Reserved:	<input type="text" value="2"/>		
Max. Quantity:	<input type="text" value="100"/>	Reorder Min. Qty:	<input type="text" value="1"/>		
Merchant:	<input type="text" value="select merchant"/>	Allow Preorder:	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No		
Weight:	<input type="text" value="1.0"/>	Preorder Qty:	<input type="text" value="10"/>		
Package:	<input type="text" value="select package"/>	Preorder Avail.:	<input type="text" value="8/1/2011 01:22 PM"/>		
Tax Category:	<input type="text" value="select tax category"/>	Allow Backorder:	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No		
Warehouse:	<input type="text" value="select warehouse"/>	Backorder Qty:	<input type="text" value="10"/>		
Track Inventory:	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	Backorder Avail.:	<input type="text" value="8/1/2011 01:22 PM"/>		
Inventory Status:	<input type="text" value="Disabled"/>				
<b>Pricing</b> <a href="#">Add Item</a>					
<input type="button" value="Edit Command"/>	<input type="text" value="Sale Type"/>	<input type="text" value="Sale Code"/>	<input type="text" value="Currency"/>	<input type="text" value="Price"/>	<input type="text" value="Min. Quantity"/>
<input type="text" value="Start Date"/>					
<input type="text" value="End Date"/>					
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>					

Field	Description
<b>Display Price</b>	Enter the price that will be displayed on the public site.
<b>Min Quantity</b>	This sets the minimum quantity the customer is able to purchase the variation/SKUs product page.
<b>Max Quantity</b>	This is the maximum allowable number of items that can be purchased at one time (this number gets displayed as the upper range in the drop-down during the check-out process).
<b>Merchant</b>	<b>Optional:</b> if you use many merchants on your site, this provides another way to add more information for a product; this can only be added/edited directly in the database so please contact your site administrator/developer to make any changes.
<b>Weight</b>	Based on your shipping configuration, the weight you enter here will affect the total shipping cost .
<b>Package</b>	This value is based on width/length/height dimensions; the options for this drop-down are configured in the <b>Administration</b> area.
<b>Tax Category</b>	This separation of taxes by category allows you to charge a different rate of taxes depending on what is being purchased; for example, you can have one rate for "General Sales" items and another rate for "Luxury Sales" items.
<b>Warehouse</b>	The details on the available selections are maintained in the <b>Administration</b> system.
<b>Track Inventory</b>	Yes/No. If this is set to "Yes," then the quantity value of In Stock, Preorder, and Backorder fields will be deducted each time a purchase is made. If this is set to "No," then those values will not change.
<b>Inventory Status</b>	Enable/Disable. If this is <b>Enabled</b> , then the number of units of a product being purchased cannot exceed the inventory value. In other words, the check out procedure cannot be completed if you exceed the number in the inventory -- instead the quantity you can purchase will default to the actual number of remaining units.

Field	Description
	For instance, if you have Tracking Inventory = Yes, and Inventory Status = Disabled/Ignored, then the available quantity will be monitored, but it will not limit the number of units that can be checked out. If you only have a quantity of 5 and you order 6 items, the checkout will still complete and the inventory number will become -1.
<b>In Stock</b>	You can enter the quantity of a particular product available for sale.
<b>Reserved</b>	The quantity you set here allows you to reserve a specified number of inventory "In Stock" and prevent them from being used. So for instance, if you set the In Stock = 10 and Reserved = 5, then the In Stock count will not go below 5.
<b>Reorder Min Qty</b>	If the inventory falls below the value specified here, then this item will appear in the "Low Stock Report" in the Dashboard or Reporting system.
<b>Allow Pre-order/Backorder</b>	Yes or No; you need to set Allow Preorder/Backorder status to <b>Yes</b> to turn either of these features <b>On</b> .
<b>Preorder/Backorder Avail</b>	When you turn on either of the two and specify a quantity, the count will begin to decrease after the In Stock count reaches its limit. For example, if you set In Stock = 10, Reserved = 3, and Backorder = 10, then the Backorder qty will start to decrease after In Stock count reaches 3. So if you place an order for 10 units, then the final count will be In Stock = 3, Reserved = 3, and Backorder = 7.
<b>Backorder Qty</b>	The quantity you set here will determine the backorders that can be made by customers even when the item is out of stock.
<b>Pricing</b>	<p><b>Sale Type</b> - you can select All Customers, a single Customer or a Customer Price Group (the Customer Price Group gives you the ability to create tiered pricing).</p> <p><b>Sale Code</b> - This is an <b>optional</b> setting. The Sale Code field is used for assigning a price to a specific group of customers. For instance, when you add a new price and select "Customer Price Group" as the Sale Type, you need to put the name of the customer group in the Sale Code field. The name of the group that you put in the Sale Code field needs to match one of the group names found under <b>Customer Management &gt; Contacts &gt; (Name of Contact)</b>. If your entry into the Sale Code field matches one of the Customer Groups, any member of that group will receive the specified price.</p> <p><b>Unit Price</b> - discounted price per unit *Currency * enter currency using the correct currency code (i.e. USD); you can create different prices depending on the currency that is selected.</p> <p><b>Min. Quantity</b> - minimum number of units you must purchase to get the discounted bulk rate.</p>

#### SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area.
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window.
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines.
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines.



If the Url field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated url (which depends on the entry name). If the Url field is not empty (you entered some url), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the url to change, leave it blank.

### Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this Variation/SKU. Follow these steps to create associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.
2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.
3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.
4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.
5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.
7. Once you click on **Add Item**, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

### Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the **Asset Management** subsystem.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click Add Asset.
2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.
4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

### Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Digital Cameras". Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.



## Creating a Package

1. Click on **Catalogs**. The Catalog List appears on the main window.
2. Click on an existing catalog name highlighted in blue. The **Node List** window appears.
3. Click on **Create New** pull-down menu located in the upper left part of the main window.
4. On the drop-down menu, select **New Product Package**. The Product Package Edit page appears.

### Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Product Package.

- **Name** - a name for the Product Package
- **Available from** - the date to which the Product Package is activated
- **Expires on** - the date on which the Product Package expires; once the expiration date passes, the Product Package will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the Product Package in the public site from this dropdown box; by default, the only available catalog display template is "Digital Camera". To create your custom template, you will need some technical skills with html templates.
- **Code** - enter a Product Package code here (e.g. DIGICAM).
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the Product Package is sorted in the Node List page.
- **Available** - select Yes to make the Product Package appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or Product Package attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site

### Pricing/Inventory Tab

- **Display Price** - the price that will be displayed in public site
- **Min Quantity** - this forces your customer to purchase a minimum number of items as set here (this number gets displayed as the lower range in the dropdown during the checkout process)
- **Max Quantity** - this is the maximum allowable number of items that can be purchased at one time (this number gets displayed as the upper range in the dropdown during the checkout process)
- **Merchant** - (optional) if you use many merchants on your site, this provides another way to add more information for a product; this can only be added/edited directly in the database so please contact your site administrator/developer to make any changes
- **Weight** - based on your shipping configuration, the weight you enter here will affect the total shipping cost
- **Package** - this value is based on width/length/height dimensions; the options for this dropdown are configured in the Administration area
- **Tax Category** - this separation of taxes by category allows you to charge a different rate of taxes depending on what is being purchased; for example, you can have one rate for "General Sales" items and another rate for "Luxury Sales" items
- **Warehouse** - the details on the available selections are maintained in the Administration Sub-system
- **Track Inventory** - Yes/No. If this is set to "Yes," then the quantity value of In Stock, Preorder, and Backorder fields will be deducted each time a purchase is made. If this is set to "No," then those values will not change.

- **Inventory Status** - Enable/Disable. If this is Enabled, then the number of units of a product being purchased cannot exceed the inventory value. In other words, the check out procedure cannot be completed if you exceed the number in the inventory -- instead the quantity you can purchase will default to the actual number of remaining units. For instance, if you have Tracking Inventory = Yes, and Inventory Status = Disabled/Ignored, then the available quantity will be monitored, but it will not limit the number of units that can be checked out. If you only have a quantity of 5 and you order 6 items, the checkout will still complete and the inventory number will become -1.
- **In Stock** - you can enter the quantity of a particular product available for sale
- **Reserved** - The quantity you set here allows you to reserve a specified number of inventory "In Stock" and prevent them from being used. So for instance, if you set the In Stock = 10 and Reserved = 5, then the In Stock count will not go below 5.
- **Reorder Min Qty** - If the inventory falls below the value specified here, then this item will appear in the "Low Stock Report" in the Dashboard or Reporting subsystem.
- **Allow Preorder/Backorder** - Yes or No; you need to set Allow Preorder/Backorder status to Yes to turn either of these features On.
- **Preorder/Backorder Avail** - When you turn on either of the two and specify a quantity, the count will begin to decrease after the In Stock count reaches its limit. For example, if you set In Stock = 10, Reserved = 3, and Backorder = 10, then the Backorder qty will start to decrease after In Stock count reaches 3. So if you place an order for 10 units, then the final count will be In Stock = 3, Reserved = 3, and Backorder = 7.
- **Backorder Qty** - The quantity you set here will determine the backorders that can be made by customers even when the item is out of stock.

#### Pricing .

- **Sale Type** - you can select All Customers, a single Customer or a Customer Price Group (the Customer Price Group gives you the ability to create tiered pricing).
- **Sale Code** - (optional) enter code to give special pricing for a group of Customers (i.e. Dealers).
- **Unit Price** - discounted price per unit.
- **Currency** - enter currency using the correct currency code (i.e. USD); you can create different prices depending on the currency that is selected.
- **Min. Quantity** - minimum number of units you must purchase to get the discounted bulk rate.

For more information regarding Sales Type, Sales Code and tiered pricing, please read *Creating a Contact*.

#### Package Items Tab

In the dropdown, you can search through your entire inventory and select items to add to your Package by clicking **Add Item**. Clicking the **Edit** icon beside the item you just added will allow you to specify the **Quantity**, the **Group Name** and the **Sort Order**.

#### SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the **Url** field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated url (which depends on the entry name). If the Url field is not empty (you entered some url), it will be saved as it is, and w will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the url to change, leave it blank.

#### Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this Product Package. Follow these steps to create associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.
2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.
3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.
4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.
5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.
7. Once you click on Add Item, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

#### Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management subsystem.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.
2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.
4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

#### Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Spe-

cials" and "Digital Cameras". Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

### Creating a Bundle

1. Click on **Catalogs**. The Catalog List appears on the main window.
2. Click on an existing catalog name highlighted in blue. The Node List window appears.
3. Click on **Create New** pull-down menu located in the upper left part of the main window.
4. On the drop-down menu, select **New Bundle**. The Bundle Edit page appears.

### Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Product Package.

- **Name** - a name for the Bundle
- **Available from** - the date to which the Bundle is activated
- **Expires on** - the date on which the Bundle expires; once the expiration date passes, the Bundle will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the Bundle in the public site from this dropdown box; by default, the only available catalog display template is "Digital Camera". To create your custom template, you will need some technical skills with html templates.
- **Code** - enter a Bundle code here (e.g. DIGICAM).
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the Bundle is sorted in the Node List page.
- **Available** - select Yes to make the Bundle appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or Bundle attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site

### Bundle Items Tab

In the dropdown, you can search through your entire inventory and select items to add to your Bundle by clicking **Add Item**. Clicking the **Edit** icon beside the item you just added will allow you to specify the Quantity, the Group Name and the Sort Order.

### SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the **URL** field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated URL (which depends on the entry name). If the URL field is not empty (you entered some URL), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the URL to change, leave it blank.

### Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this Bundle. Follow these steps to create associations:

1. Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.
2. When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.
3. The new association will appear in the drop-down list.
4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.
5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.
7. Once you click on Add Item, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

#### Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management subsystem.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.
2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.
4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

#### Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Digital Cameras". Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

#### Creating a Dynamic Package

1. Click on **Catalogs**. The Catalog List appears on the main window.
2. Click on an existing catalog name highlighted in blue. The Node List window appears.
3. Click on **Create New** pull-down menu located in the upper left part of the main window.

- On the drop-down menu, select **New Dynamic Package**. The Product Dynamic Package Edit page appears.

#### Overview Tab

This is where you enter basic information about the Product Package.

- **Name** - a name for the Dynamic Package
- **Available from** - the date to which the Dynamic Package is activated
- **Expires on** - the date on which the Dynamic Package expires; once the expiration date passes, the Product Package will no longer appear on the public site
- **Display Template** - choose a display template used to show the Dynamic Package in the public site from this dropdown box; by default, the only available catalog display template is "Digital Camera". To create your custom template, you will need some technical skills with html templates.
- **Code** - enter a Dynamic Package code here (e.g. DIGICAM).
- **Sort Order** - determines the order to which the Dynamic Package is sorted in the Node List page.
- **Available** - select Yes to make the Dynamic Package appear on the public site; select No to hide the product from the public site
- **Meta Class** - the choice made here dictates which the meta-fields or Dynamic Package attributes will appear on the public site or Commerce Manager site

#### Package Items Tab

In the dropdown, you can search through your entire inventory and select items to add to your Dynamic Package by clicking **Add Item**. Clicking the Edit icon beside the item you just added will allow you to specify the Quantity, the Group Name and the Sort Order.

#### SEO Tab

Search Engine Optimization can be achieved by entering the following information for the product.

- **Title** - this is the friendly name that appears in your browser's title area
- **URL** - this is what gets displayed in the browser URL window
- **Description** - this is the meta description that is used for SEO purposes by search engines
- **Keywords** - keywords used for SEO purposes by search engines



If the **URL** field is left empty, it will be automatically filled in with a generated URL (which depends on the entry name). If the URL field is not empty (you entered some URL), it will be saved as it is, and will not be changed automatically even if you change an entry name. If you need the URL to change, leave it blank.

#### Associations Tab

Different products or variations/SKUs can be linked to this Dynamic Package. Follow these steps to create associations:

- Click on **Add an Association**. A pop-up window will appear that says **Edit Association Information**.
- When the pop-up appears, enter an **Association Name**, **Description**, and define the **Sort Order**. Once you're done, click on **Save Changes**.
- The new association will appear in the drop-down list.

4. You can also choose to **Edit Details**, which will allow you to edit associated items. The **Pick Item** drop-down appears below **Modify Existing Association**.
5. Click on **Modify Association** and you can edit the name, description, and sort order of an existing association.

You can also **Delete** an association if needed.

6. Pick an item or items to add to the association. Click **Add Item** to do so.
7. Once you click on Add Item, the item will appear in a list just below. You can have more than one item tied to an association.

You can **Edit** an item on the list. You can change the **Sort Order** and the **Type**. Once you're done modifying the values, click on **Update** to save your changes. Otherwise select **Cancel** to navigate away without saving.

#### Assets Tab

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management subsystem.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.
2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.

- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.
4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

#### Relations Tab

Here the relations for a product will be displayed, and you can manage the categories a product is linked to. This is useful in order to get an overview of all the different categories (nodes) where a product will occur. A product can for instance appear in the "French Market" category, as well as under "Daily Specials" and "Digital Cameras". Browse to a product and open it for editing. The relations for the product will be displayed under the **Relations** tab.

#### Creating Product Associations

Product Associations help you to highlight certain products in your public site. For example, one or more products can be related to or associated to another product so that these associated products can be displayed or advertised on the public site as a product accessory, or as an up-selling/cross-selling item. Associations can be made from any of the individual products (Product Entries, SKUs, Bundles, Packages, and Dynamic Packages). (Product Entries, Variations/SKUs, Bundles, Packages, and Dynamic Packages).

To create Product Associations go to the edit screen of any type of product entry listed above and select the **Associations** tab. Out of the box, you can associate related products or accessories or cross-sell different kinds of products ("You May Also Like").

### CrossSelling Other Products - "What You May Like"

1. Click on the **Add an association** button to enter the name "CrossSell" (without the quotes), an optional description and sort order number. Click **Save Changes** to save and exit the screen. CrossSell should appear in the dropdown menu.
2. Next select the new association that you just created from the drop-down menu and click on **Edit Details**.
3. Use the drop-down menu to add one or more products and select **Add Item** to save the association. The items you have added to this association will render on the product detail page under "You May Also Like" on the default template.

### Associating Related Products and Accessories

1. Click on the **Add an association** button to enter the name "Accessories" (without the quotes), an optional description and sort order number. Click **Save Changes** to save and exit the screen. Accessories should appear in the drop-down menu.
2. Next select the Accessories product association that you just created from the drop-down menu and click on **Edit Details**.
3. Use the drop-down menu to add one or more products and select **Add Item** to save the association. The items you have added to this association will render on the product detail page under "Related Products and Accessories" on the default template.

## Managing Assets

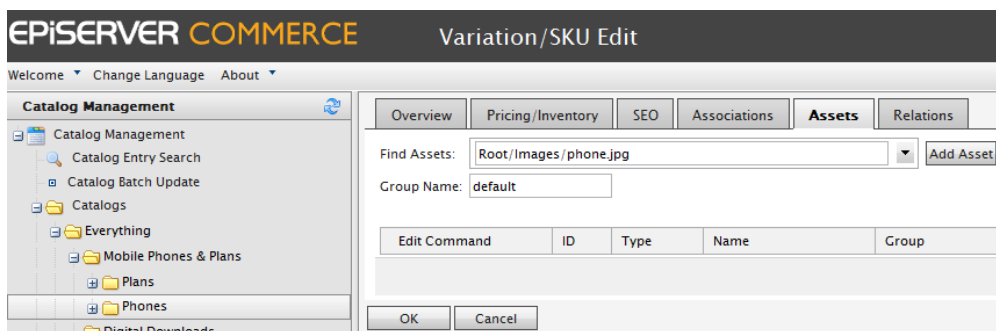
Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management system and then these Assets can be associated with Catalog entries..

In order for the Asset files to correctly display in catalogs, you'll need to configure your Internet Information Services (IIS). Find out more *Displaying Assets section of the Developer Guide for EPiServer Commerce*.

### Associating Additional Digital Materials with Catalog Entries

Assets are downloadable contents such as documents, links, videos, and images that can be linked to specific products. Assets are uploaded and managed in the Asset Management system.

1. Under **Find Assets**, select from the drop-down list and click **Add Asset**.



2. Enter a **Group Name**.

By default Commerce Manager offers three options with names that will allow the associated assets to be correctly displayed on the product details page of the public site.



- **Image** - (type as "image," all lowercase) thumbnail icon(s) will appear on the product details page.
- **Downloads** - a "Downloads" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page.
- **Specifications** - a "Specifications" tab will appear towards the bottom of the details page.

The screenshot shows the 'Assets' tab in the Commerce Manager interface. At the top, there are tabs for Overview, Pricing/Inventory, SEO, Associations, **Assets**, and Relations. Below the tabs, there is a 'Find Assets:' search bar containing 'Root/Images/phone.jpg' and a dropdown arrow, followed by an 'Add Asset' button. Below that is a 'Group Name:' field containing 'image'. A table with columns 'Edit Command', 'ID', 'Type', 'Name', 'Group', and 'Sort Order' is shown, but it is empty. At the bottom right of the table area, it says 'Page 1 of 0 (0 items)'. At the very bottom, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

3. Once an asset is added to the list below, you can choose to edit specific assets, such as their **Group** name and **Sort Order**.

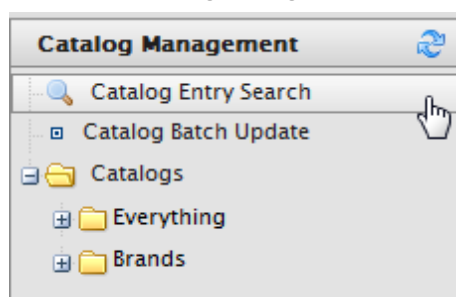
This screenshot is similar to the previous one, but now the table contains one item. The 'Find Assets:' field still has 'Root/Images/phone.jpg' and 'Add Asset' is present. The 'Group Name:' field still has 'image'. The table now has one row with the following data: 'Edit Command' (with edit and delete icons), 'ID' (2), 'Type' (file), 'Name' (Root/Images/p...), 'Group' (image), and 'Sort Order' (0). Below the table, it says 'Page 1 of 1 (1 items)'. 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

4. Once done, click **OK** and the new category/node will be created. You will be redirected to the Node List. Otherwise, select **Cancel** to go back to the Node List without saving any changes.

## Searching for Entries in Your Catalog

The Catalog Search function enables you look for specific sales items stored in the Commerce Manager.

1. Click on **Catalog Management** and then **Catalog Entry Search**.



2. To do a basic search for catalog entries, enter a one keyword or more into the **Search by Keywords(s)** field, such as "canon digital cameras". The search will return entries that match either of those keywords.
3. If you input keywords around quotation marks ("canon digital cameras"), then search will only fetch entries that have those exact three keywords.

### Catalog Search Filters

To narrow entry search results, there are Additional Filters available. Click search once those filters are set.

- **Filter by language:** Pull-down menu will show the available language choices
- **Filter by catalog(s):** Pull-down menu will show the available catalog choices
- **Search by code/id:** Instead of text, you can search by code or ID

### Deleting and Cloning Entries

Users can Delete and Clone entries. To delete or clone an entry:

1. Select an entry or entries by checkmarking the box next to it.
2. Click on **More Actions**.
3. Click on **Delete Selected** or **Clone Selected**.

The entry will either be deleted or a clone (copy) of it appears.

**Search By Keyword(s):**

**Additional Filters**

Filter By Language:

Filter By Catalog(s):

Search By Code/Id:

**More Actions** ▾

- ✕ Delete Selected
- 📄 Clone Selected
- ☒ ☐

Name	ID
tro.fi 150 Noise Isolating Earphones (Black)	1
510 Headset Charger	2
Plantronics Voyager 510 – Bluetooth Headset Carrying Case	3
Adapter Car Lighter Explorer / Voyager	4

### Paging and Sorting Results

Users can sort results by clicking on **Name**, **ID**, **Available From**, **Expires**, and **Status** in either ascending or descending order.

Name	ID	Available from	Expires	Status
Apple iPhone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with Lint Cleaning Cloth	5	8/18/2008 2:49:48 PM	8/19/2018 2:49:48 PM	True
Apple iPhone Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case– Silver – Cozip Brand (Made in Korea)	6	8/18/2008 2:49:49 PM	8/19/2018 2:49:49 PM	True
Apple iPhone 1G Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case –Black(Cozip Brand) Made in Korea	7	8/18/2008 2:49:49 PM	8/19/2018 2:49:49 PM	True

Users can also change the **Page Size** ranging from 10 entries to All entries.

Apple iPod 3rd Generation Nano 4gb 8gb Tran

Apple iPod Armband for iPod nano 1G (Pink)

Page Size:  ▾

To page through multiple entry results, users can click on the paging controls on the lower-right corner of the main window.

(128 items) | Page [1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) ... ▶

### Updating Multiple Catalog Entries at Once

This area gives you the ability to quickly make mass changes to your catalog. You can sort by **Entry Type**, **Meta Class**, **Field**, **Language**, **Catalog** and **Keyword(s)**. Once you apply one or more of these filters, the search results will appear in the bottom half of the screen.

If you make changes to the entry, click **Save All** to save all of your catalog updates.

Clicking on a result, such as the example below, will direct you to the entry's edit page.

Name	Entry : Name
Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom	Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Sta
Canon PowerShot SX100IS 8MP Digital Camera with 10x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom (Silver)	Canon PowerShot SX100IS 8MP Digital Camera with 10x Optical Image Stabilized Zc
Canon PowerShot A570IS 7.1MP Digital Camera with 4x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom	Canon PowerShot A570IS 7.1MP Digital Camera with 4x Optical Image Stabilized Zc

## Order Management

The Order Management System provides shopping carts, order capture, order fulfillment, and payment function support. Features and functionality include return merchandise authorization (RMA), support for item exchanges, and UI enhancements.

The Order Management System, in most respects, works much differently compared to previous versions of EPiServer Commerce. The overall order management workflow involves the Customer Management System, as orders are now directly attached to individual contacts.

### Order Workflow

The order workflow is described in the topics of this section.

#### Creating a New Order

##### Option 1: Creating an Order Within a Contact

1. Go to **Customer Management > Contacts** and create or click on an existing contact. The contact details appear.
2. Click on **New Order**.

3. The **New Order** pop-up window appears. Select the site to apply the order to and click **OK**. The **Purchase Order New form** appears, allowing users to enter basic information about the order.

### Filling Out the New Purchase Order

1. Enter Basic Order Information.

**Basic Order Info**

Customer: admin

Currency:

Coupon Code:

Field	Description
<b>Customer</b>	This is the name of the contact.
<b>Currency</b>	Select from the drop-down list the currency to associate with the Purchase Order.
<b>Coupon</b>	Coupon codes created with a promotions can be applied here to associate with the Purchase Order. Click Apply once code is entered.

### Advanced Search

You can apply three filters to refine your item search results.

**New LineItem**

[Advanced Search](#)

Field	Description
Select catalog	Select which specific catalog to search
Select language	Select a specific language (such as German) for items described in German
Select entry type	Select a specific type of entry, such as variation/sku or bundle

### Configuring the Selected Entry

1. Before you add the item to the order, you can configure the actual price, the quantity, and apply a percentage or discount based discount.

**New LineItem**

**Selected Entry:** Nextware iPhone Screen Protector 2-pk.

Display Price: \$19.99

Price:

Quantity:

Discount:

*Discount description amount*

Total: **\$19.99**

### Required Fields

- Price
- Quantity

Field	Description
Display Price	This is the price seen on the public website. This is set at the catalog entry level.
Price	This is the actual cost of the item that will be charged when the item is added to the order.
Quantity	Set how many of the item to add to the order.
Discount	You can apply a discount to the item, either Value or Percentage based.
Total	The total is automatically calculated, factoring in the actual price, quantity, and any discounts applied

2. Once the item is configured, click **Add item to the order**. The item will appear on the Purchase Order form.

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total	Discount
<input type="checkbox"/>	ELCB000SOVTF56	Nextware iPhone Screen Protector 2-pk.	1	\$19.99	\$19.99	\$0.00

Page Size:  (1 items)

### Completing the Rest of the Purchase Order Form

1. Enter a Billing and a Shipping Address.

When entering the Shipping or Billing Address, you can select an existing address associated with the contact, if any.

Billing Address	Shipping Address
Address: <input type="text" value="Add new address"/>	Address: <input type="text" value="Add new address"/>
Name: <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Same as Billing Address
First Name: <input type="text"/>	Name: <input type="text"/>
Last Name: <input type="text"/>	First Name: <input type="text"/>
Line 1: <input type="text"/>	Last Name: <input type="text"/>
Line 2: <input type="text"/>	Line 1: <input type="text"/>
City: <input type="text"/>	Line 2: <input type="text"/>
Country Name: <input type="text" value="United States"/>	City: <input type="text"/>
State: <input type="text" value="Alabama"/>	Country Name: <input type="text" value="United States"/>
Postal Code: <input type="text"/>	State: <input type="text" value="Alabama"/>
Day Phone: <input type="text"/>	Postal Code: <input type="text"/>
Evening Phone: <input type="text"/>	Day Phone: <input type="text"/>
Email: <input type="text"/>	Evening Phone: <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Add to customer's address book	Email: <input type="text"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/> Add to customer's address book

Checkmark **Add to customer's address book** if you want to save the address to the contact.

If the Shipping Address is the same as the Billing Address, click on **Same as Billing Address**. The Shipping Address form is autopopulated with the information entered in the Billing Address form.

2. Select the kind of shipping to use for the order under **Shipment Details**. Select from the drop-down the shipping methods (add link) available.
3. Click on **Recalculate** to generate the cost summary.

Shipment Details	
Shipping method:	<input type="text" value="Fixed Shipping Rate"/>
<input type="button" value="Recalculate"/>	

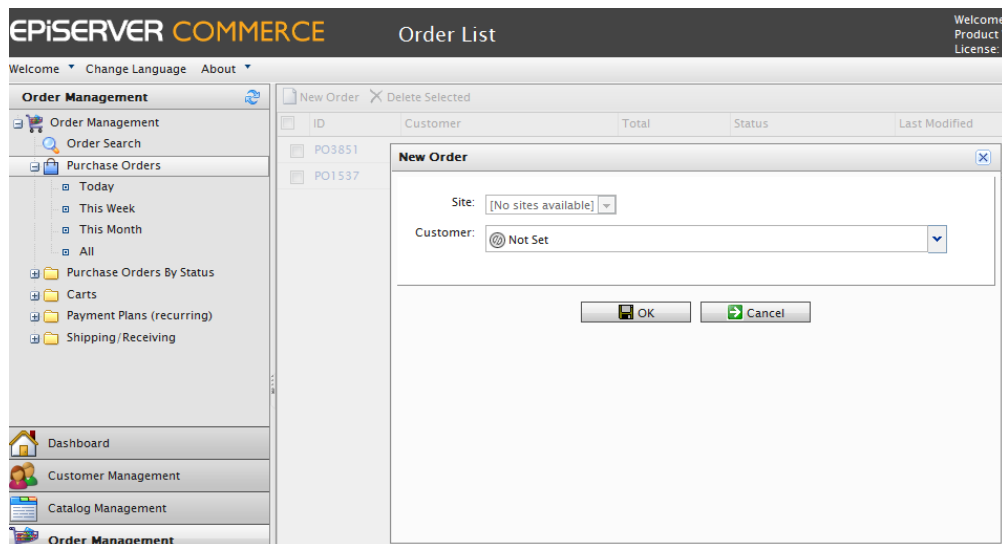
  

Summary	
<b>Item Subtotal:</b>	\$19.99
Shipping Cost:	\$10.00
<b>Less Shipment Discount:</b>	\$0.00
<b>Total Before Tax:</b>	\$19.99
Item Taxes:	\$0.00
<b>Shipment Total:</b>	\$29.99

4. Click **OK**.

#### Option 2: Creating an Order from Purchase Order List

1. Go to **Order Management > Purchase Orders**.
2. Click on **New Order**. A pop-up appears, allowing you to select the site and contact to apply the new order to.



3. Click **OK**.

4. Follow the steps above to complete the Purchase Order.

### Fulfilling an Order

Once the **Purchase Order** form is completed, the order fulfillment process begins. The order form consists of five sections:

Tab Name	Description
<b>Summary</b>	Displays an overview of the order, including the customer information, billing address, and other data. From here you can cancel orders, edit information, and place an order on hold.
<b>Details</b>	Displays the shipment details, including shipment status, items to be shipped, and a list of applied discounts/coupons. Returns/Exchanges are also created here.
<b>Payments</b>	You can create and assign payments to the order here. Payments are automatically processed when saved.
<b>Returns</b>	Displays the details of a return, if made.
<b>Notes</b>	Displays the notes attached to the order. Notes are automatically logged when certain events occur within the order (e.g. the shipment status changed)

### Processing the Order, Submitting a Payment, and Releasing to Shipping

The basic workflow from purchase order to shipping is done this way.



1. Add a payment to the order.

The screenshot shows the 'Order' form with the 'Payments' tab selected. The form displays the following information:

- Order No:** PO0850
- Customer:** Mary Smith
- Order Total:** \$59.98
- Status:** InProgress

Below this information are tabs for Summary, Details, Payments (selected), Returns, and Notes. A 'Create Payment' button is visible. Below the button is a table with the following columns: Name, Transaction Type, Amount, and Status. The table is currently empty. At the bottom, there is a 'Page Size' dropdown set to 100.

2. Enter the amount of the payment. The **Amount** field auto-populates the value of the total order, including shipping costs. However, you can change the value of the payment (useful for splitting payments between two or more payment methods at the request of the customer).
3. Select the **Payment Method** from the drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**. The order goes into **Edit Mode**.

The screenshot shows the 'Order' form in Edit Mode. A yellow banner at the top states: 'The Order is in the Edit Mode. Save changes before exit.' with 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons. The form displays the same information as the previous screenshot. The 'Payments' tab is selected, and the 'Create Payment' button is visible. Below the button is a table with the following columns: Name, Transaction Type, Amount, and Status. The table now contains one entry:

Name	Transaction Type	Amount	Status
Pay By Phone		59.98	Pending

At the bottom, there is a 'Page Size' dropdown set to 100.

**Note:** When in Edit Mode, you can add more payments to the order. However, once you click **Save**, you finalize the payment. This means that you cannot further add or delete payments.

- Once you have finished adding one or more payments, click **Save** to exit Edit Mode and save your changes. The payment gets automatically processed for the amount specified.

**Order**

Add Note Send Notifications Add Order Address

**Order No:** PO0850 **Customer:** Mary Smith  
**Order Total:** \$59.98 **Status:** InProgress

Summary Details **Payments** Returns Notes

	Name	Transaction Type	Amount	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pay By Phone	Sale	59.9800	Processed

Page Size: 100

- Check the **Details** tab. You will see that the **Shipment Status** has changed to "Awaiting Inventory." Once the availability of the item has been determined, click on **Release Shipment** to release the order to your shipping department.

Summary **Details** Payments Returns Notes

**Shipment # 1**

New Item Delete

	ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	ELCB000TGQHAW6	Apple iPhone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with Lint Cle...	1.00	\$9.99	\$9.99
<input type="checkbox"/>	ELCB00104UI346	Apple iPhone Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case- Silver - Cozip Brand (Mad...	1.00	\$39.99	\$39.99

Page Size: 100

**Shipping Information**

**Shipping Address:**  
 1 Main Street, Santa Monica, California, 81823, United States [Edit Shipping Address](#)

**Shipping Method:**  
 Fixed Shipping Rate [Edit Shipping Method](#)

**Shipment Summary**  
 Item Subtotal: \$49.98  
 Shipping cost: \$10.00  
 Shipment Total: \$59.98

**Shipment Status**  
 Status: Awaiting Inventory  
[Complete shipment](#)  
[Release shipment](#)  
[Cancel shipment](#)

**Returns/Exchanges**  
[Create Return](#)

- By clicking on **Release shipment**, the status changes to "Released." For further processing of the order, your shipping department will go to **Order Management > Shipment**.



If you click **Cancel shipment**, you will end up canceling the entire order. (At the moment, there is no way to undo the cancellation, so you must be careful.)

#### Canceling an Order

Under the **Summary** tab, click on **Cancel Order**. This will completely cancel the order. The status of the order changes to "Canceled."

The cancellation of the order will be logged under the **Notes** tab.

Order No: PO0850 Customer: Mary Smith  
 Order Total: \$59.98 Status: Cancelled

Summary Details Payments Returns Notes

New Item

	Originated By	Date/Time	Note Text
5	admin	2/21/2011 9:49:43 AM	New order placed by admin in ConsoleManager
6	admin	2/21/2011 10:01:16 AM	New Other payment in the amount of \$59.98 added to order
7	admin	2/21/2011 10:08:10 AM	Shipment 10 status changes to Released
8	admin	2/21/2011 10:11:21 AM	Order status changed to Cancelled

Page Size: 100

### Splitting Shipments

If there are two or more items within an order, they can be split into separate shipments. This is useful for expediting items within the order that are immediately ready for shipment, while other items have extra shipping lead time.

1. Go to an existing purchase order or create a new one. The order must have two or more items.
2. Go to the **Details** tab in the order form. Look for **Shipment # 1**.

Order No: PO10728 Customer: Lisa Prescott  
 Order Total: \$151.92 Status: InProgress

Summary Details Payments Returns Notes

Shipment # 1

New Item X Delete

	ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total Disc
	ELCB000FOM68A6	Plantronics Voyager 510 - Bluetooth Headset Carrying Case	1.00	\$19.99	\$0.00
	ELCB000WKS8QG6	Headphone Adapter for Apple iPhone Recessed Jack, 3.5mm Male Female...	1.00	\$14.95	\$0.00
	ELCB00081A2DQ6	Koss SPARKPLUG - Stereo In Ear Ear Plugs	1.00	\$14.99	\$0.00
	ELCB000VILY426	Samsung WEP200 World Smallest* Bluetooth Headset (White)*	1.00	\$99.99	\$0.00

Page Size: 100

3. Select the item you want to move by clicking on the **Move** icon.

Shipment # 1

New Item X Delete

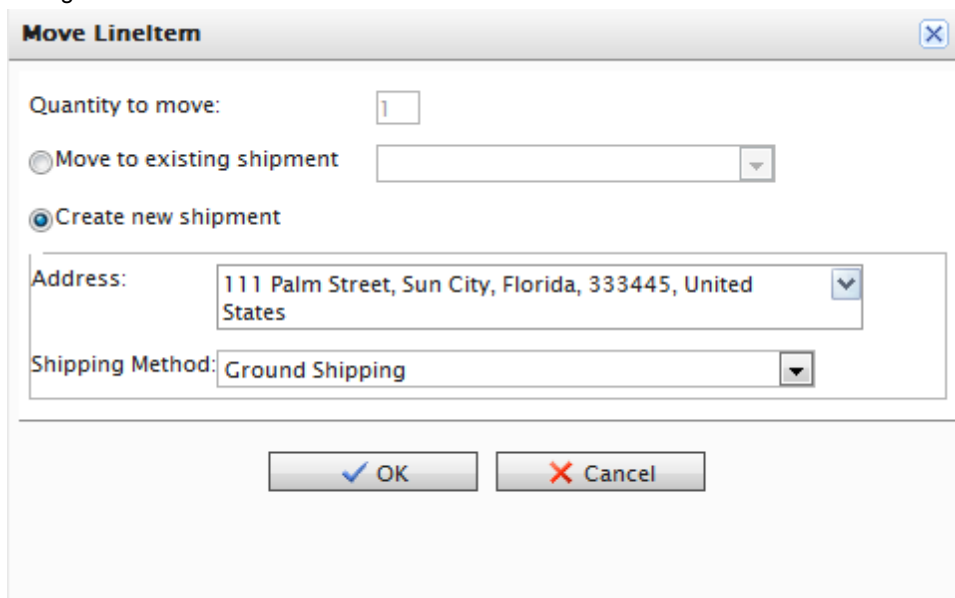
	ID
	ELCB000FOM68A6
	ELCB000TGQHAW6

Page Size: 100

Move

4. The pop-up appears, which allows you to choose to move the item(s) to an existing shipment or create a new shipment. You can also select the quantity of the item to move. Each new shipment within the order can have its own separate shipping address and shipping method. Select a shipping address and shipping method from their respective drop-down lists. Click **OK** to save your

changes.



**Move LineItem**

Quantity to move:

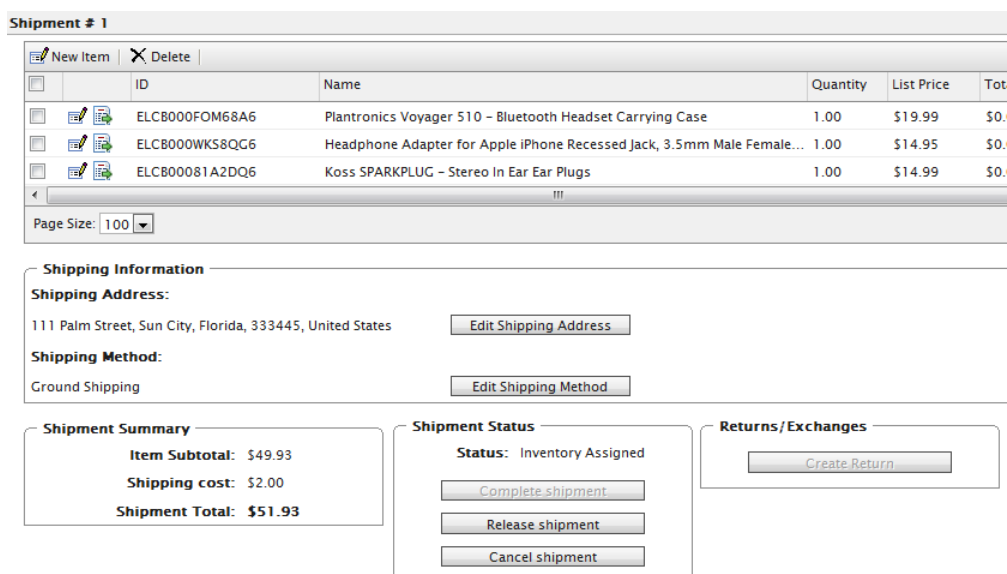
☐ Move to existing shipment

☒ Create new shipment

Address:

Shipping Method:

- After splitting the shipments, the order form goes into Edit Mode. The **Details** page shows the new shipment, which can be processed completely separate from one another, but tied to a single purchase order.



**Shipment # 1**

	ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	ELCB000FOM68A6	Plantronics Voyager 510 - Bluetooth Headset Carrying Case	1.00	\$19.99	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	ELCB000WKS8QG6	Headphone Adapter for Apple iPhone Recessed Jack, 3.5mm Male Female...	1.00	\$14.95	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	ELCB00081A2DQ6	Koss SPARKPLUG - Stereo In Ear Ear Plugs	1.00	\$14.99	\$0.00

Page Size:

---

**Shipping Information**

**Shipping Address:**  
 111 Palm Street, Sun City, Florida, 333445, United States

**Shipping Method:**  
 Ground Shipping

---

**Shipment Summary**

Item Subtotal: \$49.93

Shipping cost: \$2.00

**Shipment Total: \$51.93**

**Shipment Status**

Status: Inventory Assigned

**Returns/Exchanges**

**Shipment # 2**

[New Item](#) [Delete](#)

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total Discount
ELCB000VILY426	Samsung WEP200 World Smallest™ Bluetooth Headset (White)*	1.00	\$99.99	\$0.00

Page Size: 100

---

**Shipping Information**

**Shipping Address:**  
111 Palm Street, Sun City, Florida, 333445, United States [Edit Shipping Address](#)

**Shipping Method:**  
Ground Shipping [Edit Shipping Method](#)

---

**Shipment Summary**

Item Subtotal: \$99.99

Shipping cost: \$2.00

**Shipment Total: \$101.99**

**Shipment Status**

Status: Inventory Assigned

[Complete shipment](#)

[Release shipment](#)

[Cancel shipment](#)

**Returns/Exchanges**

[Create Return](#)

6. Click **Save** to save your changes made to the order form.

### Viewing Purchase Orders by Date or Status

On the left navigation menu, you can click on the nodes below **Purchase Orders** and **Purchase Orders by Status**. For example, clicking on **Purchase Orders > Today** will show the orders created today only on the right window.

**EPiSERVER COMMERCE** Order List

Welcome [Change Language](#) [About](#)

Order Management		New Order <a href="#">Delete Selected</a>			
ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified	
PO0485	Mary Smith	\$39.98	In Progress	Today, 11:46 AM	
PO0850	Mary Smith	\$59.98	Cancelled	Today, 10:49 AM	
PO7657	Hiep Khuc	\$499.98	In Progress	Today, 10:26 AM	

Order Management

- Order Management
- Order Search
- Purchase Orders
  - Today
  - This Week
  - This Month
  - All

Moreover, you can view orders within the **Order List by status**. For example, click on **Purchase Orders by Status > InProgress** to view orders with that status.

**EPiSERVER COMMERCE** Orders by Status

Welcome [Change Language](#) [About](#)

Order Management		New Order <a href="#">Delete Selected</a>			
ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified	
PO0485	Mary Smith	\$39.98	In Progress	Today, 11:46 AM	
PO7657	Hiep Khuc	\$499.98	In Progress	Today, 10:26 AM	
PO3851	Hiep Khuc	\$967.44	In Progress	2/18/2011 11:48:36 AM	
PO1537	Hiep Khuc	\$451.99	In Progress	2/18/2011 9:58:27 AM	

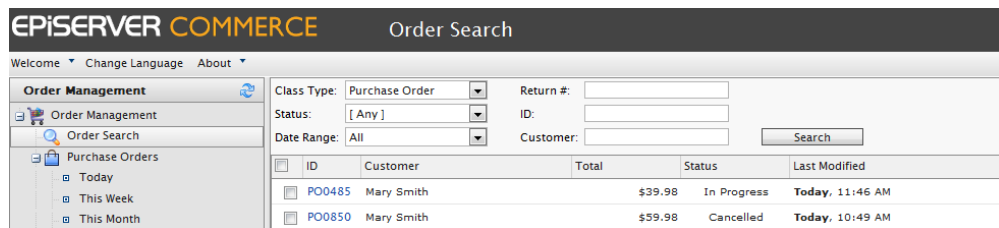
Order Management

- Order Management
- Order Search
- Purchase Orders
  - Purchase Orders By Status
    - OnHold
    - PartiallyShipped
    - InProgress
    - Completed
    - Cancelled
    - AwaitingExchange

### Viewing and Searching for Orders

#### Using Order Search to Find Existing Purchase Orders

**Order Search** allows you to find existing orders, giving you six different search filters to help refine your search results. You can click on the ID number of the order to view it.



Filter Name	Description
<b>Class Type</b>	Select "Purchase Orders" on the drop-down list. Otherwise, if you want to search for a specific shopping cart or payment plan, select those.
<b>Status</b>	<p>You can filter results by their statuses. For example, if you want to find only completed purchase orders, select from the drop-down list "Completed".</p> <p>Available status options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OnHold</li> <li>• PartiallyShipped</li> <li>• InProgress</li> <li>• Completed</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• AwaitingExchange</li> </ul>
<b>Date Range</b>	You can select from date ranges from "today," "last week," or "this month."
<b>Return #</b>	Enter in the return number of a purchase order if a return was created for that particular order.
<b>ID</b>	You can specify the order ID. Orders created out of the box with EPiServer Commerce are typically numbered as PO####.
<b>Customer</b>	Enter in a customer name and the search results will return only orders filtered by the specified name.

Click on **Search** to being your search query. The desired results appear below. The results are broken down by five column fields:

- ID
- Customer (name)
- Total (cost of order)
- Status
- Modified (date)

You can sort results by ID, Customer, Total, or Status.

## Shipping and Receiving Workflow

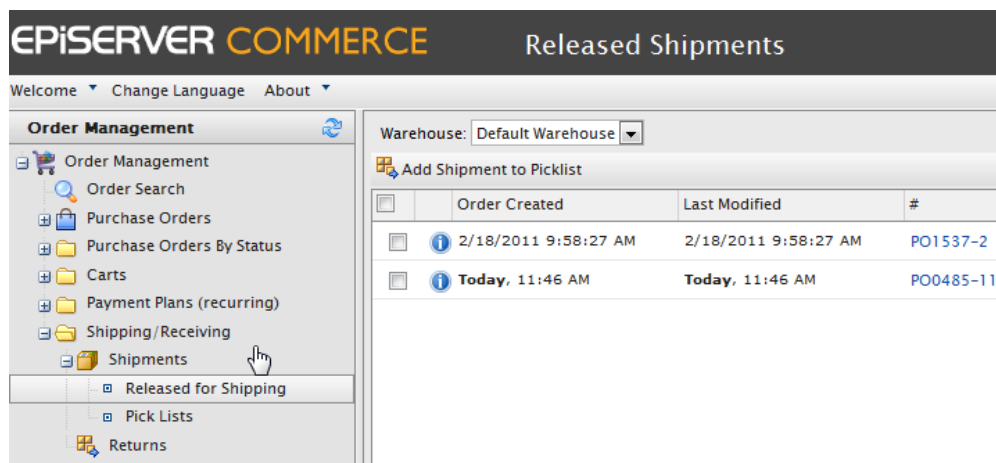
The Shipping and receiving workflow is described in the topics of this section.

### Processing Shipments and Creating Picklists

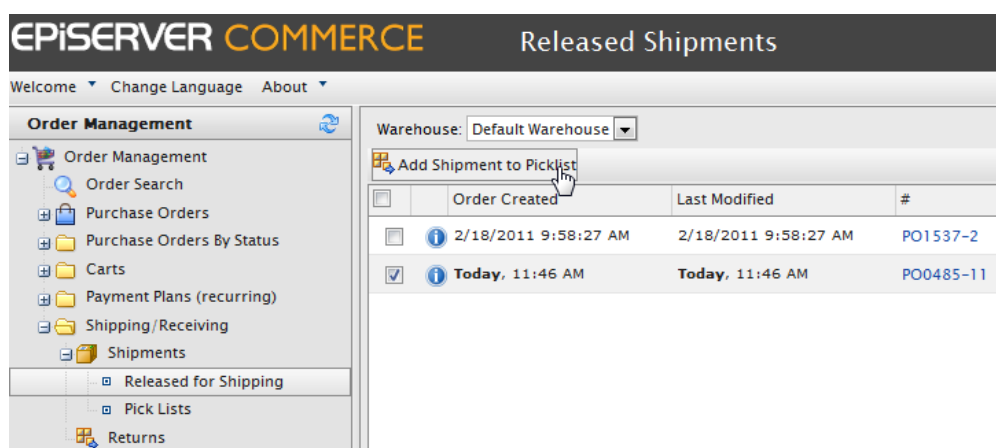
Once an order has been released for shipment, the order then goes through shipment processing, where you can add the shipment to a Picklist and select the warehouse where the item will be packed and

shipped from.

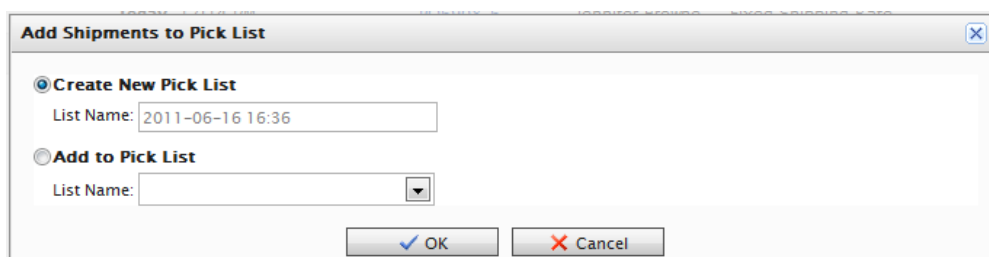
1. Go to **Order Management > Shipping/Receiving > Shipments > Released for Shipping**. This shows the **Released Shipments** screen.



2. Select a **Warehouse** from the drop-down list to determine where the item ship be packed and shipped from.
3. Checkmark which orders you want to add to the Picklist and click **Add Shipment to Picklist**.



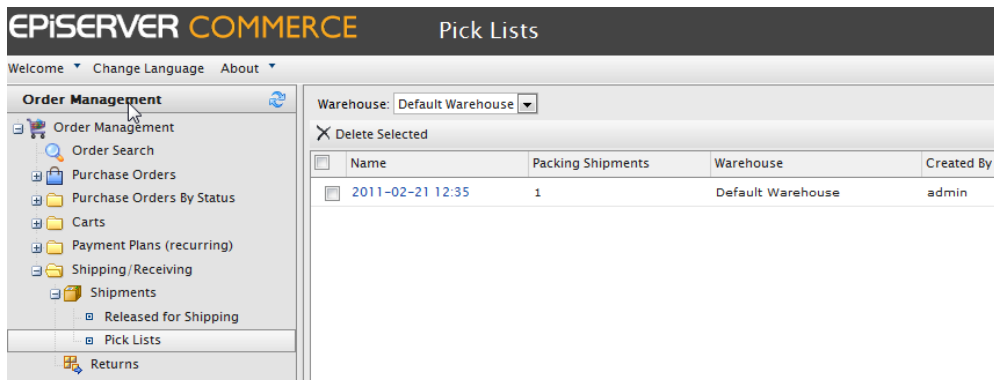
4. The **Add Shipments to Pick List** pop-up appears. You can choose to create a **New Pick List** (by default, the **List Name** shows the date and time the Pick List was generated) or add the chosen shipment(s) to an existing Pick List you can select from the List Name drop-down list. Click **OK** to save your changes.



Note that it is currently not possible to change the pick list name. It defaults to date and time.

**Printing Picklists and Printing Packing Slips**

1. Go to **Order Management > Pick Lists**. You can see existing Pick lists; you can filter the view by choosing which warehouse the pick list was generated in.



You can also sort existing pick lists by **Name**, **Packing Shipments**, **Warehouse**, and **Created By**.

2. Click on an existing pick list. The **Packing Shipments** window appears. You can choose to print a packing slip and/or a picklist. Checkmark one or more purchase orders. Click on **Print Picklist** to generate a printable and exportable (Excel or PDF) pick list.



Shipment Id:		4	
Customer Name	Product Code	Product Name	Qty
Carlos Nevada	ELCB000TGQHAW6	Apple Iphone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with Lint Cleaning Cloth	1.00

Shipment Id: 6			
Customer Name	Product Code	Product Name	Qty
Jennifer Browne	ELCB000WHK3V26	Apple iPhone 1G Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case -Black(Cozip Brand) Made in Korea	1.00
	ELCB000WKS8QG6	Headphone Adapter for Apple iPhone Recessed Jack, 3.5mm Male Female Extension Plug - Black	1.00

Shipment Id:		9	
Customer Name	Product Code	Product Name	Qty
Lisa Prescott	ELCB000FOM68A6	Plantronics Voyager 510 - Bluetooth Headset Carrying Case	1.00
	ELCB000WKS8QG6	Headphone Adapter for Apple iPhone Recessed Jack, 3.5mm Male Female Extension Plug - Black	1.00
	ELCB00081A2DQ6	Koss SPARKPLUG - Stereo In Ear Ear Plugs	1.00

To generate a packing slip, checkmark one or more purchase orders to include in the packing slip and then click on Print Packing Slip.



### Finalizing a Package for Shipment

There are two ways to complete a shipment.

#### Method 1

1. Check mark the box next to the shipment and then click **Complete**:

Packing Shipments					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Complete    Print Picklist    Print Packing Slip    Remove from Picklist					
<input type="checkbox"/>		Last Modified	#	Customer	Shipping Method
<input type="checkbox"/>		6/16/2011 12:09:53 PM	PO4563-4	Carlos Nevada	Fixed Shipping Rate
<input type="checkbox"/>		6/16/2011 12:14:41 PM	PO6908-6	Jennifer Browne	Fixed Shipping Rate
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Today, 1:40 PM	PO10728-9	Lisa Prescott	Ground Shipping

2. The **Complete shipment** pop-up appears. The default shipment number is based on the number after the purchase order number. For example, in the screenshot above, the PO number is PO7884-7. The last number after the dash is the number you want to enter into the text field.

Packing Shipments

☒ Complete | Print Picklist | Print Packing Slip | Remove from Picklist

	Last Modified	#	Customer	Shipping Method
	6/16/2011 12:09:53 PM	PO4563-4	Carlos Nevada	Fixed Shipping Rate
	6/16/2011 12:14:41 PM	PO6908-6	Jennifer Browne	Fixed Shipping Rate
	Today, 1:40 PM	PO10728-9	Lisa Prescott	Ground Shipping

Complete shipment

Shipment #:

3. Click on **Validate**. Once validated, you will see the customer name, shipping address, shipping method, and a field to enter in the tracking number provided by the shipping provider. Enter in a tracking number and click **OK**. The shipment is sent out and completed. The purchase order status will change to "Completed."

Complete shipment

Shipment #:

Customer: Lisa Prescott

Shipping Address: 111 Palm Street, Sun City, Florida, 333445, United States

Shipping Method: Ground Shipping

Tracking Number:



Currently, the Complete shipment pop-up is rendered over the purchase order number. So to reference the shipment number without closing the pop-up, you can move and drag the pop-up so you can see the PO number by hovering your mouse cursor over the Complete shipment title bar.

#### Method 2

1. To complete a shipment, click on the complete shipment icon highlighted in the screenshot below:

Packing Shipments					
<a href="#">Complete</a>   <a href="#">Print Picklist</a>   <a href="#">Print Packing Slip</a>   <a href="#">Remove from Picklist</a>					
		Last Modified	#	Customer	Shipping Method
<input type="checkbox"/>		6/16/2011 12:09:53 PM	PO4563-4	Carlos Nevada	Fixed Shipping Rate
<input type="checkbox"/>		6/16/2011 12:14:41 PM	PO6908-6	Jennifer Browne	Fixed Shipping Rate

2. The **Complete shipment** pop-up appears. The shipment # is already validated with the last number of the PO number.

Complete shipment

Shipment #:

6

Customer:

Jennifer Browne

Shipping Address:

75 Sun Street, Sunshine Valley, South Wales, 333567, Australia

Shipping Method:

Fixed Shipping Rate

Tracking Number:

1234566

OK

Cancel

3. Enter a tracking number provided by the shipping provider and then click **OK** to complete the shipment and complete the order.

### Processing Returns and Exchanges

#### Initiating a Return

Once a package has been finalized and shipped out, EPiServer Commerce enables you to process returns and exchanges directly in the order. Returns and exchanges can only be processed once a purchase order status is tagged as "Completed."

1. Go to purchase order that has been finalized and shipped. Go to the **Details** tab and you will see that the **Create Return** is available under **Returns/Exchanges**. Click on it to begin the return and/or exchange process.

Shipment Summary	Shipment Status	Returns/E
<p><b>Item Subtotal:</b> \$54.94</p> <p><b>Shipping cost:</b> \$10.00</p> <p><b>Shipment Total:</b> <b>\$64.94</b></p>	<p><b>Status:</b> Shipped</p> <p><a href="#">Complete shipment</a></p> <p><a href="#">Release shipment</a></p> <p><a href="#">Cancel shipment</a></p>	

- The **Create/Edit Return** form appears. Click on **New Item** to add associate the items to be returned.
- The **LineItem** drop-down menu defaults to the items that were in the original purchase order. You can set the **Return Quantity** and the **Return Reason** from the drop-down list (Faulty, Unwanted Gift, Incorrect Item). Click **OK** to save your changes.

The screenshot shows the 'Create/Edit Return' window. A 'New LineItem' sub-dialog is open, displaying the following details:

- LineItem:** Apple iPhone 1G Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case -Bl
- ID:** ELCB000WHK3V26
- Display Name:** Apple iPhone 1G Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case -Black (Cozip Brand) Made in Korea
- List Price:** 39.99
- Quantity:** 1.00
- Return Quantity:** 1.00
- Return Reason:** Faulty

The background window shows a 'Total information' section with the following values:

- Sub Total: 0.00
- Tax Total: 0.00
- Shipping Total: 0.00
- Handling Total: 0.00
- Discount Total: 0
- Total Return Amount: 0.00

At the bottom of the main window, the 'Shipping cost' is listed as \$10.00. Both dialog boxes have 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- The purchase order will go into **Edit Mode**. Click **Save** to continue the return process. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to cancel the return.

#### Return Actions

- Click on the **Returns** tab to process the return further. Once you get notice from the shipping department, for example, that they received the returned item, click on **Acknowledge Receipt Items**.

You can also choose to edit the return or cancel the return completely.

2. Once you click on **Acknowledge Receipt Items**, the **Complete Return** becomes available.

3. Click on the button to open the **Create Refund** form.

1. The Amount value defaults to the invoice cost of the item (not including the shipping costs). For example, if the item cost \$49.99 and the shipping cost was \$2, then the Amount text box will show \$49.99.

However, you can specify a different amount to refund to the customer, including the full

cost of the order, item(s) + shipping cost. By default, the refund will be deposited based on the payment method the customer used to make the order.

- If the customer wants the refund processed and deposited to a different credit card or payment method (such as cash, money order, or electronic transfer), click on the **New Credit** radio button and you can enter their alternate credit card information or other refund payment information.
- Once done, click **OK** to create and process the refund. The status of the purchase order changes to **Completed**.

Order No: PO6908      Customer: Jennifer Browne  
 Order Total: \$64.94      Status: Completed

Summary   Details   Payments   **Returns**   Notes

Return # RMA7696

Date/Time Initiated: Today, 2:39 PM      Notes: This must be replaced.  
 Created By: admin  
 Status: Complete  
 Return Total: \$39.99

**Returns actions**

Edit Return  
 Cancel Return  
 Complete Return  
 Acknowledge Receipt Items

**Exchange actions**

View Exchange  
 Create Exchange

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total	Reason
ELCB000WHK3V26	Apple iPhone 1G Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case -Black(Cozip Brand) Ma...	1.00	\$9.99	\$9.9900	faulty

Page Size: 100







#### Initiating an Exchange Order

Generating an exchange creates a separate **Exchange Order** (denoted by "EO", instead of "PO") tied to the original Purchase Order. An Exchange Order is similar to processing a Purchase Order, as it involves payment processing and releasing packages for shipment.

- Go to a Purchase Order, click on the **Details** tab, and then click on **Create Return**.
- Add the items for exchange.
- Click on the **Returns** tab and click on **Acknowledge Receipt Items**. Click **Create Exchange** to open the **Create Exchange Order** form.
- Click on **New Item** and then select the item to be exchanged by clicking **Configure Selected Entry**. You can adjust the price, quantity, and applicable discounts before you add the item to the Exchange Order by clicking **Add items to the order**.

**New LineItem**

[Advanced Search](#)

Picture	Name	Catalog	Type	Price	In
	Ultimate Ears-Metro.fi 150 Noise Isolating Earphones (Black)	Phone Accessories	Variation	\$49.99	
	510 Headset Charger	Phone Accessories	Variation	\$29.88	
	Plantronics Voyager 510 - Bluetooth Headset Carrying Case	Phone Accessories	Variation	\$19.99	
	Adapter Car Lighter Explorer / Voyager	Phone Accessories	Variation	\$23.25	
	Apple Iphone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with Lint Cleaning Cloth	Phone Accessories	Variation	\$9.99	
	Apple iPhone Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case- Silver - Cozin Brand (Made in Korea)	Phone Accessories	Variation	\$39.99	

Page Size:  (1319 items) | Page

**New LineItem**

**Selected Entry:** Ultimate Ears-Metro.fi 150 Noise Isolating Earphones (Black)

Display Price: \$49.99

Price:

Quantity:

Discount:

*Discount description amount*

Total: **\$49.99**

5. Enter a shipping and billing address. Select the shipping method to use for the Exchange Order. Click on **Recalculate** to adjust the Summary total.
6. Click **OK** once done.

### Viewing an Exchange

1. Once an Exchange Order has been created, click on **View Exchange** to view the details of the EO. An EO is similar to how a Purchase Order is set up.



2. Click on the **Payments** tab to add a payment to the Exchange Order. Select a payment method for processing the EO. You can adjust the amount if needed (the amount default value is based the item cost + shipping).

**Order**

The Order is in the Edit Mode. Save changes before exit.

**Order No:** EO0731    **Customer:** Jennifer Browne    **Original Order:** PO6908  
**Order Total:** \$51.99    **Status:** AwaitingExchange

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Transaction Type	Amount	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Pay By Phone		51.99	Pending

Page Size: 100

3. The Exchange Order goes into **Edit Mode**. Click on **Save** to process the payment and the order. The payment Transaction Type changes to "Authorization."
4. Go back to the Purchase Order and click on the **Returns** tab. Click on **Complete Return** to enable the Customer Service Representative (CSR) to release the EO shipment. Optionally, you can cancel the shipment to cancel the Exchange Order. Once you release shipment, the CSR *repeats the same process as he would when shipping a Purchase Order*.

## Shopping Cart

Registered and anonymous customer carts can be viewed in detail and converted to a Purchase Order manually.

### Converting a Shopping Cart to a Purchase Order

Customer shopping carts can be manually converted over to Purchase Orders, rather than have them process the order via the front-end site.

1. Go to **Order Management > Carts**. You will see the Shopping Carts List. You can also click on "Today," "This Week," or "This Month" to filter by date range.

**EPISERVER COMMERCE** Shopping Carts List

Welcome ▾ Change Language ▾ About ▾

**Order Management**

Order Management  
 Order Search  
 Purchase Orders  
   Today  
   This Week  
   This Month  
   All  
 Purchase Orders By Status  
 Carts  
   Today  
   This Week  
   This Month  
   All

New Order X Delete Selected

ID	Customer	Total	Status	Last Modified
14	Carlos	\$418.99	[undefined]	Today, 3:27 PM
9	Jennifer Browne	\$32.41	[undefined]	6/16/2011 4:25:13 PM
3	Anonymous	\$0.00	[undefined]	6/16/2011 12:07:01 PM

2. Click on the **ID** number of the shopping cart you want to convert over to a Purchase Order.
3. You will see the **Cart View** window and details of the customer's shopping cart.

**Cart View**

More Actions ▾

**Overview**

Edit Information

**Cart #:** 14

**Created Date:** 6/23/2011 1:27:46 PM

**Cart Total:** 418.99

**Currency:** USD

**Customer:** Carlos

**Customer ID:** f3ed5de8-5f95-43f6-a6d2-e4348cca9d2e [Open Customer Profile](#)

**Email Address:** carlos@somemail.com

**Line Items** **Notes**

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total
ELCB000WM2VAI6		1.00	\$19.99	\$19.99
ELCB000JNYWBG6		1.00	\$399.00	\$399.00

Page Size: 100 ▾

An **anonymous user Cart View** will look like this:



**Cart View**

More Actions ▾

**Overview**

[Edit Information](#)

**Cart #:** 3

**Created Date:** 6/16/2011 10:07:01 AM

**Cart Total:** 0.00

**Currency:** USD

**Customer:** Anonymous

**Email Address:**

**Line Items** | **Notes**

ID	Name	Quantity	List Price	Total
ELCB000TGQHAW6		1.00	\$9.99	\$9.99

Page Size: 100 ▾

1. **Edit Information** - You can change the currency to be used for the Purchase Order.
  2. **Open Customer Profile** - You can view the profile of the registered customer (this option is not available for anonymous shopping carts).
  3. **Line Items** - This is the list of items currently in the customer's shopping cart, displaying the Quantity of each item, List Price, and Total.
  4. **Notes** - You can add, edit, or delete notes about the shopping cart.
4. Click on **More Actions** and click on **Convert to Purchase Order**.

**Cart View**

More Actions ▾

Convert to Purchase Order  
Create Payment Plan  
Edit Information

**Cart #:** 14

**Created Date:** 6/23/2011 1:27:46 PM

**Cart Total:** 418.99

**Currency:** USD

**Customer:** Carlos

**Customer ID:** f3ed5de8-5f95-43f6-a6d2-e4348cca9d2e

**Email Address:** carlos@somemail.com

[Open Customer Profile](#)

The page refreshes and shows the Order view page for *further processing of the purchase order*.

## Payment Plans

This section describes how to work with payment plans and recurring payment plans in EPiServer Commerce.

### Setting up a Payment Plan

Payment plans can be setup by the CSR to generate recurring payments. An example recurring payment would be for magazine or grocery subscriptions.

Payment plans are handled in the background by a scheduled Quartz job which should be configured by your IT team based on your business needs. Ideally, the payment plan job should run once per day.

#### Creating a Payment Plan

1. Go to **Order Management > Payment Plans (recurring)**. You will open up the Payment Plans List. To create a new payment plan, click on **New Payment Plan**.
2. Select a customer contact to attach the payment plan to.
3. The **Payment Plan New** page appears. Complete the form as you would when creating a new order.
4. Under **Payment Plan Details**, you will set the cycles and parameters of the payment plan.
5. Once the payment plan is configured, click **OK**.

Field	Description
<b>Plan Cycle</b>	<p>You can choose from the following plan cycles, which determine how often the customer is charged.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- No Cycle: No recurring payment is created. The customer is charged once when the initial purchase order is created.</li> <li>- Daily Cycle: recurring payment happens daily from start date.</li> <li>- Weekly Cycle: recurring payment happens weekly from start date.</li> <li>- Monthly Cycle: recurring payment happens monthly from start date.</li> <li>- Custom1/Custom2: these are placeholders for developers to create custom cycles within the Mediachase.Commerce.Orders.PaymentPlanCycle class.</li> </ul>
<b>Cycle Length</b>	Determines how many times to run a cycle runs. For example, the cycle length of "2" for a weekly cycle means the cycle will run twice after two weeks from start date. Setting a cycle length of "0" means the cycle will run an unlimited number of times.
<b>Max Cycles</b>	Determines the maximum number of cycles to run for this payment plan. The max cycles value is typically set to the same value as the cycle length. For example, if the cycle length is 12, you will set the max cycle length to 12 as well. If the cycle length is set to 0 (for unlimited) then the max cycles length should also be set to 0.
<b>Completed Cycles</b>	This tallies the number of completed cycles so far after the payment plan was created. When initially creating the payment plan, set this field to 0.
<b>Start Date</b>	Set the start date and time to determine when the payment plan should begin (beginning recurring transactions).
<b>End Date</b>	Set the end date and time when the payment plan should end (ending recurring transactions).
<b>Is Plan Active</b>	Set "True" to enable the payment plan. Set "False" to create the payment plan but keep it inactive.
<b>Last Transaction Date</b>	Logs the last transaction date. The date and time already in those two fields when first creating the payment plan should be kept as is.

#### Payment Plan Order Detail Page Explained

The payment plan begins once the first purchase order is generated. The purchase order can be created manually (by clicking on Create First Purchase Order) or automatically by the payment plans quartz job.

After creating a new payment plan, a new **Order** page appears. This is slightly altered from the original Order detail page that appears after creating a new order. The changes include:

- Inability to manage shipments (i.e. release shipments for further processing)
- An Orders tab that shows a history of processed purchase orders from this payment plan

- A "Create First Purchase Order" button that a CSR can manually click on to create the first purchase order related to this payment plan. The button disappears after creating the first purchase order manually or when the payment plan quartz job runs and generates the first purchase order. Once that first purchase is generated, the payment plan goes into effect.
- The purchase order number that is generated includes the parent ID of the payment plan. For example, if the payment plan parent ID is 35, the subsequent purchase orders are numbered as "PO35XXX."
- When a payment is added to a payment plan, the customer is not charged. The customer is charged once the purchase order is generated for the first time (and through subsequent purchase orders). The payment plan simply collects the payment information until converted to a purchase order.

#### Editing and Canceling a Payment Plan

1. To edit an existing payment plan, go to **Order Management > Payment Plans (Recurring)** or **Today/This Week/This Month/All**. Click on the payment plan ID number to open the payment plans order details page and make edits.
2. To cancel a payment plan, when editing a payment plan, click on the **Summary** tab and then click on **Cancel Payment Plan**.

#### Creating a Recurring Payment Plan Using Authorize.Net

Out of the box, EPiServer Commerce supports Authorize.net as a recurring payment plan gateway.

For more information on how to setup payment methods, refer to the *Payment Gateways* section.

1. Go to **Administration > Order System > Payments > (Language)** and create a new payment method or click on an existing payment method (such as "Pay by Credit Card").
2. When setting up the parameters of the payment method, select this class name:

Class Name:	Mediachase.Commerce.Plugins.Payment.Authorize.AuthorizePaymentGateway ▼
-------------	---

3. Select "Yes" for **Supports Recurring**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click on the name of the payment method again and click on the **Parameters** tab.

6. Configure your Authorize.net account for both regular payments and recurring payments.

**Configure Authorize.Net Account**  
Get an Authorize.Net account at [www.authorizenet.com](http://www.authorizenet.com).

API UserId:

Transaction Key:

**Regular Payments**

Processing Url:

Payment Options:

☒ Authorization

☐ Sale

**Recurring Payments**

Processing Url:

Recurring Method:

Cancel Status:

## Marketing

The Commerce Manager Marketing system consists of the following components:

- **Campaigns** - a way to organize marketing activities. Campaigns must be associated with Promotions in order to provide customer discounts. Optionally, Campaigns can also be tied to Customer Segments for targeted marketing purposes.
  - For example, you can create a seasonal campaign that will include different Promotions targeted for the Spring season.
- **Promotions** - a way to apply various discounts to the products, order totals or shipping. A Promotion is a marketing tool used to increase sales of certain products or product lines. Various incentives such as lowered pricing and other discounts can be employed as part of a Promotion.
  - Promotions are always tied to Campaigns.
  - Promotions can be classified into two types: 1) either you can create a Promotion that is visible prior to checkout or 2) you can configure the Promotion to be displayed during the checkout process.
  - The most powerful aspect of the Marketing system is the Expression Engine which allows variable conditions to be applied when creating a Promotion. These conditions vary from the number of items, the percentage discount, shipping rates and many others.

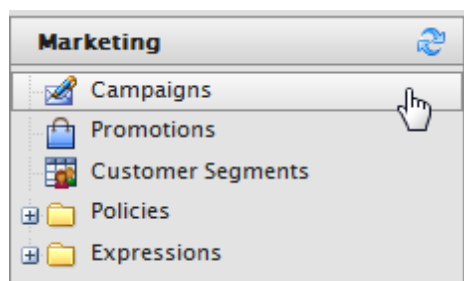
- **Customer Segments** - these determine the target audience for the Promotions. Customer Segments determine the target audience for the Promotions. Within a Campaign, all Promotions will be applied to whatever Customer Segments associated with the same Campaign. Members of the Customer Segments can be pre-defined in static groups or you can use the Expressions Engine to create dynamic groups whenever Promotions are run.
  - For example, you can have a Customer Segment that targets all users from the Los Angeles area. You can create an Expression that will include all the customers whose home city is Los Angeles. Thus, when a user registers on the site he immediately becomes part of the target Customer Segment.
- **Expressions** - these are customizable Conditions which allow users to extend different aspects of the Marketing system -- Promotions, Customer Segments and Policies all rely on Expressions. There is an Expressions Engine which is a core technology behind the Marketing system.
  - For example, you want to set a Promotion for "40% off Item X." The Expression or Condition to enable this Promotion would include: Catalog ID for Item X and Reward of 40%.
- **Policies** - rules that are always executed when Promotions are applied. This allows a Marketing manager to declare rules just once for the whole site.
  - An example of a rule is as follows: Do not allow negative orders.

## Campaigns

Campaigns provide a way to organize marketing activities. Campaigns must be associated with Promotions in order to provide customer discounts. Optionally, Campaigns can also be tied to Customer Segments for targeted marketing purposes. For example, you can create a seasonal Campaign that will include different *Promotions* targeted for the spring season.

### Browsing Campaigns

To browse Campaigns, go to **Marketing > Campaigns** to open the **Campaign List**.



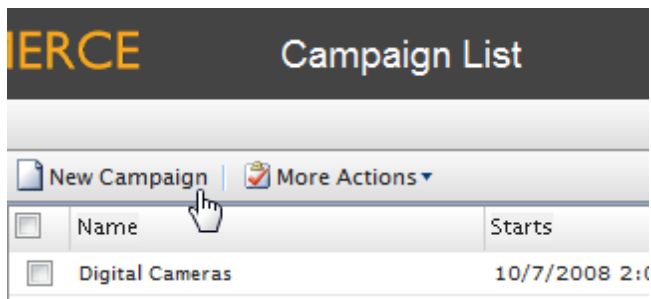
From the **Campaign List**, you can create a **New Campaign** or edit existing ones.

1ERCE Campaign List					
<a href="#">New Campaign</a>   <a href="#">More Actions</a>					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Starts	Ends	Is Active	Created
<input type="checkbox"/>	Digital Cameras	10/7/2008 2:00:00 AM	11/7/2020 1:00:00 AM	True	10/8/2008 12:14:13 AM

### Creating a Marketing Campaign

Sales promotions are tied to specific Campaigns. A Campaign could be related to seasonal sales, such as Easter or Christmas. Campaigns are the first step to deploying targeted marketing efforts.

To create a new Campaign, click on **New Campaign** on the **Campaign List** page.



This opens up the **Campaign Edit** page.

1. Enter in a **Campaign Name**, such as "Christmas Campaign" or "Back to School Sale."
2. Enter in any **Comments** as notes about the Campaign.
3. Enter in a date directly (or click on the **Calendar** icon to select a date) and time into the **Available From** field. This will indicate when the Campaign is expected to start.
4. Enter in a date and time in the **Expires On** field.
5. Select the **Target Segments** from the list. Target segments are created under the *Customer Segments* section
6. Indicate whether or not the Campaign is **Active**, "Yes" or "No."
7. Indicate whether or not to **Archive** the Campaign, "Yes" or "No." **NOTE** This feature has not been implemented and switching its status from "No" to "Yes" will not change anything.
8. Once done, click on **OK**.

**ERCE** Campaign Edit

Overview

Campaign Name:   
*enter campaign name*

Comments:

Available from:

Expires on:

Target Segments:

- Grads

Active: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Archived: ☐ Yes ☒ No

OK Cancel

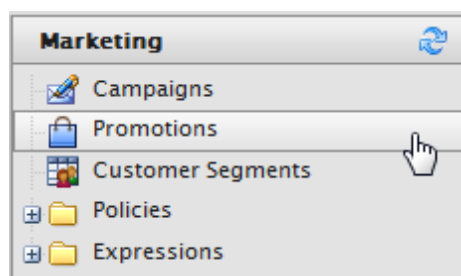
## Promotions

Promotions provide a way to apply various discounts to the products, order totals or shipping. A Promotion is a marketing tool used to increase sales of certain products or product lines. Various incentives such as lowered pricing and other discounts can be employed as part of a Promotion.

Promotions are always tied to *Campaigns*. In addition, Promotions can be classified into two types: 1) either you can create a promotion that is visible prior to checkout or 2) you can configure the promotion to be displayed during the checkout process. The most powerful aspect of the Marketing system is the *Expressions Engine* which allows variable conditions to be applied when creating a Promotion. These conditions vary from the number of items, the percentage discount, shipping rates and many others.

### Browsing Promotions

To view and browse Promotions, click on **Promotions** on the left navigation bar.



The **Promotion List** page opens, displaying a list of existing Promotions.

EPiSERVER Promotion List						
<a href="#">New Promotion</a>   <a href="#">More Actions</a>						
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Group	Priority	Starts	Ends	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	20% Off Canon Powershot Pro Series	entry	1	10/7/2008 2:00:00 AM	11/7/2014 1:00:00 AM	active

You can click through the name of a Promotion to view its properties.

EPiSERVER Promotion List						
<a href="#">New Promotion</a>   <a href="#">More Actions</a>						
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Group	Priority	Starts	Ends	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	20% Off Canon Powershot Pro Series	entry	1	10/7/2008 2:00:00 AM	11/7/2014 1:00:00 AM	active

EPiSERVER Promotion Edit	
Overview	
Promotion Type:	Catalog Entry: Buy X Get \$ Off Discount
Promotion Name:	20% Off Canon Powershot Pro Series
	<i>enter promotion name</i>
<b>Display Name:</b>	
English (United States)	
German (Germany)	
Spanish (Spain)	
French (France)	
<b>Promotion Properties:</b>	
Campaign:	Digital Cameras
Promotion Group:	entry

#### Deleting a Promotion

On the **Promotion List** page, checkmark the box next to the name of the Promotion and then click on **More Actions > Delete Selected** on the menu bar.

EPiSERVER Promotion List						
<a href="#">New Promotion</a>   <a href="#">More Actions</a>						
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Group	Priority			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	20% Off Canon Powershot Pro Series	entry	1			

X Delete Selected  
Flip Status (active/inactive)

#### Creating an Entry Level Promotion

Out of the box, users can build these Catalog Entry Promotion Types:

- Catalog Entry: Build Your Own Discount
- Catalog Entry: Buy Catalog entry X, get catalog entry Y at a discount
- Catalog Entry: Buy X Get \$ Off Discount
- Catalog Entry: Buy X, get N quantity of Y at a Discount



The following are examples of how to create each type of Promotion.

**Example: Build Your Own Discount - "40% Off Canon PowerShot S5"**

Once you have selected "Build Your Own Discount" from the **Promotion Type** drop-down menu, enter in a **Promotion Name**, such as "40 % Off Canon PowerShot S5"

Under the **Display Name** section, enter in the display name for each language type.

Promotion Name:	<input type="text" value="40 % Off Canon Powershot S5"/> <i>enter promotion name</i>
<b>Display Name:</b>	
English (United States)	<input type="text" value="40 % Off Canon Powershot S5"/>
German (Germany)	<input type="text"/>
Spanish (Spain)	<input type="text"/>
French (France)	<input type="text"/>

**Promotion Properties:**

- Under the **Campaign** drop-down, select an existing Campaign created earlier
- **Promotion Group** is grayed out because the Promotion Type is specified
- From the **Combination with other promotions** drop-down, select the degree to which multiple Promotions can be combined. There are three options: "Combine with other promotions", "Exclusive within select groups", and "Exclusive within all groups."
  - **Combine with other Promotions** - The selected promotion will be combined with all other promotion types that may be in use
  - **Exclusive within Selected Groups** - If the selected promotion is applied, no other promotions within that group will be applied (but other promotions in other groups may be applied)
  - **Exclusive within all Groups** - If the selected promotion is applied, no other promotions will be applied.
- Enter a numerical value into the **Priority** field (Promotions with a higher priority will be evaluated first)
- Optionally, enter in a **Coupon Code** that customers can redeem from the front-end public site to get receive the discount. Otherwise, leave the field blank.
- Set the **Status** of the Promotion either as "Active", "Inactive," "Suspended," or "Deleted" from the drop-down menu. Select Active to enable the Promotion.

<b>Promotion Properties:</b>	
Campaign:	<input type="text" value="Digital Cameras"/>
Promotion Group:	<input type="text" value="entry"/>
Combination with other promotions:	<input type="text" value="Combine with other promotions"/> <i>select the degree to which multiple promotions can be combined</i>
Priority:	<input type="text" value="1"/> <i>promotions with higher priority will be evaluated first</i>
Coupon Code:	<input type="text" value="Test"/> <i>will require code if entered</i>
Status:	<input type="text" value="Active"/> <i>status of the promotion</i>

**Purchase Condition and Reward:**

Here you can set your own **Purchase Condition** to receive the discount **Rewards**. To apply a 40% discount for Canon digital cameras, use the following settings in the screenshot.

#### Purchase Condition and Reward:

*This type of promotion allows you to create your own custom promotion.*

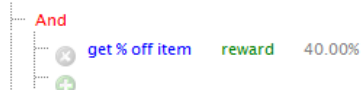
Use the condition below to restrict how the promotion will be applied.

Purchase Condition:



Use the actions below to assign rewards.

Rewards:



#### Redemption Limits:

Under this section, you can specify the redemption limits of this Promotion.

- Next to **Max. Total Redemption**, enter in the maximum number of times the Promotion can be redeemed.
- Next to **Max. Redemptions Per Order**, enter in the maximum number of times the Promotion can be redeemed per customer order.
- Next to **Max. Redemptions Per Customer**, enter in the number of times a Promotion can be by a single customer.

#### Redemption Limits:

Max. Total Redemptions:	<input type="text" value="300"/>	(Redeemed:)
	<i>number of times the promotion can be used by all customers, enter 0 for unlimited</i>	
Max. Redemptions Per Order:	<input type="text" value="1"/>	
	<i>number of times the promotion can be used in a single order, enter 0 for unlimited</i>	
Max. Redemptions Per Customer:	<input type="text" value="1"/>	
	<i>number of times the promotion can be used by a single customer, enter 0 for unlimited</i>	


#### Schedule:

Enter the date and time when the Promotion is **Available** and when it **Expires**.

Click **OK** to save the Promotion. The Promotion will appear in the **Promotion List**.

ERCE Promotion List				
<a href="#">New Promotion</a>   <a href="#">More Actions</a> ▼				
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Group	Priority	Starts
<input type="checkbox"/>	20% Off Canon Powershot Pro Series	entry	1	10/7/2008 2:00:00 AM

When the Promotion is applied, the price on the front-end should change.

Action	Description	Each	Qty
Move to wishlist Remove	 Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom <small>Item #: 013803079616</small> 20% Off Canon Powershot Pro Series	<del>\$449.99</del> <b>\$359.99</b> You save: \$90.00	1 ▾

### Buy catalog entry X, get catalog entry Y at a discount

The steps to create this discount are similar to creating a custom discount. The difference is the Purchase Condition and Reward.

1. Under the **Select catalog entry X** drop-down menu, select a specific catalog entry.
2. Under the **Select catalog entry Y** drop-down menu, select another specific catalog entry.
3. Enter in a value for the **Quantity of "X" needed to qualify for the promotion**. For example, the customer must purchase 2 of Catalog Entry X as a prerequisite for the discount.
4. Enter in a value for the **Quantity of "Y" needed to qualify for the promotion**. For example, the customer must purchase 3 of Catalog Entry Y as a prerequisite for the discount.
5. In the Amount field, enter in a number and select from the drop-down to indicate that the Promotion is **Percentage Based or Value Based**. For example, if you enter 40 and select Percentage Based, the Promotion will take off 40%. If Value based, it will be 40 off the total price.

#### Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion makes additional SKUs available at a percentage discount when an order includes some required amount of the specified SKU.

Select catalog entry X:

Select catalog entry Y:

Quantity of 'X' needed to qualify for the promotion:

Quantity of 'Y' needed to qualify for the promotion:

Amount:

### Buy X Get \$ Off Discount

This type of Promotion gives a discount per item by purchasing the minimum quantity specified under these Purchase Conditions.

1. Enter in a **Minimum quantity** that the customer needs to purchase in order to receive the discount.
2. Enter in the **Amount** of the Promotional discount, whether Percentage Based or Value Based.
3. Select any number of **Variations** from the drop-down menu and click on "add variation." Repeat to add more **Variations** to this Promotion. Click on the red **X** button next to the Variation to delete it.

#### Purchase Condition and Reward:

This type of promotion gives \$ off discount per item for the minimum quantity.

Minimum quantity:

Amount:

Variations:

☒ Apple Iphone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with Lint Cleaning Cloth [ELCB000TGQHAW6]  
☒ Apple iPhone 1G Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case -Black(Cozip Brand) Made in Korea [ELCB000WHK3V26]  
☒ 510 Headset Charger [ELCB000GKLGX46]

**Buy X, get N quantity of Y at a discount**

This type of Promotion allows a customer to be eligible to buy a designated number of items at a reduced price.

1. Select an **Entry X variation** from the drop-down menu and click on "add variation." (What does "Exclude" do?)
2. **Select catalog entry Y** from the drop-down menu. A certain number of "Y" entries will be discounted based on the Purchase Conditions.
3. Enter in a **Max quantity Y** for the maximum number of Y entries eligible for a discount.
4. Enter in the **Amount** of the Promotional discount, whether Percentage or Value based.

**Purchase Condition and Reward:**

This type of promotion eligible to buy designated number of item at a reduced price.

Entry X variation:  ☐ Exclude

add variation

✗ Apple Iphone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with Lint Cleaning Cloth [ELCB000TGQHAW6]

✗ Ultimate Ears-Metro.fi 150 Noise Isolating Earphones (Black) [ELCB000PBOWNK6]

Select catalog entry Y:

Max quantity Y:

Amount:

**Creating an Order Level Promotion**

Order Level Promotions are discounts applied if the overall Order satisfies the conditions specified by the Promotion.

There are two types of Order Level Promotions available to the user:

- **Order Sub Total Volume Discount** - if the order subtotal minimum is met, then the customer receives the discount
- **Build Your Own Discount** - can create a custom Order Level promotion based on a range of Purchase Conditions and Rewards (similar to creating a custom catalog entry discount)

**Order Sub Total Volume Discount**

Enter in the **Minimum order amount** into the field. For example, if the order amount was set to \$200, then the customer must have \$200 or more in his shopping cart to qualify for the discount.

Enter in the **Amount** of the discount. It can either be "Percentage Based" or "Value Based." If Percentage Based, then the customer gets a percentage off the price. If Value Based, the customer gets a fixed amount discounted off.

**Purchase Condition and Reward:**

This type of promotion discounts the order subtotal if minimum order amount is met.

Minimum order amount:

Amount:

**Example: Build Your Own Discount - "20% Off for a Shopping Cart Subtotal of \$100 or More"**

Like a custom Catalog Entry discount (add link here), users can create their own custom Order Level discount based on a list of **Purchase Conditions** and **Rewards**. This means that there is a wide range of Order Level discount possibilities.

The follow Condition and Reward example shows how to create a Promotion that gives 20% off for a shopping cart subtotal of \$100 or more.

**Purchase Condition and Reward:**

*This type of promotion allows you to create your own custom promotion.*

Use the condition below to restrict how the promotion will be applied.

Purchase Condition:

And

ShoppingCart.SubTotal Equals 99.99

Use the actions below to assign rewards.

Rewards:

And

get % off whole order reward 20.00%

The discount should reflect on the shopping cart on front-end public site.

**Creating a Shipping Level Promotion**

Shipping Level Promotions are promotions that give discounts based on the overall shipment. The discount will appear on the order page just before you submit the order.



Currently, creating a "Free Shipping" promotion based on a certain order amount (e.g. free shipping for an order of \$50 or more) is not available out of the box and requires customization. Refer to the EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide for preliminary guidance on how to create such a promotion and other custom promotions.

There are two types of Shipping Level Promotions available to the user:

- Buy X Get \$ Off Shipment Discount
- Buy X Get Y Free

**Buy X Get \$ Off Shipment Discount**

This Promotion type applies shipping discount if the specified **Variations** total the **Minimum Quantity** set or more.

1. Enter in a **Minimum Quantity**.
2. Enter in an **Amount** of the discount Reward, and select from the drop-down whether it is "Percentage Based" or "Value Based."
3. Select the **Variations** from the drop-down list that qualify for the discount. Click on **Add Variation** to add the Variation to the list.

**Purchase Condition and Reward:**

This type of promotion gives \$ off discount per item for the minimum quantity per shipment.

Minimum quantity:

Amount:  Percentage Based ▼

Variations: Adapter Car Lighter Explorer / Voyager [ELCB000CH5M2M6] ▼ add variation

✗ 510 Headset Charger [ELCB000GKLGX46]

✗ Adapter Car Lighter Explorer / Voyager [ELCB000CH5M2M6]

**Buy X Get Y Free**

This shipping discount allows a user to set two Catalog entries for X and Y. If X is in their shopping cart, then the customer receives the Y item at no cost.

**Purchase Condition and Reward:**

Customer adds an eligible item (X) to their Shopping Bag, and receives another item (Y) at no cost.

Select catalog entry X:

Plantronics Voyager 510 - Bluetooth Headset Carrying Case ▼

Select catalog entry Y:

Adapter Car Lighter Explorer / Voyager [ELC8000CH5M2M6] ▼

**Creating Custom Promotions**

You can create custom promotions instead of using the built-in ones. It is possible to create custom promotions on a catalog, order, or shipping level.

**How to Use "Or" When Building Your Own Promotions**

EPiServer Commerce has a powerful discounting engine and can be used to build all types of promotions without writing custom code. In most cases these discounts can be built using one of the built in "Build Your Own Discount" options.

**Building the Discount**

In this case we want to build a promotion that will give a \$10 discount on certain items in our catalog. We want products with "Canon" OR "Vista" in the display name to receive \$10 off the item. In this case we are using a Promotion Type of **"Catalog Entry:Build Your Own Discount"**. Constructing the purchase condition can be a confusing when using the **Or** operator. The first item we must add to the condition is the **Or** operator since **And** is the default. The **Or** will have the effect we desire if added first which is **And** (Or (DisplayName = Canon, DisplayName = Vista)) which is translated by the rules engine to **And** (DisplayName = Canon **Or** DisplayName = Vista). If **the Or** is not added first the results will not be as desired as the DisplayName would have to contain Canon And Vista.

The Reward is set to \$10 Off.

**Purchase Condition and Reward:**

*This type of promotion allows you to create your own custom promotion.*

Use the condition below to restrict how the promotion will be applied.

Purchase Condition:



Use the actions below to assign rewards.

Rewards:

**Seeing the Discount Applied**

We have added three items to our shopping cart. As you can see two of the items (containing "Canon" and "Vista") have been given the \$10 off discount and the name of the promotion is shown with the item.

The third item in our cart did not meet the criteria we set so no discount was applied.

Home - Shopping Cart

Shopping Cart

Coupon:

	Description	Each	Qty	Total
move to wish list remove	<p>Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom Item #: 013803079616</p> <p><del>\$449.99</del> <b>\$439.99</b> You save: \$10.00</p> <p>TEST OR CONDITION</p>		1	\$439.99
move to wish list remove	<p>Vista Explorer 60" Lightweight Tripod with Tripod Bag Item #: 049383208344</p> <p><del>\$3,999.00</del> <b>\$3,989.00</b> You save: \$10.00</p> <p>TEST OR CONDITION</p>		1	\$3,989.00
move to wish list remove	<p>Ultimate Ears-Metro.fi 150 Noise Isolating Earphones (Black) Item #: ELCB000PBOWNK6</p> <p><b>\$49.99</b></p> <p><b>No Discount Applied</b></p>		1	\$49.99
				Sub total: \$4,478.98

[Review Store Policies](#)
[Return and Exchange Policy](#)
[Privacy Policy](#)

## Customer Segments

Customer Segments determine the target audience for the *Promotions* or *Campaigns*. Customer Segments determine the target audience for the Promotions. Within a Campaign, all Promotions will be applied to whatever Customer Segments associated with the same Campaign. Members of the Customer Segments can be pre-defined in static groups or you can use the *Expressions Engine* to create dynamic groups whenever Promotions are run.

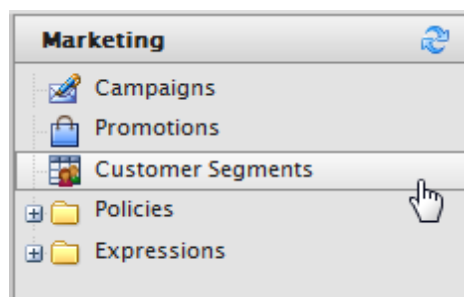
For example you can have a Customer Segment that targets all users from the Los Angeles area. You can create an Expression that will include all the customers whose home city is Los Angeles. Thus, when a user registers on the site he immediately becomes part of the target Customer Segment.

### Creating a Customer Segment

Customer segments specify which group of Customers a user wants to specifically target with their *Campaigns*.

#### Creating a Customer Segment Assigned to Contacts

Go to **Marketing > Customer Segments**.



Click on **New Segment** on the menu bar to open the **Segment Edit** page.

The image shows two screenshots of the EPiServer Commerce user interface. The top screenshot, titled "Customer Segment List", shows a table with columns for "Name" and "More Actions". The table contains three rows: "livesinume", "Stockholmskunder", and "Grads". A mouse cursor is pointing at the "New Segment" button. The bottom screenshot, titled "Segment Edit", shows the "Overview" tab with fields for "Segment Name", "Display Name", and "Description". Below these fields is a "Members" section with a drop-down menu and an "Exclude member" checkbox. At the bottom of the "Members" section is an "add member" button. Below the "Members" section is a "Conditions" section with a "New Condition" button. At the bottom of the "Segment Edit" form are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

**Customer Segment List**

Name	More Actions
livesinume	
Stockholmskunder	
Grads	

**Segment Edit**

Overview

Segment Name:

*enter segment name*

Display Name:

Description:

Members:

☐ Exclude member

*add member*

Conditions:

*The above conditions will be evaluated in runtime and if any are true, i*

1. Enter in a **Segment Name**, such as "Company X Team."
2. Enter in a **Display Name**, which will appear to users when associating this Customer Segment when *Creating a Marketing Campaign*.
3. Enter in a **Description**.
4. Select from a list of contacts from the **Members** drop-down to assign them to this **Customer Segment**. Select the name from the drop-down and then click **add member**. You can choose to **Exclude** member by clicking on the checkbox and then clicking **add member**.
5. Once done, click **OK** to save the Customer Segment.



**IERCE** Segment Edit

Overview

Segment Name:   
*enter segment name*

Display Name:

Description:

Members:  ☒ Exclude member

add member

- ☒ Mats Hellström
- ☒ Mary Smith
- ☒ Peter Sunna

Conditions:

*The above conditions will be evaluated in runtime and if any are true, th*

#### Creating a Customer Segment with Conditions

Instead of assigning members manually to a Customer Segment, you can use **Conditions** to apply rules. If a customer satisfies the Conditions, then the customer is part of the Customer Segment.

To add Conditions to the Customer Segment, click on **New Condition** on the **Segment Edit** page. This example will show how to specify Company X or Techarts emails as part of this Customer Segment.

Enter in an **Expression Name**, such as "Company X or Email Addresses."

Setup the Conditions based on the screenshot below.

**Condition Dialog**

Expression Name:   
*enter expression name*



Expression Xml:

```

And
├── Or
│   ├── Email Equals (Text) Company X
│   └── Email Equals (Text) Techarts
└── +
  
```

Click **OK** to save the Conditions.

Conditions:

  Company X or Techarts Email

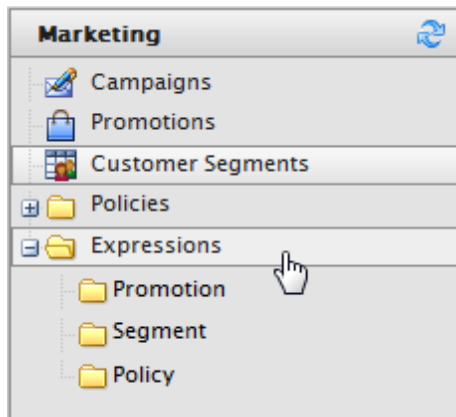
*The above conditions will be evaluated in runtime and if any are true, the customer will be part of this segment.*

## Working with Expressions

Expressions are customizable Conditions which allow users to extend different aspects of the Marketing system -- Promotions, Customer Segments and Policies all rely on Expressions. There is an Expressions Engine which is a core technology behind the Marketing system.

Users can create Expressions under **Promotion**, **Segment**, or **Policy**.

To access and create Expressions, click on **Marketing > Expand Expressions > Either Promotions/Segment/Policy** to view the **Expression List** page.



Expression List			
<input type="button" value="New Expression"/> <input type="button" value="More Actions"/>			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Modified Created
<input type="checkbox"/>	BuyXGetOffDiscount	This type of promotion gives \$ off discount per item for the minimum quantity.	10/8/2008 4:21:58 AM

To create a new Expression, click on **New Expression**. The **Expression Edit** page appears.



In order to create an Expression, knowledge of XML is required. Non-technical users may want to skip this section.

Enter in an **Expression Name**, such as "ShippingCustomDiscount."

Enter in a **Description** of the Expression.

Enter in the **Expression XML**.

Under **Category**, select from the drop-down whether this Expression is for a "Promotion," "Segment," or "Policy." Depending on your selection, the Expression will appear under those respective folders. Click **OK** to save changes.

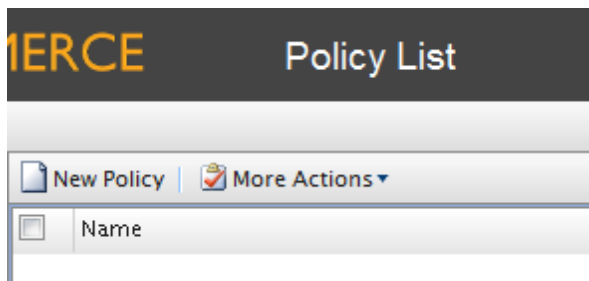
To create a new Expression, click on **New Expression**. The **Expression Edit** page appears.



In order to create an Expression, knowledge of XML is required. Non-technical users may want to skip this section.

Enter in an **Expression Name**, such as "ShippingCustomDiscount."





Click on **New Policy** to open the **Policy Edit** page.



Policy Status and Policy Is Local has not been fully implemented. Therefore, all policies will be global (meaning it cannot be limited to a Promotion Group) until this feature becomes available in a future release.

Enter in a **Policy Name**.

Enter the **Status** of the policy.

Select "Yes" or "No" to set the Policy **Is Local**.

- Policy Is Local is No - this is the default behavior. This means that this Policy is not part of a Promotion Group and is available for all Promotions.
- Policy Is Local is Yes - this means this Policy is part of a Promotion Group and is applicable only for that Promotion Group

Select an existing **Policy Expression** from the drop-down menu.

Select from the **Groups** list to place the Policy under.

Click **OK** when done.

## Asset Management

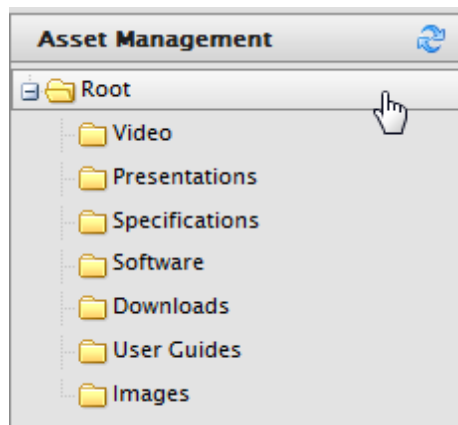
The Asset Management system allows for assets including images, MP3s, PDFs, software packages and other downloadable files to be centrally stored, displayed on either the front-end site or the Commerce Manager site and ultimately to be shared or purchased.

Please refer also to the *File Management* section in this documentation to find out more about file management in EPiServer Commerce.

## Browsing, Editing, and Deleting Folders and Assets

The Asset List page categorizes and manages downloadable Asset files. The default list of Asset folders are: **Video**, **Presentations**, **Specifications**, **Software**, **Downloads**, **User Guides**, and **Images**. These folder names can be changed.

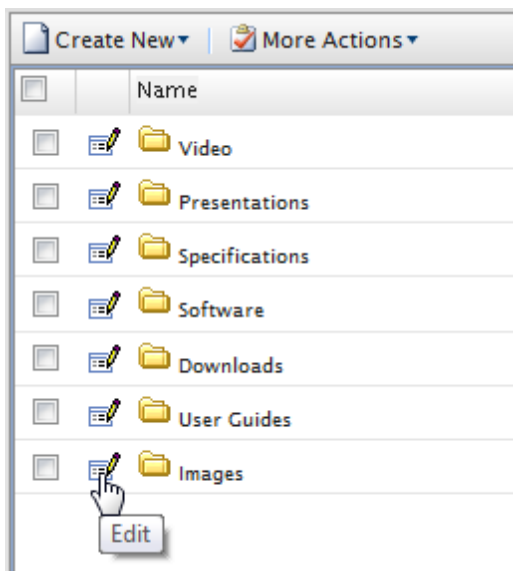
To access the Asset List, click on **Asset Management > Root** or any other folder below Root.



The **Asset List** shows folders and assets. The **Asset List** shows the total **Size** of the Assets and the **Created** date.

EPiServer Asset List			
Create New ▾   More Actions ▾			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Size	Created
<input type="checkbox"/>	Video		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Presentations		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Specifications		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Software		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Downloads		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	User Guides		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Images		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM

Folder and Asset names can be edited by clicking on the **Edit** icon next to the **Name**.



This brings you to the **Folder Item** page, allowing you to edit the **Name**.

 A screenshot of the 'Folder Item' page. The header shows 'EPiServer Commerce' and 'Folder Item'. Below the header, there is a tab labeled 'Folder Item'. Underneath the tab, there is a 'Name' label followed by a text input field containing the text 'Specifications'. At the bottom of the page, there are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

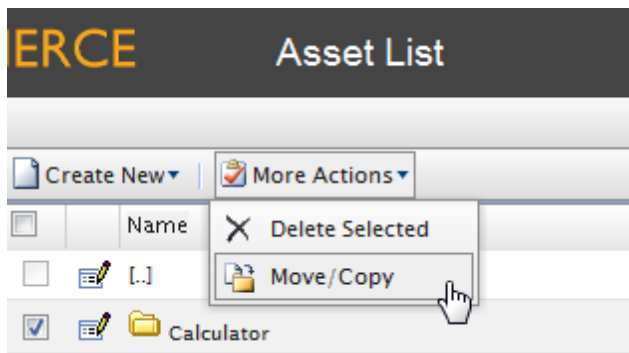
If you are editing an Asset such as an image, the **File Item** page appears, allowing you to edit the name as well.

 A screenshot of the 'File Item' page. The header shows 'EPiServer Commerce' and 'File Item'. Below the header, there is a tab labeled 'File Item'. Underneath the tab, there is a red label 'ImageFolderElement'. Below that, there is a 'Name:' label followed by a text input field containing the text 'calculator.png'. At the bottom of the page, there are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

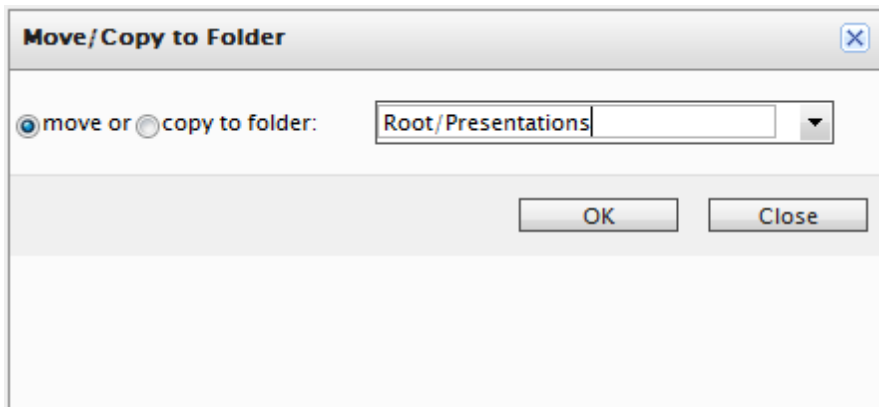
### Copying/Moving and Deleting Folders and Assets

Users can also copy/move and delete Folders and Assets.

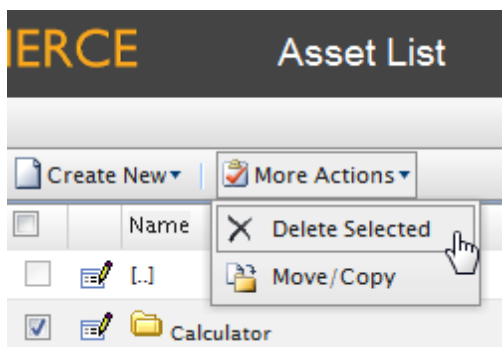
To copy or move an Asset or Folder to another location, place a check mark in the box next to the Folder or Asset name and then click on **More Actions > Move/Copy**.



The **Move/Copy to Folder** pop-up appears. You can select to "move" or "copy to folder." From the drop-down menu, select the destination. Click on **OK** to confirm.



To delete a Folder or Asset, place a check mark in the box and click on **More Actions > Delete Selected**.

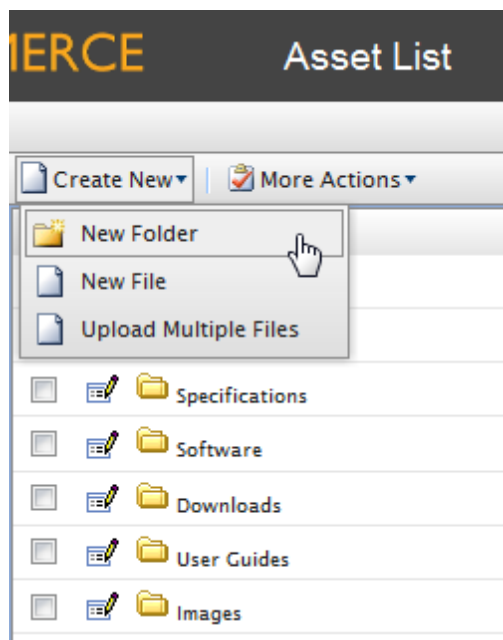


## Creating Folders and Uploading Files (Assets)

Users can create their own Folders and upload files.

### Creating Folders

To create a new Folder, go to the **Asset List** by clicking **Asset Management > Root** (or any Folder underneath Root). Then click on **Create New > New Folder**.



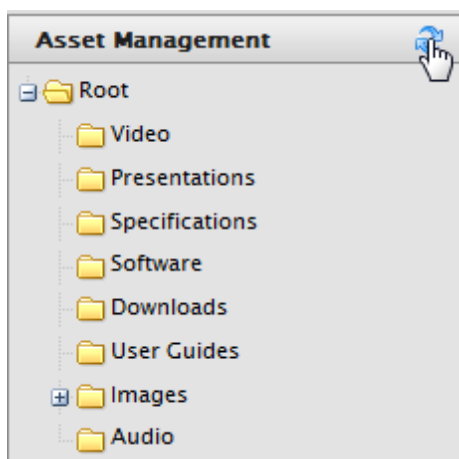
Enter in a name for the Folder and click **Create**.

The Folder will be created in whichever folder you are currently in. In this example, the Folder "Audio" was created underneath **Root**.

	Name	Size	Created
<input type="checkbox"/>	Video		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Presentations		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Specifications		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Software		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Downloads		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	User Guides		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Images		5/11/2010 3:34:57 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Audio		Today, 3:15 PM

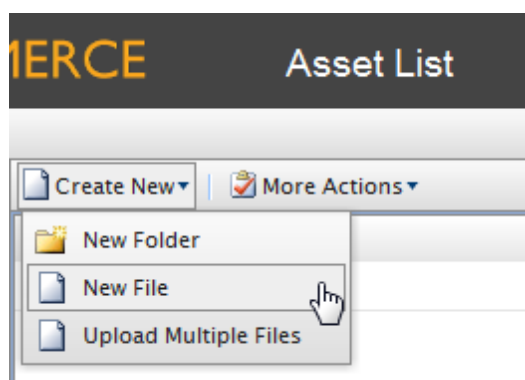
To see the Folder in the left navigation frame, click on the **Refresh** icon and the new Folder "Audio" will appear. You can create additional subfolders underneath Audio (or any other existing Folder).



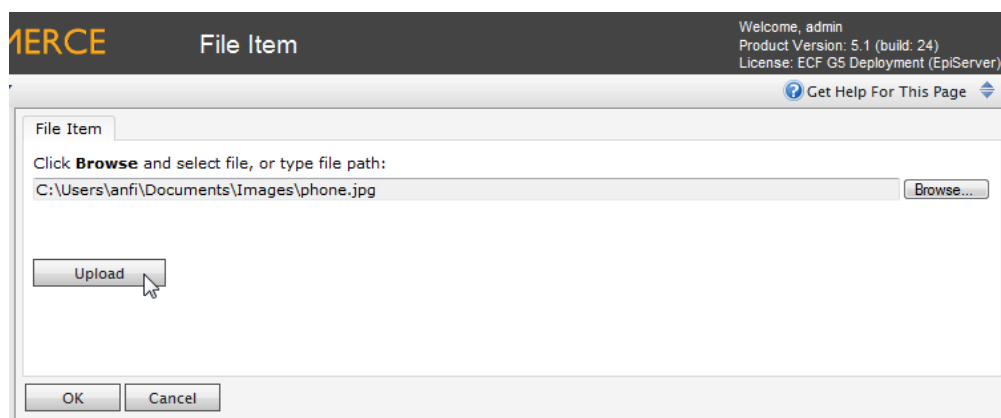


### Uploading Individual Files

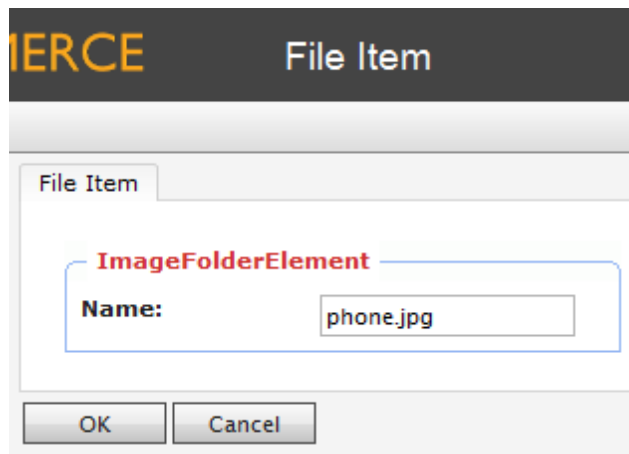
To upload a single File, navigate to the Folder you want to upload the File to and then click on **Create New > New File**.



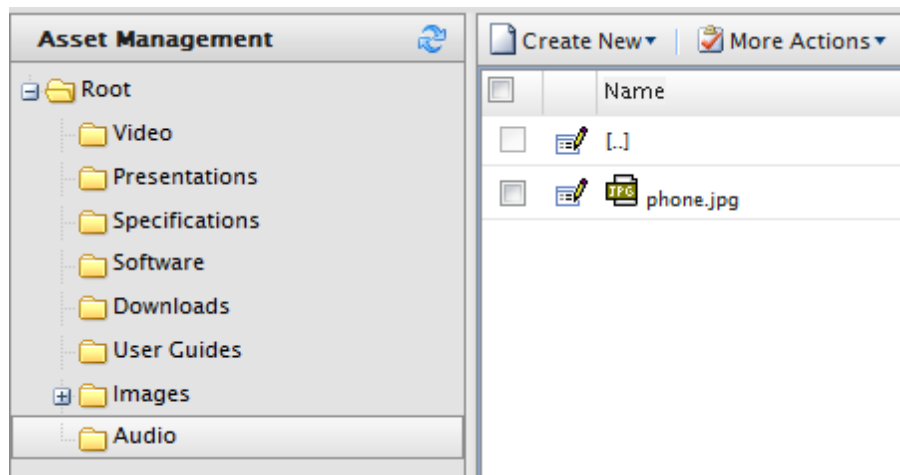
Click on **Browse** or enter in the file path into the field. Once done, click on **Upload**.



A progress bar appears below. Once the upload is complete, the **FolderElement** form appears, allowing you to edit the name of the File, if you wish. Once done, click **OK**.

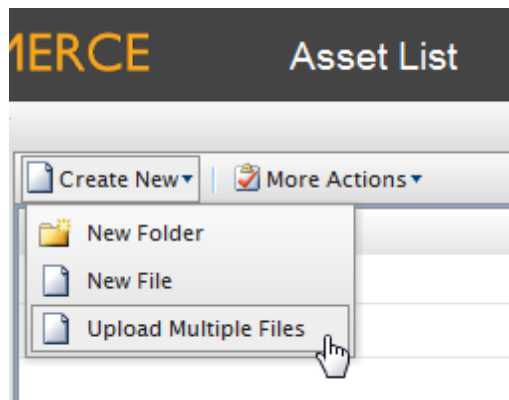


The File is now visible on the **Asset List** of the destination folder.

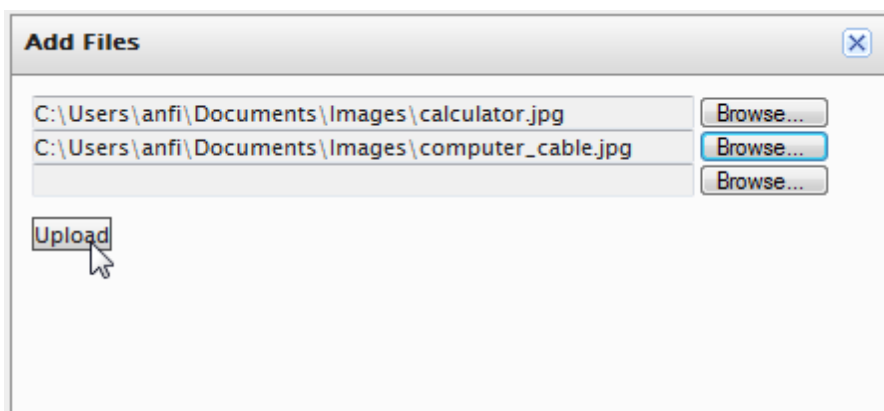


### Uploading Multiple Files at One Time

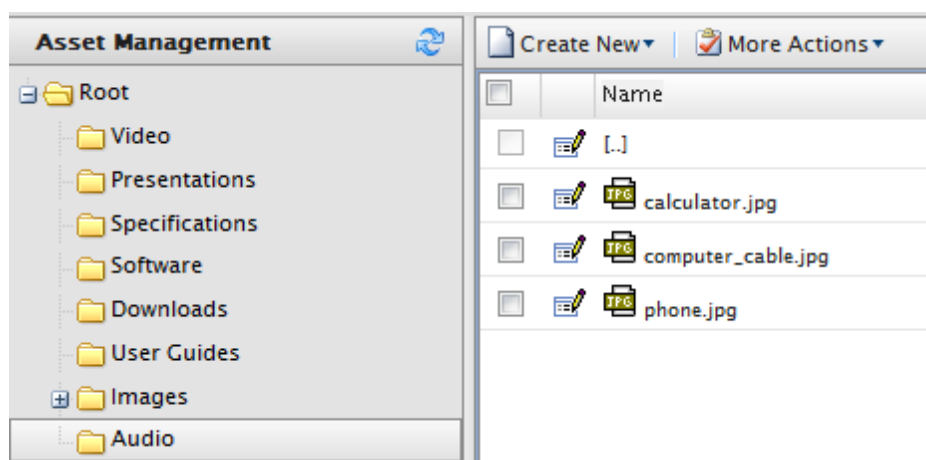
To upload multiple Files to a Folder, click on **Create New > Upload Multiple Files**.



The **Add Files** pop-up window appears. Click on **Browse** to add Files. An additional field will appear below, allowing you to add more. You can upload up to five Files at one time. Once done adding Files, click **Upload**.



A progress bar window will pop-up, showing you the progress of the uploads. Once complete, the Files will appear in the **Asset List**.



## Reporting

Various reports are included out-of-the-box to help management and other personnel to make informed decisions. The default reports include:

- **Sales Report** - this report provides an overview of a site's sales performance over a period of time
- **Shipping Report** - this report provides the shipping method, number of orders and total shipping cost over a period of time
- **Best Sellers Report** this report is used to determine which products sold the most in terms of quantity and total revenue over a period of time
- **Low Stock Report** - this report is used to determine which products are running low in inventory. If a product's inventory is less than its reorder minimum quantity, it will be included in this report.

The display of these reports can be generated by Start and End date/time and filtered by Day/Month/Year. In addition, they can be exported to Excel or PDF format, or printed.

## SQL Reporting Services

Since the Commerce Manager utilizes SQL databases, custom reports can be created using **Microsoft SQL Server Reporting Services**. Reporting Services provides a complete, server-based platform designed to support a wide variety of reporting needs enabling organizations to deliver relevant information where needed across the entire enterprise. Read through the resources below to get familiarized with Reporting Services and how you can create custom SQL reports to display data from your EPiServer Commerce site.

- *Reporting Services Features*
- *Using SQL 2008 Reporting Services and Report Builder 2.0 to Create Custom SQL Reports*
- *Download Report Builder 2.0*
- *Reporting Services and ReportViewer Controls in Visual Studio*
- *Reporting Services Components and Tools*
- *Reporting Services Configuration How-To Topics*

## Generating and Customizing Reports

By default, users can generate **Sales**, **Shipping**, **Best Sellers**, and **Low Stock Reports** about the site. Reports can be customized/filtered and exported to suit the needs of the user.

To generate a report, click on **Reporting > Sales > Sales Report/Shipping Report** or **Reporting > Products > Best Sellers Report/Low Stock Report**.

Period	Num. Of Orders	Items Ordered	Sub Total	Tax	Shipping	Discounts	Total	Invoiced
05/08/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/09/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/10/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/11/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/12/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/13/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
05/14/2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### Customizing/Filtering and Exporting Reports

Users can select the Start Date and End Date ranges and time as well as group the Report data by "Day," "Month" or "Year." Once done, click on **Apply Filter**.

An example **Sales Report** with a date range from 5/1/2010 at 6am to 6/7/2010 at 12pm **Grouped By Month** is in the screenshot below.

Period	Num. Of Orders	Items Ordered	Sub Total	Tax	Shipping	Discounts	Total	Invoiced
May, 2010	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
June, 2010	5	10	41,318.61	0.00	52.00	0.00	41,370.61	41,370.61
	5	10	41,318.61	0.00	52.00	0.00	41,370.61	41,370.61

Users can also change the zoom size of the report by clicking on the drop-down menu with "100%." Also, paging controls are available next to the zoom drop-down menu. Users can also reload the report by clicking on the **Refresh** icon.

To **Export** a report to a file format for sharing with others, click on the drop-down that says "Select a format." Select a format from the drop-down menu, such as Excel or PDF. Click on **Export** and **Open** or **Save** the file once the prompt appears.

## System Administration

This guide includes various configuration tasks such as setting up Shipping and Payment Gateways, your default language, currency, units, tax configuration, licensing, and search settings. Often, these settings are not configured by users. Most of these configuration tasks are achieved in the Commerce Manager Administration area.

## System Settings

This sections covers how to setup EPiServer Commerce with payment methods using built-in Payment Gateways and setup the default Language, Currency, and Units.

### Business Foundation

It is a new generation of Meta Data Engine that allows no-code customization of the Data Model. We enhanced our Meta Model in this new version. In the previous version you could only add fields to the existing meta objects and now you can define new objects and relations between them.

The form is fully customizable so you can define layout and specify which fields you want to display. You can also work with system fields which was previously impossible.

The current implementation of Business Foundation only supports the Customer Management and Asset Management systems. Support for other Commerce Manager systems is planned for the future.

### Customizing Existing Business Objects

Out of the box, Commerce Manager includes Business Objects that can edited and customized. Customizing existing business objects is a good starting point for end users to model business objects for their needs. However, pre-existing business objects such as "Address" and "Organization" cannot be deleted, only edited.



The current implementation of Business Foundation only supports the Customer and Asset Management subsystems. Support for other subsystems such as Order and Catalog are planned for future releases.

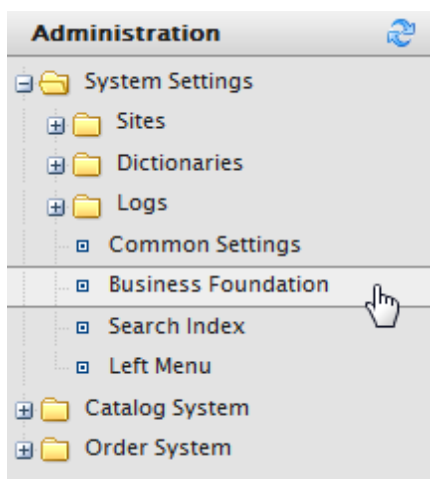
### Fields in the Business Foundation

This section covers how to add or edit different types of data fields within an existing business object.

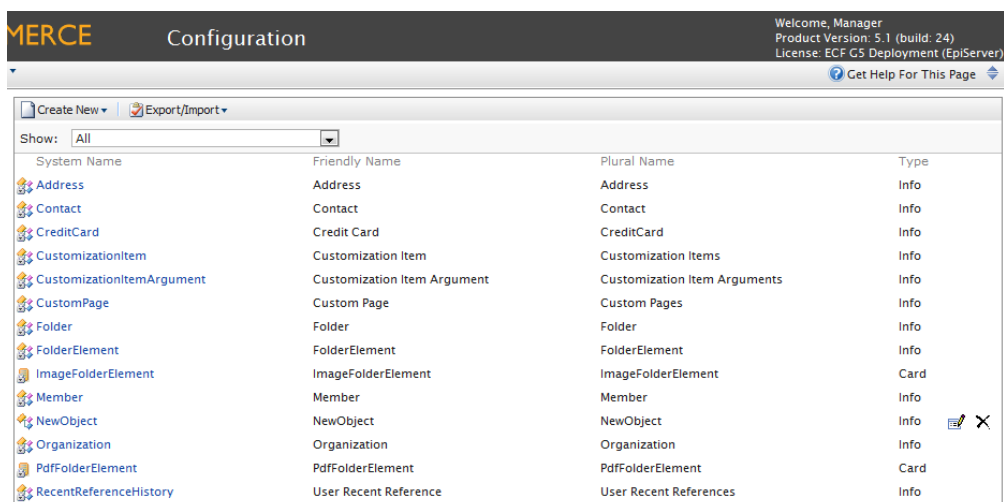
## Adding Fields to Business Objects

Existing Business Foundation Objects can be customized to have additional data entry fields. For example, you can add fields to the New Credit Card form built-in to Commerce Manager.

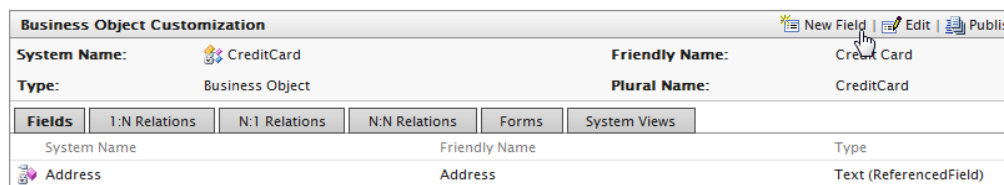
To add new fields to Business Object, click on Administration, expand System Settings, and click on Business Foundation to access the list of Business Foundation Objects.



In this example, the **CreditCard Business Object** is used.



If you want to add a new field to this CreditCard Business Object (or any other Business Object), click on **New Field**.



The **New Field** form allows you to specify the type of data field you want created for the Business Object.

1. Enter in a **Field Name**, which is the system ID or name of the field. The Field Name that is entered autopopulates the Friendly Name field.
2. Since the **Friendly Name** is autopopulated based on the Field Name, you can either keep the name the same or change it. The Friendly Name is what appears on a form (such as the Credit Card form)
3. You can optionally enter in a **Description** that appears below the data entry field to explain the field to the user.
4. Checkmark on or off to **Allow Nulls** for this field
5. You can choose to **Add Field To** an existing Form. Checkmark all that apply.
6. Enter in a **Field Type**. For further explanation of each Field Type, refer to the Reference Section on the bottom of this page. In this example, a **String** field type is used.
  - a. The **Format** drop down menu and options depend on your Field Type selection. In this example, **Text** is selected as the field format, with a **Maximum Length** of 100. **Unique** value is left unchecked.
7. Once done, click **Save**. The new field appears on the list of fields.

CreditCardId	Id	Guid
CreditCardNumber	Card Number	Text
CustomerServicePhoneNumber	Customer Service Phone Number	Text
ExpirationMonth	Expiration Month	Integer

To verify if the new field appears, check the form associated with that new field. Since this example customized the **New Credit Card** form, you will see that the new field appears.

## Editing Fields of Business Objects

Fields created by the user can be edited. To edit a field, click on the **Edit** icon.



Fields that are locked cannot be edited.

CreditCardNumber	Card Number	Text
CustomerServicePhoneNumber	Customer Service Phone Number	Text
ExpirationMonth	Expiration Month	Integer
ExpirationYear	Expiration Year	Integer



The only attributes that can be changed are Friendly Names and Descriptions. Once those changes are made, click **Save**.

Business Object:

Credit Card

Field Name:

CustomerServicePhoneNumber

Friendly Name:

Customer Service Phone Number

Description:

Phone # found on back of card

☒ Allow Nulls

Field Type:

String

Format:

Text

Maximum Length:

100

☐ Unique value

Save

Cancel

### Relations in the Business Foundation

In order to track and record relevant data, business objects must be related to other objects, whether they are "1 to many," "many to 1," "many to many." Currently, business objects only affect the customer and asset management systems.

- **1 to Many Relationship** - 1 object can be associated or related with multiple object-related data. For example, one organization can be associated with multiple contracts.
- **Many to 1 Relationship** - Multiple object-related data can be associated or related with a single object. For example, multiple contacts can be related to a single organization.
- **Many to Many Relationship** - Multiple object-related data can be associated or related with multiple objects. For example, different SKUs can be associated with one or more Warehouses for tracking and storage.



# Adding a 1 to Many Relation

Business Foundation objects allow a user to specify "1 to many" relationships. For example, if you have one organization, you can relate many types of data to that organization, such as multiple contacts, addresses, or organizational units or divisions within an organization. Within a 1:N relationship, the business object you selected will be "1."

In the example below, 1 = Organization and N = related objects such as Address, Contact, CreditCard, etc.

To add a 1 to many relationship to a business object, you will need to create a new business object or use an existing one. On the Business Object Customization page, click on **1:N Relations**.

Business Object Customization		
System Name: CreditCard		Friendly Name: Credit Card
Type: Business Object		Plural Name: CreditCard
Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations
System Name	Friendly Name	Type
Address	Address	Text (ReferencedField)
AddressId	Address	Reference
CardType	Type	CreditCardType
Contact	Contact	Text (ReferencedField)
ContactId	Contact	Reference
Created	Created	DateTime

Click on **New Relation "one to many"** to create a new relation.

Business Object Customization		
System Name: Organization		Friendly Name: Organization
Type: Business Object		Plural Name: Organization
Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations
Name	Primary Object	Related Object
Address	Organization	Address
Contact	Organization	Contact
CreditCard	Organization	Credit Card
Organization	Organization	Organization

Under **General Info**, the Primary Object Organization is automatically set to Organization.

1. Select a **Related Object** to relate an the Organization object in the dropdown.
2. The Object section below General Info will have a different title based on Related Object you selected. For example, if you selected "Address," the title would be "Object 'Address'".
3. Enter in a **Field Name** and **Friendly Name**. They are autopopulated already using the system name of the business object.  
Both names must be unique and not be the same as an existing field. The **Field Name** cannot contain spaces or special characters, only letters, numbers, and underscores.
4. Checkmark the box **Allow Nulls** if you do not want this to be a required field the user fill in while editing a form. Otherwise, uncheck the box to make it a required field.
5. Under **Add Field To**, checkmark the Forms you want the field to render in, such as the Edit Form (to enter and submit information) or View Form (read information only).

6. Under the Object "Name of Primary Object" section, select a Display region in the dropdown box. Additional options such as **Display Text** and **Display Order** will appear based on your dropdown menu selection.
7. Once all the relevant information is entered, click on **Save**.

**Relation 1:N**

**General Info**

**Primary Object:** Organization

**Related Object:** Address

**Object "Address"**

**Field Name:** Organization

**Friendly Name:** Organization

☒ Allow Nulls

**Add Field To:**

☒ Edit Form

☒ View Form

☒ Short Info Form

**Object "Organization"**

**Display Region:** [ Not Set ]



The Related Object will have the Primary Object appear under the opposite relationship (N:1) on its configuration form. For instance, if organization is the Primary Object and the Related Object is Address, the relationship is automatically generated under the **N:1** tab in **Address**.

**Configuration**

Welcome, admin  
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 243)  
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EPiServer)

[Get Help For This Page](#)

**Business Object Customization**

**System Name:** Address **Friendly Name:** Address **Plural Name:** Address

**Type:** Business Object

**Fields** **1:N Relations** **N:1 Relations** **N:N Relations** **Forms** **System Views**

[New Field](#) [Edit](#) [Publish](#) [Back To List](#)

[New Relation "one to many"](#)

Name	Primary Object	Related Object
Contact	Address	<a href="#">Contact</a>
Contact	Address	<a href="#">Contact</a>
CreditCard	Address	<a href="#">Credit Card</a>

# Adding a Many to 1 Relation

Users can also relate business objects via a "Many to 1" relationship. For example, you can relate multiple contacts to a single organization or unit.

In the example below, N = Organization and 1 = related objects such as ParentId, PrimaryContactId etc.

To create **Many to 1 relationships**, click on a business object and click on the **N:1 Relations** tab.

Business Object Customization		
System Name:	Organization	Friendly Name: Organization
Type:	Business Object	Plural Name: Organization
Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations
System Name	Friendly Name	Type
BusinessCategory	Business Category	BusinessCategory
Created	Created	DateTime
CreatorId	Creator	Guid

Click on **New Relation "Many to one"** to create a new relationship.

Business Object Customization			
System Name:	Organization	Friendly Name:	Organization
Type:	Business Object	Plural Name:	Organization
Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	Forms
System Name	Name	Primary Object	Related Object
ParentId	Parent	Organization	Organization
PrimaryContactId	Primary Contact	Contact	Organization

The Relation N:1 form is very similar to the Relation 1:N form, except you can select the Primary Object from the dropdown, whereas the Related Object defaults to the name of the Business Object.

Under **General Info**, the Primary Object Organization is automatically set to Organization.

1. Select a **Primary Object** to relate an the Organization object in the dropdown. The Object section below General Info will have a different title based on the Related Object name.
2. Enter in a Field Name and Friendly Name. They are autopopulated already using the system name of the business object.  
Both names must be unique and not be the same as an existing field. The **Field Name** cannot contain spaces or special characters, only letters, numbers, and underscores.
3. Checkmark the box **Allow Nulls** if you do not want this to be a required field the user fill in while editing a form. Otherwise, uncheck the box to make it a required field.
4. Under **Add Field To**, checkmark the Forms you want the field to render in, such as the Edit Form (to enter and submit information) or View Form (read information only).
5. Under the Object "Name of Primary Object" section, select a Display region in the dropdown box. Additional options such as **Display Text** and **Display Order** will appear based on your dropdown menu selection.
6. Once all the relevant information is entered, click on **Save**.

**Relation N:1**

**General Info**  
**Primary Object:** Address  
**Related Object:** Organization

**Object "Organization"**  
**Field Name:** Address  
**Friendly Name:** Address  
☒ Allow Nulls  
**Add Field To:**  
☒ Edit Form  
☒ View Form  
☒ Short Info Form  
☒ System View (All organizations)

**Object "Address"**  
**Display Region:** [ Not Set ]



Like an 1:N relationship, if you create a N:1 relationship with a Primary and Related Object, a 1:N relationship is automatically generated for the Primary Object under the **1:N** tab.

# Adding a Many to Many Relation

Users can also create Many to Many relationships with business objects. For example, many to many relationships help to track different SKUs and their inventory levels with different warehouse locations. Another example is multiple contacts a part of multiple organizations. A Many to Many relationship between two objects is also referred to as a **Bridge**.

In the example both Organization and Organization\_Contact = N.

To create a **Many to Many relationship**, click on a business object and then click on the **N:N Relations** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Business Object Customization' interface for the 'Organization' business object. The 'N:N Relations' tab is active, and the 'New Relation' button is highlighted. The interface includes fields for System Name, Friendly Name, Type, and Plural Name, all set to 'Organization'. A table lists various fields like BusinessCategory, Created, CreatorId, Description, and Modified, each with a corresponding Friendly Name and Type.

Click on **New Relation "many to many"** to create a new N:N relationship.

This screenshot is similar to the previous one, but it shows the 'New Relation' button being clicked. The button is labeled 'New Relation "many to many"'. The interface remains the same, with the 'N:N Relations' tab selected.

The Relation N:N is much different compared to the Relation 1:N/N:1 forms.

1. The **Current Object** defaults to the name of the Business Object you are editing
2. Select a **Related Object** from the dropdown menu
3. The **Relation Name** is autopopulated by (Current Object Name\_Related Object Name). Change this name if you wish, but you cannot have spaces or special characters, only letters, numbers, and underscores.
4. Enter in a **Friendly Name**, which can have special characters and spaces. Make sure both Relation and Friendly Names are unique do not already exist.
5. Under Current Object, select a **Display Region** where the field will appear.
6. Under Related Object, select a **Display Region** where the field will appear.

Once all the relevant information is entered, click on **Save**.

**Relation N:N**

**General Info**

**Current Object:** SKUs

**Related Object:**

**Relation Name:**

**Friendly Name:**

**Current Object (SKUs)**

**Display Region:**

**Display Text:**

**Display Order:**

**Related Object (SKU\_Warehouse)**

**Display Region:**

**Display Text:**

**Display Order:**



A many to many relationship is automatically generated for the related object when you click on its N:N tab under its configuration form.

#### Forms in the Business Foundation

Forms dictate how fields are presented to the user when view and editing information. This section shows you can customize forms for viewing and editing by end users.

# Customizing an Existing Form

Every field is associated with a Form. Each Business Object is associated with one or more types of forms. The common types of forms found in Commerce Manager are the **Edit Forms**, **Short Info Forms**, and **View Forms**. For example, the New Credit Card form looks like this:

By editing the form, you can change the layout, add new fields and sections, and more.

To edit an existing form, click on a **Business Object** and click on the **Forms** tab to see the list of associated forms.

Click on the **Edit** icon next to the form you want to make changes to. The form customization window pops up.

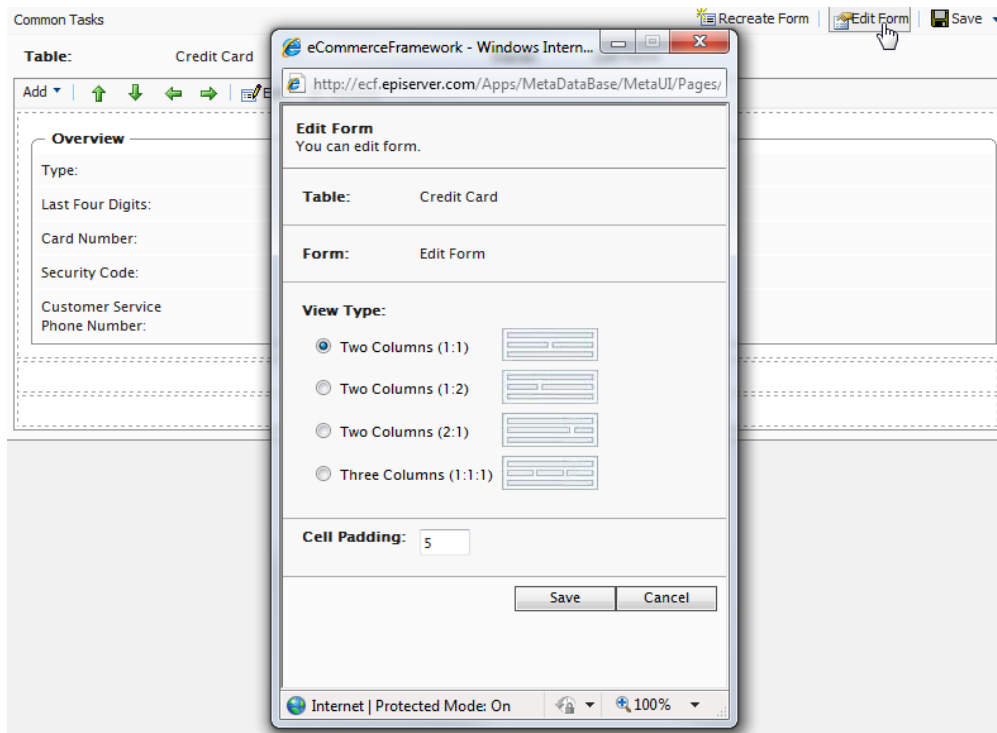
There are various functions available to edit and customize a form.

## Editing the Layout of a Form

You can change the layout and the fields that appear on the form.

1. Click on **Edit Form**.
  - a. Select a **View Type** (or the layout of the form). You have a choice between a Two Column (1:1, 1:2, 2:1), or Three Column (1:1:1) layout.
  - b. Enter in a pixel value for the **Cell Padding**, or spaces between each cell.
2. Click **Save** to confirm your changes.

This example uses a Two Column (1:1) layout.

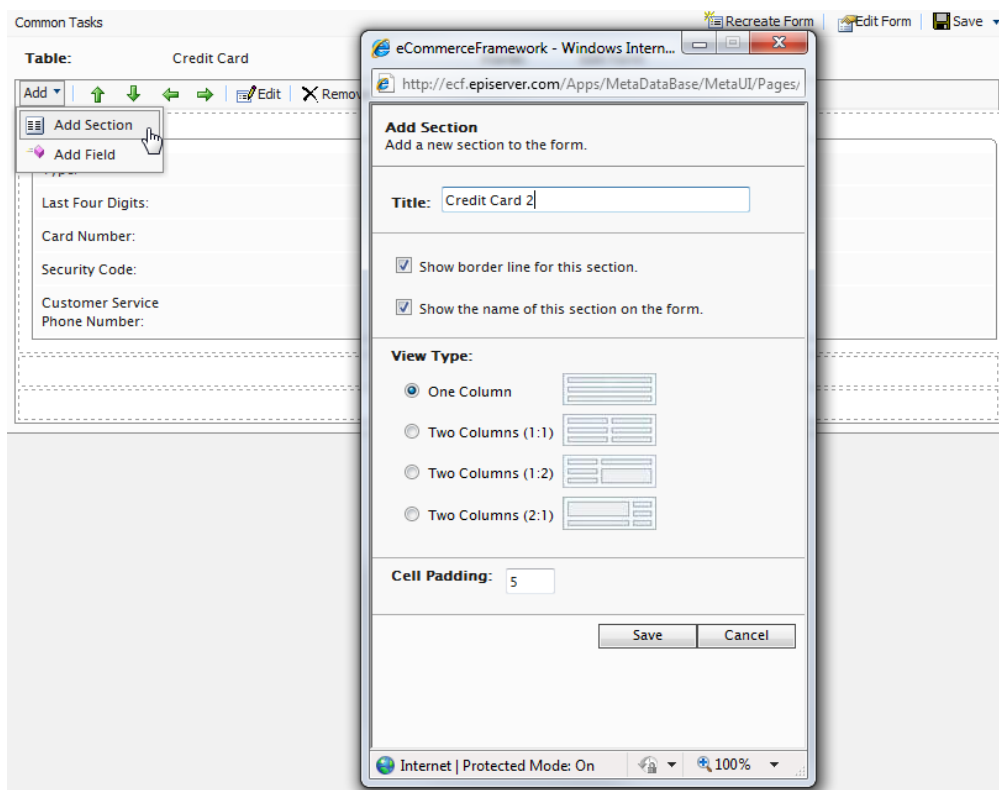


## Adding Sections and Fields

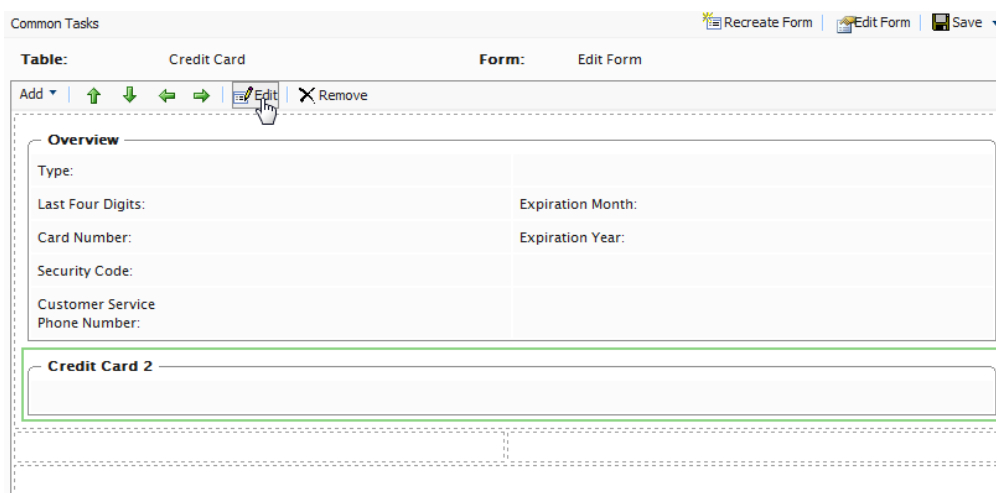
Once your layout is set, you can add additional sections and/or additional fields.

1. Click on **Add --> Add Section** to add a new section. Adding sections allows you to separate and divide groups of fields on a form with their own header and border.
2. Enter in a **Title** for the section.
3. Checkmark the box next to "Show border line for this section" if you want to show the border around section. Otherwise, uncheck the box to hide the border.
4. Checkmark "Show the name of this section on the form" if you want to show the title of the section on the form. Otherwise, uncheck the box to hide the title.
5. Select a **View Type** or layout of the section: One Column, Two Columns (1:1), Two Columns (1:2), Two Columns (2:1)
6. Enter a numeric pixel value for **Cell Padding** or amount of space between each cell in the section.
7. Click **Save** to save your changes.





You can edit a section by clicking on a section and click on **Edit**.

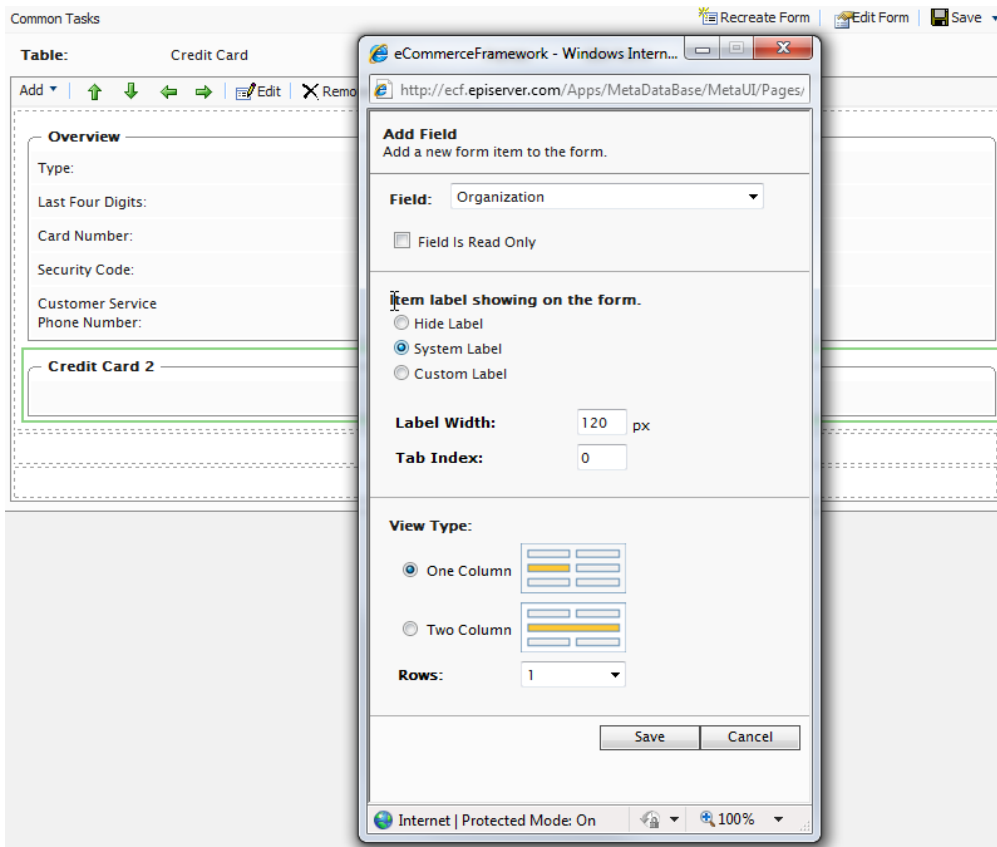


Within each section are fields. You can add new fields to a specific section by highlighting the section and then by clicking **Add --> Edit**.

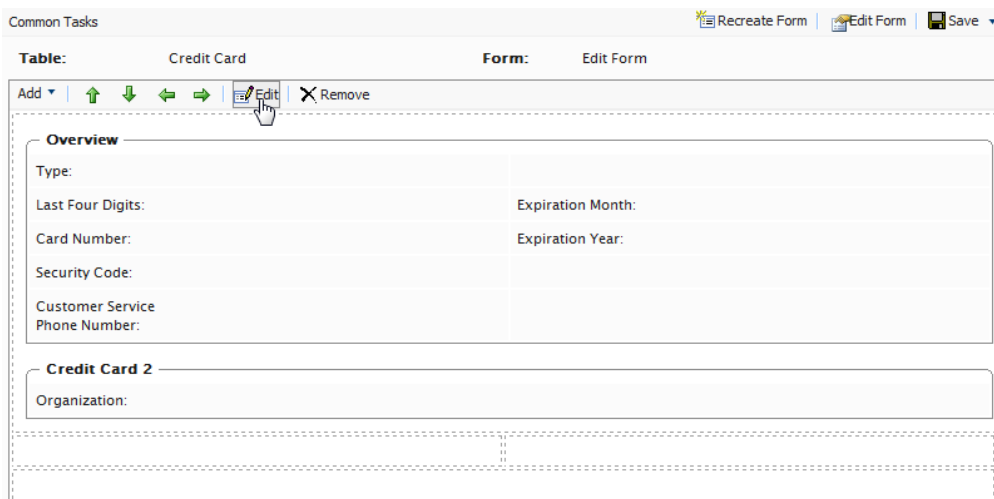
Select an existing associated field in the dropdown menu.

a. Checkmark the "Field is Read Only" box if you want the field to be unavailable for edit. When you see the rendered form, the field will be grayed out.

1. Select the "Item label showing on the form."
2.
  - **Hide Label:** No label appears next to the text box
  - **System Label:** Shows the system name next text box
  - **Custom Label:** Enter in a custom label
3. Enter in a **Label Width** numerical value. Default is 120px.
4. **Tab Index:** enter an index for the tab.
5. Select a **View Type**, either a One Column or Two Column. In the dropdown, enter in the number of text box rows, up to 3.
6. Click **Save** to add the field to the section.



To edit a field, click and highlight the field and click on **Edit** to change your previous settings.



You can re-arrange fields on a form but using the arrow controls on menu bar. Highlight the field and then click on the directional arrow you want the field to move to.

Common Tasks Recreate Form Edit Form Save

**Table:** Credit Card **Form:** Edit Form

Add ↑ ↓ ← → Edit Remove

**Overview**

Type:	
Last Four Digits:	Expiration Month:
Card Number:	Expiration Year:
Security Code:	
Customer Service Phone Number:	

**Credit Card 2**

Organization:

In this example, the "Security Code" field is moved to the right where the "Customer Service Phone Number" field is placed by clicking on the right directional arrow. Fields are moved from cell to cell within a section.

Common Tasks Recreate Form Edit Form Save

**Table:** Credit Card **Form:** Edit Form

Add ↑ ↓ ← → Edit Remove

**Overview**

Type:	
Last Four Digits:	Expiration Month:
Card Number:	Expiration Year:
	Security Code:
Customer Service Phone Number:	

**Credit Card 2**

Organization:

## Deleting Sections and Fields

To delete a section or field, highlight either one and click on **Remove**. A popup will appear. Click **OK** to confirm deletion. Otherwise, click **Cancel**.

Common Tasks Recreate Form Edit Form Save

**Table:** Credit Card **Form:** Edit Form

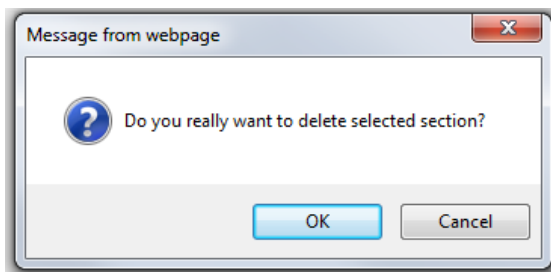
Add ↑ ↓ ← → Edit Remove

**Overview**

Type:	
Last Four Digits:	Expiration Month:
Card Number:	Expiration Year:
Security Code:	
Customer Service Phone Number:	

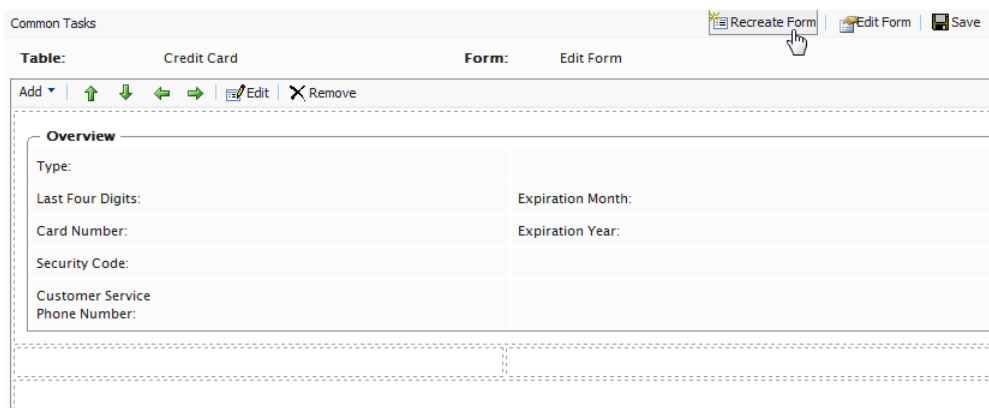
**Credit Card 2**

Organization:

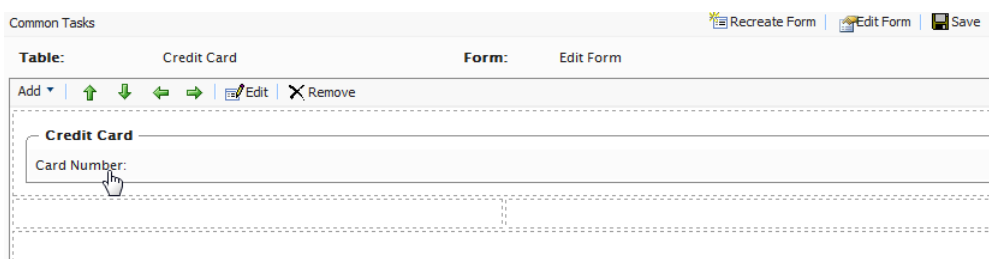


## Recreating a Form

Recreating a form allows a user to create a form from scratch with a single field rather than customize a form with all fields already in place. Click on **Recreate Form** on the upper right corner of the window.



A popup will appear. Click on **OK** to recreate the form. Otherwise, click **Cancel**. Once you confirm, the fields will clear from the form except for the required field.



## Saving a Customized Form

Once you are done with your changes, click on **Save** on the upper right corner of the window. To save and close the window at the same time, click the down-arrow next on the Save button and on the drop-down click **Save and close**.

Common Tasks

Recreate Form Edit Form Save

Table: Credit Card Form: Edit Form

Add ↑ ↓ ← → Edit Remove

**Overview**

Type:		Expiration Month:	
Last Four Digits:		Expiration Year:	
Card Number:			
Security Code:			
Customer Service Phone Number:			

Save Save and close

Once those changes are saved, the form you edited will render based on your configuration. For example, here is the customized Credit Card edit form an end user sees.

**New Credit Card**

**Overview**

Type: Visa

Last Four Digits:

Card Number:

Customer Service Phone Number:

Expiration Month: [ No value ]

Expiration Year: [ No value ]

Security Code:

**Credit Card 2**

Organization: {Customer:CreditCard\_mf\_Organization\_Description}

### Creating a New Business Object

Creating new business objects allows users to extend customer and asset forms for tracking and relating different types of data. Business Objects could be related in a "one to many," "many to one," or "many to many" relationship.

This section covers an example of how to create and publish a Contract business object using a "many to one" relationship.

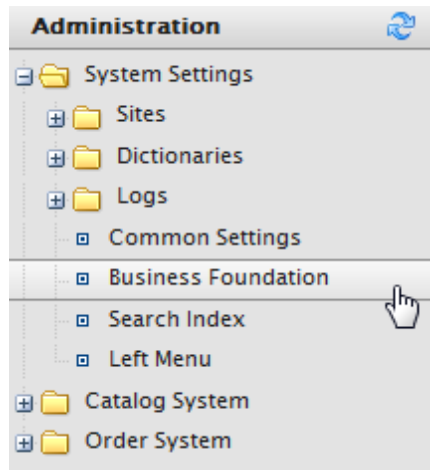
### Scenario - Creating and Publishing a Contract Business Object

This is a basic step-by-step guide on how to create and publish a simple Contract Business Object for relating multiple contracts to a single organization.

# Creating a New Contract Object

New Business Objects can be created to suits a multitude of business purposes. This example shows you how to create a Contract business object.

To add new fields to Business Object, click on **Administration**, expand **System Settings**, and click on **Business Foundation** to access the **Business Foundation Configuration** page.



Click on **Create New** and on the dropdown click on **New Business Object**. The **New Business Object** form page appears. Enter all relevant information.

## Base Info

- **System Name:** name of the Business Object (once you input a name, the Friendly Name and Plural Name fields are autopopulated)
- **Friendly Name:** alternative to the System Name
- **Plural Name:** plural version of the system/friendly name (e.g. inventories)
- **Supports Extensions:** this allows you to extend an existing meta class with extra properties. For example, you can have a download class and you can extend it with "imagedownload" which contains width and height as extra parameters.

## Field Info

- **System Name:** enter in a system name
- **Friendly Name:** enter in a friendly, front-end name
- **Maximum Length:** maximum number of characters allowed in this field

Click **Save** to save changes.

Business Object Customization			<a href="#">New Field</a>   <a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Publish</a>   <a href="#">Back To List</a>		
<b>System Name:</b>		Contract		<b>Friendly Name:</b> Contract Name	
<b>Type:</b>		Business Object (Public)		<b>Plural Name:</b> Contract	
<b>Fields</b>	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views
System Name		Friendly Name		Type	
Contract		Contract Name		Text	
ContractId		Id		Guid	

Add fields to the Contract business object as needed. Refer to **Adding New Fields to Business Object** section for instructions on how to add new fields to a business object.

Click **Save** to save changes.



# Connecting a Contract to an Organization Using a "Many to One" Relationship

The next step is to create a relationship between this contract with an organization. In this example, the "Many to one" relationship will be used because multiple contracts can be tied to a single organization.

1. To add a relationship, click on the N:1 tab and click **New Relation "Many to one"**.

**MERCE Configuration** Welcome, Manager  
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)  
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EpiServer)

**Business Object Customization** New Field | Edit | Publish | Back To List

**System Name:** Contract **Friendly Name:** Contract Name  
**Type:** Business Object (Public) **Plural Name:** Contract

**Fields** 1:N Relations **N:1 Relations** N:N Relations Forms System Views

System Name	Friendly Name	Type
Contract	Contract Name	Text
ContractId	Id	Guid

2. On the **Relation N:1** form, select the primary object as "Organization." The Related Object will be the Contract object (the friendly name appears as opposed to the system name)
3. Enter in a **Field Name**, such as "Organization."
4. Enter in a **Friendly Name** that will render next to the field in a user view.  
Checkmark the box next to Allow Nulls if you want the user to be able to submit the form without having to enter any data into the field. Otherwise, an unchecking this box means that this becomes a required field that the user must enter data in.
5. Checkmark the boxes you want the field to render in, such as the Edit Form, View Form, and Short Info Form.



To learn more about forms, go to *Customizing an Existing Form*.

6. Lastly, set the Display Region using the dropdown menu. The display region determines which section the field will appear within the business object--in this case, the Organization object. **Note:** Depending on your selection, you may have additional options below the dropdown menu, such as **Display Text** and **Display Order**. An example is below.
7. Click **Save** to save your changes and go back to the Business Object Customization form.

**Relation N:1**

**General Info**

**Primary Object:** Organization

**Related Object:** Contract Name

---

**Object "Contract Name"**

**Field Name:** Organization

**Friendly Name:** Organization

☒ Allow Nulls

**Add Field To:**

- ☒ Edit Form
- ☒ View Form
- ☒ Short Info Form
- ☒ System View (General View)

---

**Object "Organization"**

**Display Region:** Information

**Display Text:** Contract

**Display Order:** 10000

So now that the Organization business object is tied to **Contract**, you will see that Contract now appears under the Information section or the **Organization Info** view page.

**EPiServer Commerce** Organization Info

Welcome, Manager  
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)  
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EPiServer)

[Get Help For This Page](#)

[Edit](#) [Organizations](#)

**Name:** EPiServer **Parent:**

**Information**

- Information
- Contacts
- Organizations
- Addresses
- Credit Cards
- Contract**

**Contract**

[Add Items](#) [Exclude Selected](#)

	Contract Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	



Since this example ties many contracts to a single organization, the organization business object is automatically related to the contracts object as a "1:N" relationship.

Business Object Customization			New Field	Edit	Publish	Back To List
<b>System Name:</b> Organization		<b>Friendly Name:</b> Organization				
<b>Type:</b> Business Object		<b>Plural Name:</b> Organization				
Fields	<b>1:N Relations</b>	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views	
New Relation "one to many"						
Name	Primary Object	Related Object				
Address	Organization	<a href="#">Address</a>				
Contact	Organization	<a href="#">Contact</a>				
Contract	Organization	<a href="#">Contract Name</a>				
CreditCard	Organization	<a href="#">Credit Card</a>				
Organization	Organization	<a href="#">Organization</a>				

## Publishing a Contract

Another feature of Business Foundation is the ability to publish objects within the left navigation frame as a node. You can essentially add more functionality to a specific system without modifying code.

Now that the Contract object has been created and related to another object, you can publish it as a node.

To publish a business object, click on **Publish** under the **Business Object Customization** form.

The screenshot shows the 'Business Object Customization' form for the 'Contract' object. The form includes fields for System Name, Friendly Name, Type, and Plural Name. Below these are tabs for Fields, 1:N Relations, N:1 Relations, N:N Relations, Forms, and System Views. The 'Fields' tab is active, showing a table of fields: System Name, Friendly Name, Type, Contract, Contract Name, Text, ContractId, Id, Guid, Organization, Organization, Text (ReferencedField), and OrganizationId, Organization, Reference. The 'Publish' button is highlighted in the top right corner of the form.

A new window will pop up for publication settings.

The screenshot shows a publication settings dialog box. On the left is a navigation tree with the following items and counts: Dashboard (0), Customer Management (40), Catalog Management (60), Order Management (80), Marketing (100), Asset Management (120), Reporting (130), and Administration (200). On the right are configuration fields: Display Region (set to '< nothing is selected >'), Display Text (set to 'Contract'), Display Order (set to '10000'), Client Script (set to 'CSManagementClient.ChangeBafView('Contract', 'Lis'), Access Permissions (set to 'businessfoundation.contract.list.permission'), and Item Icon (with a 'Browse...' button). At the bottom are 'Publish' and 'Close' buttons.

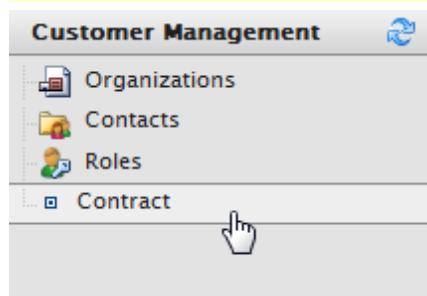
1. Select a **Display Region** from the navigation tree on the left. Click on the node you want Contract to be placed under. For example, Contract will be placed on the root level of Customer Management.
2. The **Display Text** defaults to the system name of the Business Object. You can choose to keep the name or change it.
3. The **Display Order** defaults to 10000. You can keep it at that number or change the value to determine the position of the node.
4. The **Client Script** is autopopulated and can be left as is for most users. However, you can change Client Script if necessary.

5. **Access Permissions** is autopopulated and can also be left as is. If you want to change Access Permissions, refer to the *Permissions* section.
6. An Item Icon can be uploaded to represent the node. Click **Browse** to upload an icon.
7. Once all relevant information is entered, click on **Publish**.

To verify if the object was published, go to the **Display Region** where you specified the object to be published to. Click on the refresh icon on the left navigation frame if you at first do not see the new node.

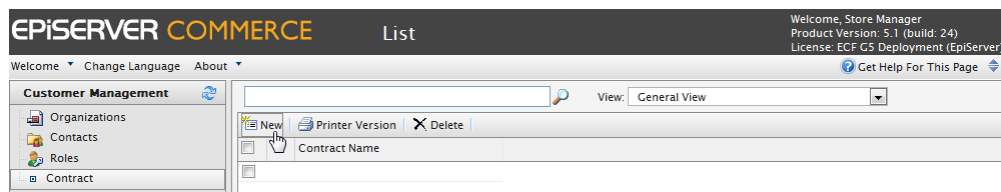


Always refresh your browser after publishing a business object.



## Adding Contracts to an Organization

Now that the contract business object has been published, you can add multiple contracts to a single organization using a form. Click on the Contract node to bring up the list of contracts. Click on **New** to add a new contract.



Enter in a **Contract Name** (friendly name of the contract object) and select an **Organization** from the drop-down menu to associate the contract with. This functionality is in harmony with the "N:1" relationship between contract and organization.

**Contract Name**

Contract Name: HP Servers

Organization: EpiServer

OK Cancel

Click **OK** to save the contract. The View Form appears.



To learn how to edit forms, go to the *Customizing and Existing Form* section.

**MERCE** View Welcome, Store Manager  
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)  
License: ECF GS Deployment (EPiServer)

[Get Help For This Page](#)

[Edit](#) [Delete](#) [Back to list](#)

**Contract Name:** HP Servers  
**Organization:** EPiServer

**Information**  
Details

**Details**  
**Contract Name:** HP Servers  
**Organization:** EPiServer

[Edit](#) [Cancel](#)

You can make further edits to the details of the Contract by clicking **Edit** or delete the entry. Otherwise, click on **Back to list** to go back to the list of contracts.

By going to the **Organization Info** page for the particular organization you assigned multiple contracts to, you will see the list contracts you assigned.



You may need to make sure the **Display Region** is set for the related object (i.e. organization) or else you will not see the business object in the **Edit Form**.

**MERCE** Organization Info Welcome, Store Manager  
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)  
License: ECF GS Deployment (EPiServer)

[Get Help For This Page](#)

[Edit](#) [Organizations](#)

**Name:** EPiServer **Parent:**

**Information**  
Information  
Contacts  
Organizations  
Addresses  
Credit Cards  
Contract

**Contract**  
[Add Items](#) [Exclude Selected](#)

Contract Name
HP Servers

### Publishing Business Objects

A user-created business object can be published as a node anywhere in the left navigation frame to extend functionality under that particular subsystem.



You must refresh your browser after a business object has been published.

### Permissions

When publishing Business Objects to place on a node on the **left Navigation Frame**, you can set permissions before publishing a Business Object.

Click on **Publish** on the **Business Object Customization** page.

WELCOME, Store Manager  
Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24)  
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EpiServer)

Get Help For This Page

### Business Object Customization

New Field | Edit | Publish | Back To List

**System Name:** Contract **Friendly Name:** Contract Name

**Type:** Business Object (Public) **Plural Name:** Contract

Fields	1:N Relations	N:1 Relations	N:N Relations	Forms	System Views
System Name		Friendly Name		Type	
Contract		Contract Name		Text	
ContractId		Id		Guid	
Organization		Organization		Text (ReferencedField)	
OrganizationId		Organization		Reference	

You can set permissions by customizing **Access Permissions**. This string is auto-generated. To change, you can copy and paste string values from other objects.

Dashboard 0

Customer Management 40

Catalog Management 60

Order Management 80

Marketing 100

Asset Management 120

Reporting 130

Administration 200

**Display Region:** < nothing is selected >

**Display Text:** Contract

**Display Order:** 10000

**Client Script:** CSManagementClient.ChangeBafView('Contract', 'Lis

**Access Permissions:** businessfoundation.contract.list.permission

**Item Icon:** Browse...

Publish

Close

### Deleting Published Business Objects

Once a business object has been published, you can delete all customized business object by going to **Administration > System Settings > Business Foundation**. To remove from the Left Menu, you have to perform an additional step of going to **Administration > System Settings > Left Menu** and clicking the **Delete** icon.

The screenshot shows the EPiServer Commerce Administration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Start', 'CMS', and 'Commerce'. The 'Commerce' tab is active, showing 'Commerce Manager' and 'Settings'. The left menu is expanded, showing 'Administration' with sub-items like 'System Settings', 'Catalog System', and 'Order System'. The main content area displays a table titled 'Add' with columns 'Title' and 'Order'. The table lists various system settings and their corresponding order values.

Title	Order
Dashboard	0
Home	10
Customer Management	40
Organizations	30
Contacts	40
Roles	50
Contract	10000
Catalog Management	60
Catalog Entry Search	10
Catalog Batch Update	20
Catalogs	30
Order Management	80
Order Search	10
Purchase Orders	20
Today	10
This Week	20
This Month	30
All	40
Purchase Orders By Status	30
Carts	40

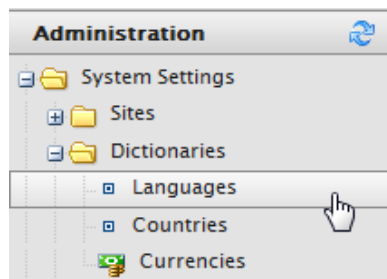
Page Size: 20 (78 items) | Page 1

## Creating Dictionary Values for Adding Languages, Countries and Currencies

This guide walks you through how to add *Languages*, *Countries*, and *Currencies* to EPiServer Commerce.

### Adding New Languages

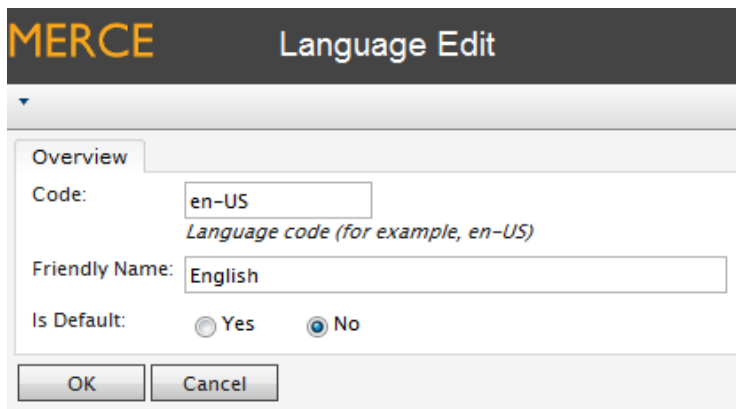
By default, you are given several **Language** options. To add a new Language, login to Commerce Manager and go to **Administration --> System Settings --> Dictionaries --> Languages**.



When you click **New Language** fill in the following:

- **Language Code** - to obtain code, go to this MSDN site: <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms533052%28VS.85%29.aspx> (you must use the codes that contain dashes "-")
- **Friendly Name** - this name is displayed in the front-end site language drop-down and various Commerce Manager admin pages.
- **Is Default** - Yes/No





**MERCE** Language Edit

Overview

Code:   
*Language code (for example, en-US)*

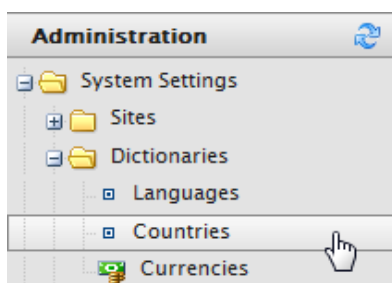
Friendly Name:

Is Default: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Click **OK** to save the language.

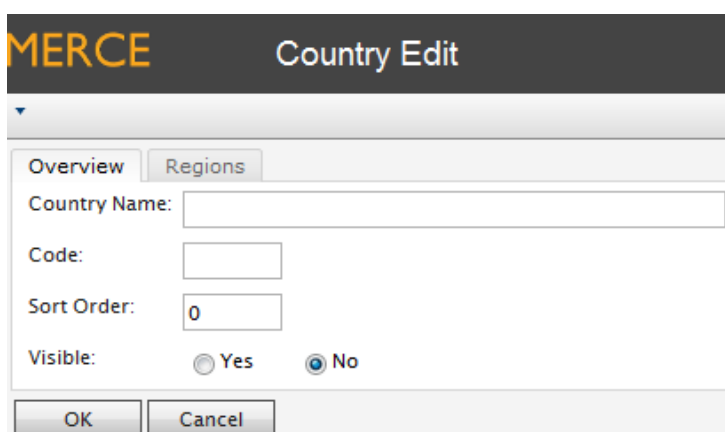
#### Adding New Countries

To add a new Country, login to Commerce Manager and go to **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Countries**.



Click on **New Country** and fill in the following displayed in the **Overview** tab:

- **Country Name** - this is the friendly name that is displayed in the public site during the checkout process
- **Code** - to obtain the code, go to this MSDN site <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ee799297%28CS.20%29.aspx> (use the ISO Short Code or ISO Long Code as long as you remain consistent)
- **Sort Order** - enter a number starting from 0 (the lower number is listed on the top of the drop-down)
- **Visible** - Yes/No



**MERCE** Country Edit

Overview Regions

Country Name:

Code:

Sort Order:

Visible: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Regions refer to states, provinces or prefectures. In the **Region** tab, fill in the following:

- Type a **Friendly Name** (e.g. CA - this will be displayed in the public site during the checkout process) and click **Add**. You can checkmark it either as **Visible** or not on the public site

Overview Regions

New Region Name:

Regions:

Edit Command	Name	Ordering	Visible
	CA	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

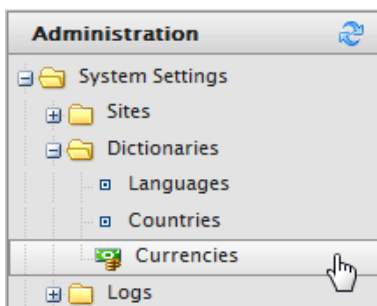
When you click the **Edit** icon, you can change the **Ordering** of the region. Click **Update** to save those changes.

Regions:

Edit Command	Name	Ordering	Visible
	CA	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Adding New Currencies

To add a new **Currency**, login to Commerce Manager and go to **Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Currencies**.



Click on **New Currency**. Fill in the following displayed in the **Overview** tab:

- **Currency Name** - this name is displayed in the front-end public site currency drop-down and various Commerce Manager admin pages
- **Code** - this currency code needs to be obtained from this site [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO\\_4217#Active\\_codes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_4217#Active_codes)

MERCE Currency Edit

Overview Rates

Currency Name:

Code:

Modified:

In the **Rates** tab, you can **Add Rates** which are the foreign exchange rate when you want to convert from one currency to another.

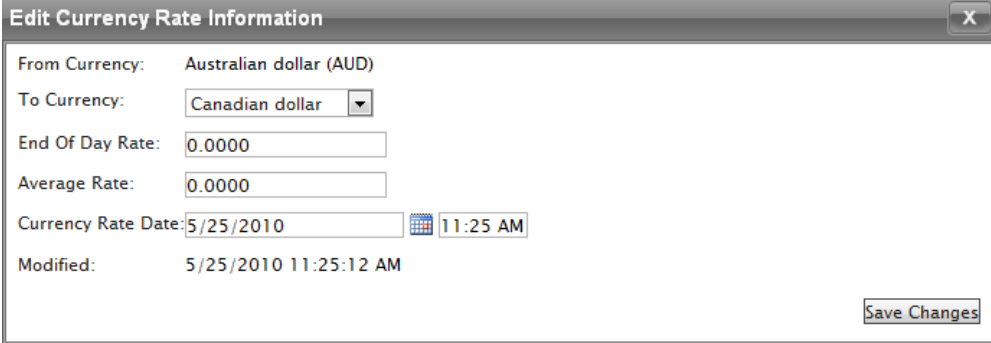
Overview Rates

Edit Command	Currency	Rate	Rate Date	Modified
--------------	----------	------	-----------	----------

When the **Edit Currency Rate Information** popup appears, enter in:

- **To Currency** - select from the drop-down the Currency to convert to from the current currency.
- **End of Date Rate** - enter in the End of Day rate.
- **Average Rate** - enter in the Average rate.
- **Currency Rate Date** - enter in a Currency Rate Date.

Then click on **Save Changes**.



**Edit Currency Rate Information**

From Currency: Australian dollar (AUD)

To Currency: Canadian dollar

End Of Day Rate: 0.0000

Average Rate: 0.0000

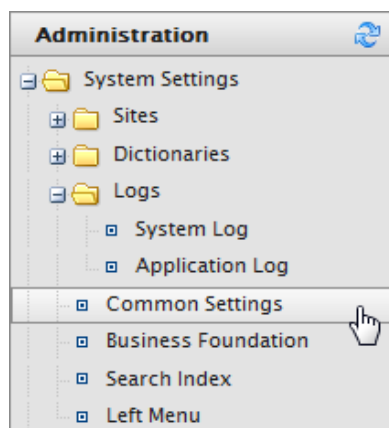
Currency Rate Date: 5/25/2010 11:25 AM

Modified: 5/25/2010 11:25:12 AM

Save Changes

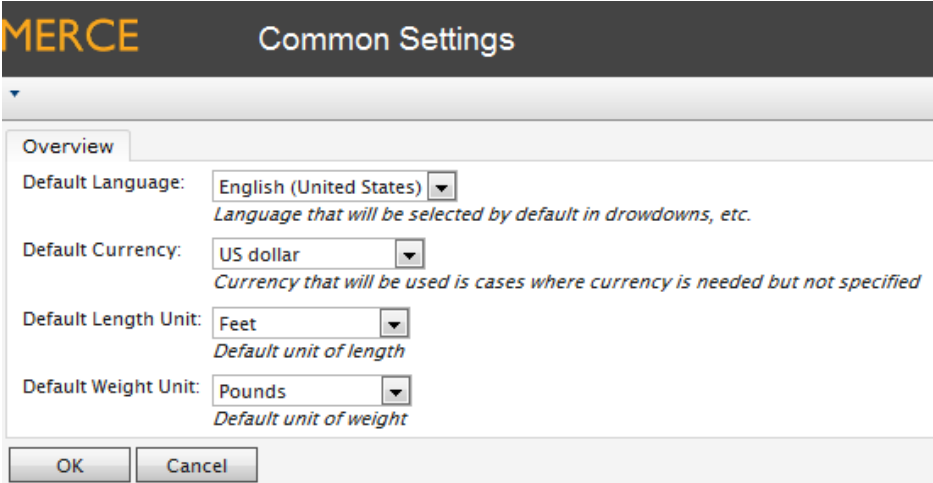
### Setting Your Default Language, Currency and Units

To set your default language, currency or unit, login to the Commerce Manager and go to the **Administration --> System Settings --> Common Settings** and make appropriate selection.



Out of the box, you have the following options:

- **Language** - English, German, Spanish, French
- **Currency** - US dollars, Canadian dollars, Euros, Yen, Pound sterling and many others
- **Length units** - meters, feet
- **Weight units** - kilograms, pounds



**Common Settings**

Overview

Default Language:    
*Language that will be selected by default in drowdowns, etc.*

Default Currency:    
*Currency that will be used is cases where currency is needed but not specified*

Default Length Unit:    
*Default unit of length*

Default Weight Unit:    
*Default unit of weight*

OK Cancel

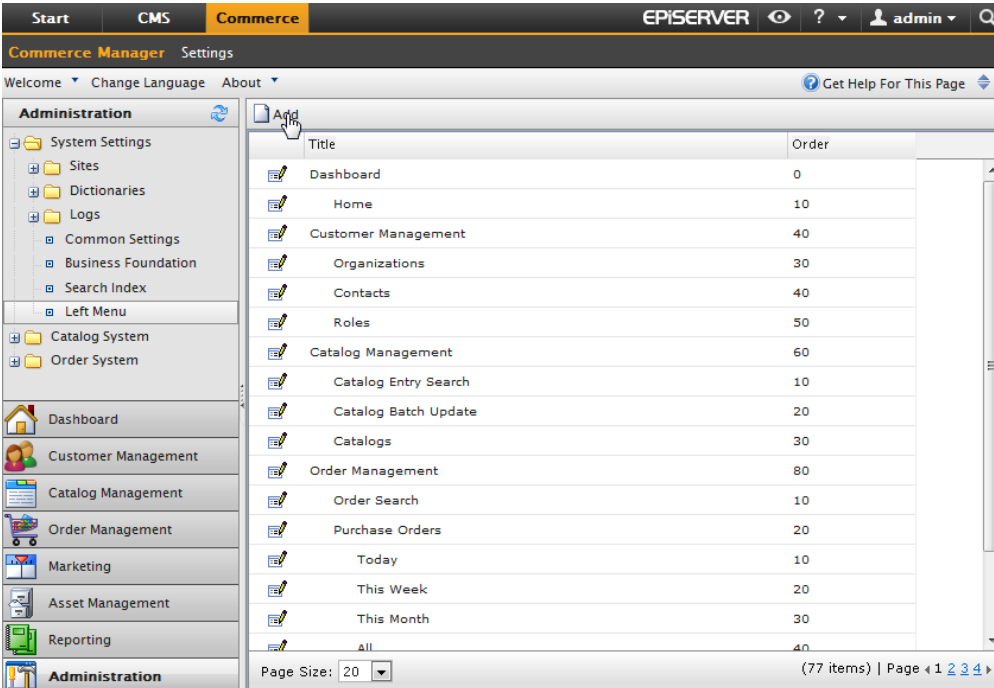
Click **OK** to save your changes.

### Customizing Left Menu

Prior to customizing your left menu, we advise you to read the *publication* section of *Business Foundation* to configure Business Objects as individual nodes in the left navigation frame.

#### Adding a Left Menu Item from the Left Menu Page

To add a **Left Menu** item, you have two choices. You can either configure the entire menu item first within Business Foundation or you can add an empty container by clicking the **Add** button and then go back to Business Foundation to fill in the page contents (objects).



The screenshot shows the EPiServer Commerce Manager interface. The left sidebar contains a tree view under 'Administration' with the following items: System Settings, Sites, Dictionaries, Logs, Common Settings, Business Foundation, Search Index, Left Menu, Catalog System, and Order System. The 'Left Menu' item is selected. The main area displays a table of menu items with columns for Title and Order.

Title	Order
Dashboard	0
Home	10
Customer Management	40
Organizations	30
Contacts	40
Roles	50
Catalog Management	60
Catalog Entry Search	10
Catalog Batch Update	20
Catalogs	30
Order Management	80
Order Search	10
Purchase Orders	20
Today	10
This Week	20
This Month	30
All	40

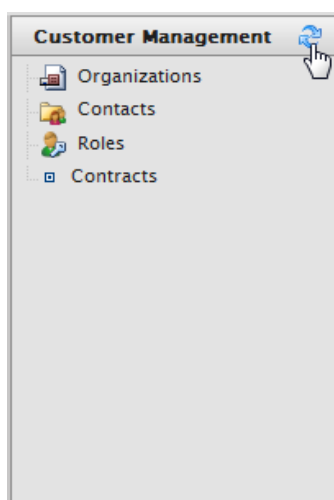
Page Size: 20 (77 items) | Page 1 2 3 4

A new window will pop up for publication settings.

1. Select a **Display Region** from the navigation tree on the left. Click on the node you want Contract to be placed under. For example, Contract will be placed on the root level of Customer Management.

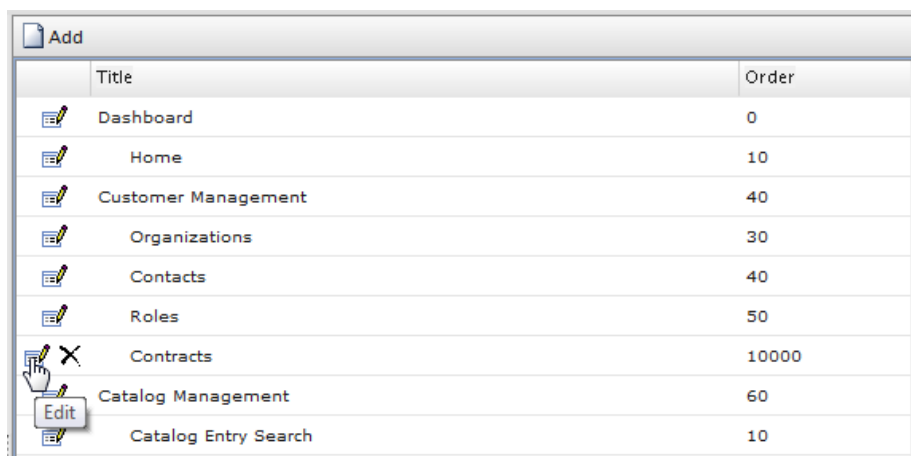
2. The **Display Text** defaults to the system name of the Business Object. You can choose to keep the name or change it.
3. Enter in an **Item Link**, an URL to a page. When the object is clicked, a new window will appear on the right based on the given link.
4. The **Display Order** defaults to 10000. You can keep it at that number or change the value to determine the position of the node.
5. **Access Permissions** is autopopulated only when a menu is created through the Business Foundation. When creating a new left menu from scratch, you may leave this field blank or otherwise copy in permissions from other existing menus. If you want to change Access Permissions, refer to the *Permissions* section.
6. An **Item Icon** can be uploaded to represent the node. Click **Browse** to upload an icon.
7. Once all relevant information is entered, click on **Publish**.

To verify if the object was published, go to the **Display Region** where you specified the object to be published to. Click on the **Refresh** icon on the left navigation frame if at first you do not see the new node.



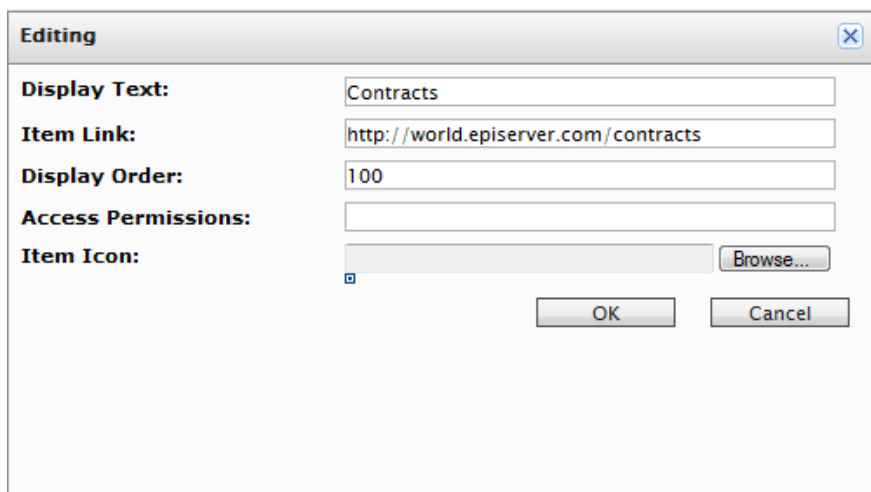
#### Editing, Ordering, or Deleting a Left Menu Item

To **Edit** a user-generated node in the left menu, click on the **Notepad** icon.



	Title	Order
	Dashboard	0
	Home	10
	Customer Management	40
	Organizations	30
	Contacts	40
	Roles	50
	Contracts	10000
	Catalog Management	60
	Catalog Entry Search	10

If the left menu item was created via the **Left Menu** page, this popup window will appear.



**Editing** [X]

**Display Text:**

**Item Link:**

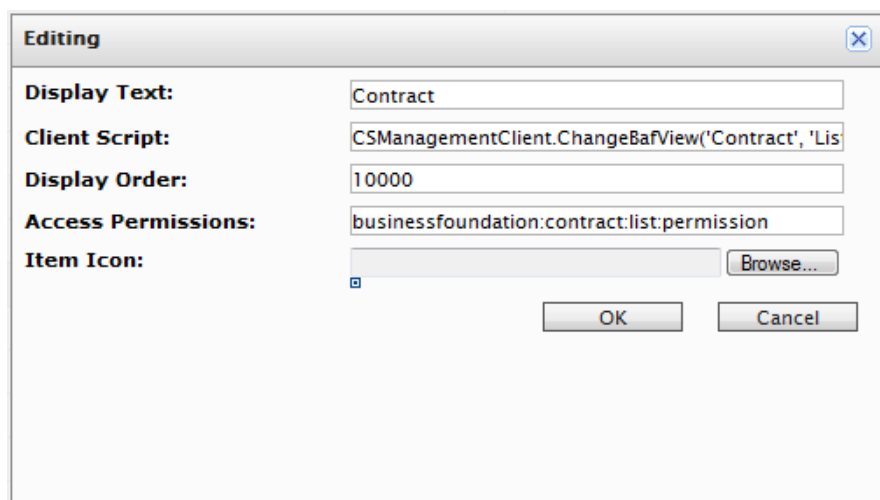
**Display Order:**

**Access Permissions:**

**Item Icon:**

If the left menu item node was created using **Business Foundation**, this popup appears.

To change the sort order of the left menu item, adjust the numerical value in **Display Order**. The lower the value, the higher the position of the item within the navigation tree relative to items with a higher Display Order value.



**Editing** [X]

**Display Text:**

**Client Script:**

**Display Order:**

**Access Permissions:**

**Item Icon:**

To save changes, click **OK**.

To delete a left menu item, click on **X** icon.

Title	Order
Dashboard	0
Home	10
Customer Management	40
Organizations	30
Contacts	40
Roles	50
Contracts	100
Log Management	60
Catalog Entry Search	10
Catalog Batch Update	20
Catalogs	30
Order Management	80
Order Search	10
Purchase Orders	20
Today	10
This Week	20
This Month	30
All	40
Purchase Orders By Status	30
Carts	40

Page Size: 20 (78 items) | Page 1 2 3 4

## Indexing Your New or Edited Catalog

In order to see products in a new Catalog or changes to an existing catalog, you will need to index your catalog to reflect those changes in your search results.

There are two types of indexing: **Build** and **Rebuild**. Use Build to make a quick re-indexing of an existing catalog where you made changes to existing products. Build is shorter than a Rebuild because it performs a reindexing of only the items that were changed since the last Build.

If you are using a brand new catalog or you made structural changes to your existing catalog (i.e. moving categories around, changing a product name, etc.), then you will need to perform a **Rebuild**. Rebuild takes longer because it does a complete indexing.

To Build or Rebuild your catalog, go to **Administration > System Settings > Search Index**.

Once you perform either of these two operations, you will see the changes or additions reflected in your search results.

If you have the Quartz service installed (this can be installed automatically during the SDK install), then your catalog is reindexed every five minutes or whatever time interval you decide upon.

## Catalog System

This section describes the system administration for the catalog system.

### Setting up Meta Fields and Meta Classes

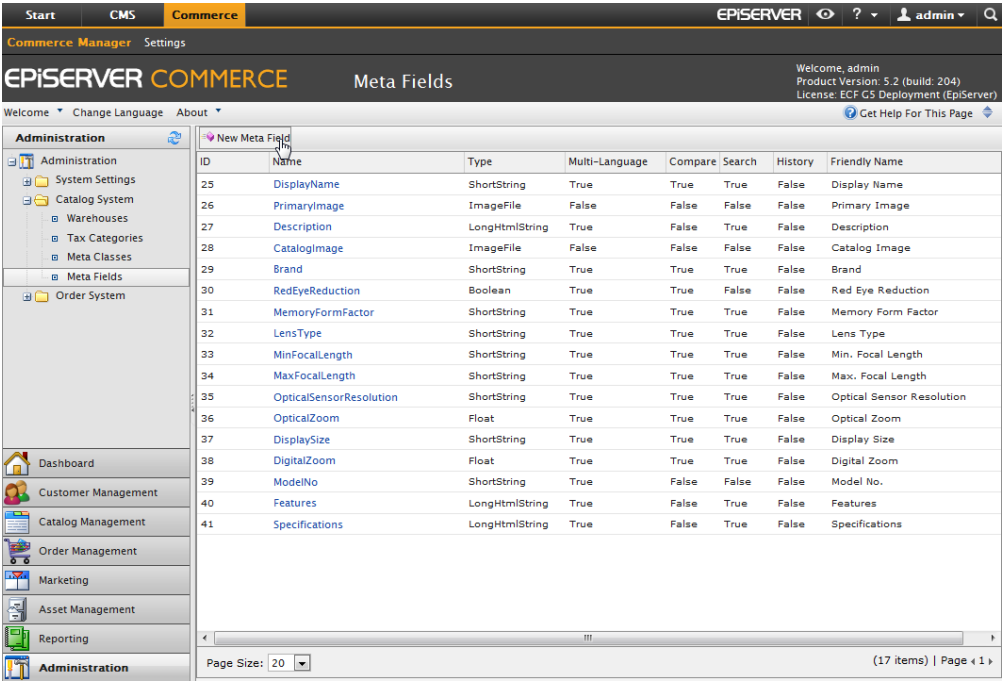
Using meta classes and meta classes, it is possible for end-users to extend the meta data of catalog items and order forms.

Meta fields are for adding specific data about an item. For instance, if you create a meta class called "Digital Cameras," you will want to add meta fields that are specific details related to digital cameras (such as number of megapixels, focal length, red-eye reduction support, etc.).

#### Adding Meta Fields to a Meta Class

1. Go to **Administration > Catalog System > Meta Fields**.

2. Click on **New Meta Field** to create a new meta field.



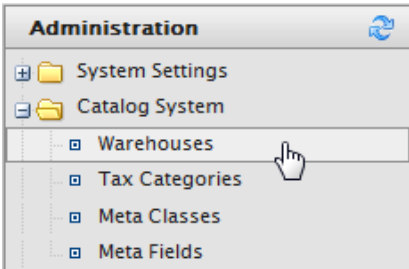
3. The **Meta Field Edit** page appears. There is a wide variety of parameters you can set for the meta field depending on the type you select.


Field	Description
Name	Enter in a system name without spaces or special characters (e.g. "NumberMegapixels," without the quotes).
Friendly Name	Enter in a user-friendly name seen by end-users on the back and front-end (e.g. "Number of Megapixels," without the quotes).
Description	Enter in any additional information about the meta field.
Type	The drop-down menu shows the field types you can use for the meta field.

**Warehouses**

Commerce Manager users can add and track a list of **Warehouses** within EPiServer Commerce. A Warehouse is a physical place with an address from which items are shipped.

To access Warehouses, navigate to **Administration > Expand Catalog System > Warehouses**.

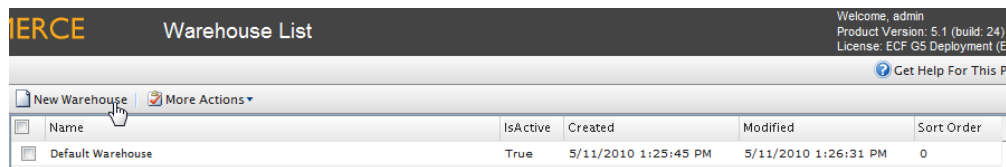




The important thing to keep in mind is that you can only associate a single warehouse for every SKU. So when you are creating a new SKU, you will have to specify the Warehouse where the item is being stored within the **Pricing/Inventory** tab.



The **Warehouse List** page appears. An example warehouse called "Default Warehouse" is on the list. To create a new Warehouse, click on **New Warehouse** on the menu bar.



The **Warehouse Edit** page has two tabs: **Overview** and **Address**.

1. Under the **Overview** tab enter in a **Name** and **Code**. The Name and Code name can have spaces in between characters.
2. Enter in a value for the **Sort Order** to determine the Warehouse's position on the **Warehouse List**.
3. Under **Available** select "Yes" or "No."
4. Under **Is Primary** select whether or not this Warehouse is the primary one. You can only have one primary Warehouse.

**Overview** | **Address**

Name:

Code:

Sort Order:   
*The sort order for the category entry.*

Available: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Is Primary: ☐ Yes ☒ No

5. Under the **Address** tab, enter all relevant information regarding this Warehouse.

Overview Address

First Name:

Last Name:

Organization:

Line 1:

Line 2:

City:

State:

Country Code:

Country Name:

Postal Code:

Region Code:

Region Name:

Day Phone:

Evening Phone:

Fax Number:

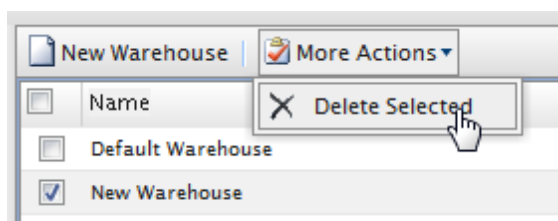
Email:

OK Cancel

6. Once you are satisfied with your entries, click on **OK** to save the Warehouse. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to go back to the **Warehouse List** page. The new Warehouse will appear on the list.

Name	IsActive	Created	Modified	Sort Order
Default Warehouse	True	5/11/2010 1:25:45 PM	5/11/2010 1:26:31 PM	0
New Warehouse	True	Today, 1:17 PM	Today, 1:17 PM	10

To delete a Warehouse, place a check mark on the box next to the name of the Warehouse and the click on **More Actions** on the menu bar.



Confirm deletion by clicking **OK** on the pop-up window. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to go back.

## Order System

This section describes the system administration for the order system.

### Payment Gateways

When creating and configuring payment methods in EPiServer Commerce, there are three components that need to be created or re-used as well as configured: Payment Types, Payment Gateways and

Payment Methods.

**Payment Types** – Payment types are classes which contain the properties of a particular payment type. For example, a credit card payment type contains credit card number, card expiration date, card type, etc. All payment types inherit from the abstract class Payment. The most common payment types are already built-in to EPiServer Commerce:

- Credit card
- Cash Card
- Gift Card
- Invoice

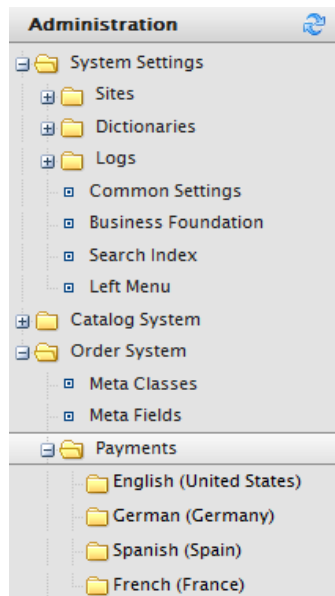
In addition, a generic OtherPayment type is included in EPiServer Commerce. Payment types are meta classes.

**Payment Gateways** – Payment gateways provide an interface to the system which provides payment processing. A payment type is passed to the payment gateway and the gateway executes the payment transaction with the payment system (e.g. PayPal). One payment type is associated with each payment gateway.

**Payment Methods** – Payment methods contain information about the way the customer views a payment option and has a payment gateway associated with it.

#### Using a Built-In Payment Gateway

To setup payments using a built-in Payment Gateway, go to **Administration -> Language** (English, German, Spanish, etc.)



The **Payment Methods** window appears. By default, "Payment by Card (DIBS)", "Pay by PayPal Express", "Pay by Credit Card" and "Pay by Phone" are already setup.

The screenshot shows the EPiServer Commerce Administration interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Start', 'CMS', and 'Commerce'. The 'Commerce' tab is active, showing 'Payment Methods'. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'Administration' selected. The main content area displays a table of payment methods.

	Name	IsActive	IsDefault	Ordering	Created	Last Modified
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pay by credit card (DIBS)	True	False	0	5/13/2011 3:57:49 PM	5/13/2011 3:57:49 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pay by PayPal Express	True	False	0	5/13/2011 3:57:49 PM	5/13/2011 3:57:49 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pay By Phone	True	True	2	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	ExchangePayment	False	False	2	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pay By Credit Card	True	False	2	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM	4/20/2010 2:00:00 AM

Page Size: 20 (5 items) | Page 1

To create a new **Payment Method**, click on **New** to open the **Payment Method Edit** screen.

The screenshot shows the 'Payment Method Edit' screen. It has two tabs: 'Overview' (selected) and 'Parameters'. The 'Overview' tab contains the following fields and options:

- ID: (empty text box)
- Name: (empty text box)
- Description: (empty text area)
- System Keyword: (empty text box)
- Language: (dropdown menu showing 'select language')
- Class Name: (dropdown menu showing '(none)')
- Sort Order: (text box with '0')
- IsActive: (radio buttons for 'Yes' and 'No', 'No' is selected)
- IsDefault: (radio buttons for 'Yes' and 'No', 'No' is selected)
- Supports Recurring: (radio buttons for 'Yes' and 'No', 'No' is selected)

Below these fields is a section titled 'Restricted Shipping Methods' with two columns:

- Available Shipping Methods:** Contains 'Default Shipping' and 'Online Download'.
- Chosen Shipping Methods:** (Empty box)

Between the columns are four buttons: 'Add ->', 'Add All ->>', '<- Remove', and '<<- Remove All'. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Here is an explanation of some of the gateway properties:

- **ID** – the system-assigned unique identifier for the payment gateway
- **Name** – the name to be displayed to the user
- **Description** – a description that can be displayed to the user
- **System Keyword** – the unique name for each instance of the gateway; new non-unique keywords will not save to the database. This is not be editable after a gateway is initially created
- **Language** – allows a specific language to be specified for the payment gateway
- **Class Name** – name of the gateway class to be associated with the payment
- **Sort Order** – specifies the order of the payment method on the list of payment methods page
- **IsActive** – specify whether or not the payment method is active
- **IsDefault** – specific whether or not the payment method is the default one
- **Supports Recurring** – specify whether this payment methods supports recurring payments, such as for subscriptions
- **Restricted Shipping Methods** – Restricted shipping methods is not fully implemented out of the box and requires a developer to complete the functionality.

### Restricted Shipping Methods

Available Shipping Methods		Chosen Shipping Methods
<div>Default Shipping</div> <div>Online Download</div>	<div>Add -&gt;</div> <div>Add All -&gt;&gt;</div> <div>&lt;- Remove</div> <div>&lt;&lt;- Remove All</div>	

### Restricted Shipping Methods

Available Shipping Methods		Chosen Shipping Methods
<div>Online Download</div>	<div>Add -&gt;</div> <div>Add All -&gt;&gt;</div> <div>&lt;- Remove</div> <div>&lt;&lt;- Remove All</div>	<div>Default Shipping</div>

Click **OK** to save the **Payment Method**. The payment method will appear in the list of Payment Methods.

MERCÉ		Payment Methods					Welcome, admin Product Version: 5.1 (build: 24) License: ECF GS Deployment (EpiServer)	
		Get Help For This Page						
New More Actions								
	Name	IsActive	IsDefault	Ordering	Created	Last Modified		
	Money Order	False	False	0	Today, 10:45 AM	Today, 10:45 AM		
	Payment by card (DIBS)	True	True	0	5/12/2010 6:10:05 AM	5/12/2010 6:10:05 AM		
	Pay By Phone	True	True	1	1/1/2006 1:00:00 AM	5/12/2010 6:10:34 AM		
	Pay By Credit Card	True	False	2	1/1/2006 1:00:00 AM	1/1/2007 1:00:00 AM		

**Setting up Payment Methods using nSoftware Provided Payment Gateways**

EPiServer Commerce supports multiple payment gateways out of the box using nSoftware that the end user can easily setup without the need for a developer.

1. To enable nSoftware supported gateways, create a new payment method.
2. Enter in a **Name**, such as nSoftware or anything else.
3. Enter in a **Description**.
4. Enter in the **System Keyword** as "ICharge".
5. Select a **Language** from the dropdown menu.
6. Select the **Class Name** "Mediachase.Commerce.Plugins.Payment.ICharge.IChargeGateway".
7. Select "Yes" for **IsActive**.
8. Change the **Sort Order**, **IsDefault**, Supports Recurring as needed.
9. Click **OK** to save changes.

**MERCE** Payment Method Edit

Overview Parameters

ID:

Name:

Description:

System Keyword:

Language:

Class Name:

Sort Order:

IsActive: ☐ Yes ☒ No

IsDefault: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Supports Recurring: ☐ Yes ☒ No

**Restricted Shipping Methods**

Available Shipping Methods		Chosen Shipping Methods
Default Shipping Online Download	<input type="button" value="Add -&gt;"/> <input type="button" value="Add All -&gt;&gt;"/> <input type="button" value="&lt;- Remove"/> <input type="button" value="&lt;&lt;- Remove All"/>	

OK Cancel

Once created, click on the payment gateway again to go back to the **Payment Method Edit** page. Click on the **Parameters** tab.

The **Configure IBiz E-Payment Integrator Component** appears and you can select from the **Gateway** dropdown menu several dozen of the most popular payment gateways will appear. Depending on the gateway you select, such as Authorize.Net, the **Configuration Parameters** will change. Enter in your credentials and other relevant information to activate the gateway and click **OK**.

**Configure IBiz E-Payment Integrator Component**

**Gateway:** Authorize.Net

Get IBiz E-Payment Integrator from [www.nsoftware.com](http://www.nsoftware.com). You will find more documentation on how to configure it there also.

**Configuration Parameters**

Payment Options: Sale

\*Merchant Login:

Merchant Password:

Transaction Key:

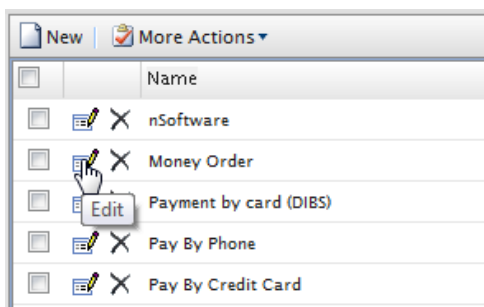
Secret Hash:

Payment Gateway URL (used for testing):

**OK** **Cancel**

### Editing Payment Methods

To edit an existing payment method, click on the **Notepad** icon next to the **Delete** icon.



The ID is autogenerated. Every field can be changed except System Keyword. After you are satisfied with your changes, click on **OK**.

**MERCE** Payment Method Edit

Overview Parameters

ID: e0fbbe1d-053f-4adc-b15c-669374639502

Name: Money Order

Description:

System Keyword: iCharge

Language: English (United States)

Class Name: EPiServer.Business.Commerce.Payment.DIBS.DIBSPaymentGateway

Sort Order: 0

IsActive: ☐ Yes ☒ No

IsDefault: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Supports Recurring: ☐ Yes ☒ No

**Restricted Shipping Methods**

Available Shipping Methods

Online Download

Chosen Shipping Methods

Default Shipping

Add ->

Add All -->

<- Remove

<<- Remove All

OK Cancel

#### Deleting Payment Methods

To delete **Payment Methods**, click on the **X** icon next to the payment method name and click **OK** when the popup appears. To delete multiple payment methods at once, check mark each payment method you want to delete, then click on **More Actions --> Delete** on the dropdown menu. Click **OK** when the popup appears.

#### Shipping

This guide will walk you through how to setup *Shipping Methods*, *Shipping Providers* and Shipping Gateways.

**Shipping Method** - A shipping method manages a set of information and rules that determines the shipping cost and displays it on the front-end site while a customer checks out an item from his/her shopping basket. The shipping fee is added to the total price of the purchase. A shipping method is mapped to a shipping provider visible to a back-end administrator in Commerce Manager. This allows the public site to display friendly names such as "Ground Shipping" to the customer and this is mapped to a provider such as UPS. Therefore, when a customer picks "Ground Shipping," he/she will be using UPS.

**Shipping Providers** - A shipping provider is the class(es) that interacts directly with one or more actual shipping services such as USPS, UPS, or FedEx. It retrieves shipping price information from the shipping service(s) its associated with. One typical scenario would be to have a provider that represents a particular service (e.g. USPS). A provider can also represent a particular type of shipping situation. One



example is that you could have a provider for overnight delivery. The provider could retrieve pricing for that service to determine the lowest price given the location of the customer. A provider could also represent other specific scenarios with one or more services such as price by weight or ground shipping.

**Shipping Gateways** - Under Shipping Providers, a shipping gateway is the specific class that you select (Generic Gateway or Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway).

There are two options out of the box for shipping gateways: 1) Generic Gateway (flat shipping rate) and 2) Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway (base price + additional fee depending on weight and shipping location). You select the shipping gateway in the Shipping Provider screen and then configure the actual values for that gateway/provider in the Shipping Methods area.

**Shipping Jurisdictions** - an option which allows you to define values for region-specific shipping rates; this is only used when you select the Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway (i.e. California)

**Shipping Jurisdiction Groups** - group of jurisdictions; this is required because this is a required field when configuring the Shipping Method parameters (i.e. Southwest region)

#### Shipping Methods

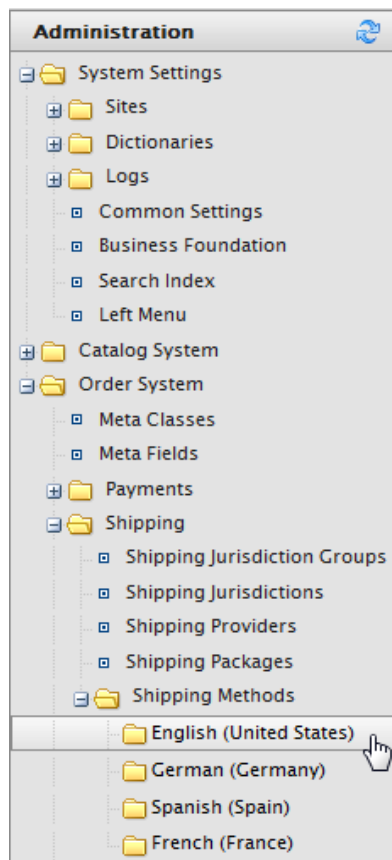
A **Shipping Method** manages a set of information and rules that determines the shipping cost and displays it on the front-end site while a customer checks out an item from his/her shopping basket. The shipping fee is added to the total price of the purchase.

A shipping method is mapped to a **Shipping Provider** visible to a back-end administrator in Commerce Manager. This allows the public site to display friendly names such as "Ground Shipping" to the customer and this is mapped to a provider such as UPS. Therefore, when a customer picks "Ground Shipping," he/she will be using UPS.

#### Customizing Shipping Methods

There are two **Shipping Methods** available out of the box for you to customize: Ground Shipping and Fixed Shipping.

To customize the Shipping Methods, first go to **Administration > Order System > Shipping > Shipping Methods > English (United States)** or any other languages.



At the **Shipping Methods List** screen, select the edit icon for either of the available methods. The **Overview** tab screen for **Shipping Method Edit** will load with the below fields:

Overview	Settings	Parameters
ID:	a1ca1bca-6fbf-4b6f-b01f-bbf3df23a02a	
Name:	<input type="text" value="Default Shipping"/>	
Friendly Name:	<input type="text" value="Ground Shipping"/>	
Description:	<input type="text" value="Calculates shipping based on weight and zone."/>	
Provider:	<input type="text" value="Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway"/>	
Language:	<input type="text" value="English (United States)"/>	
Base Price:	<input type="text" value="2.00"/>	
Currency:	<input type="text" value="US dollar"/>	
IsActive:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	
IsDefault:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	
Sort Order:	<input type="text" value="0"/>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>		

- **ID** - this is auto-generated after saving the new shipping method
- **Name** - enter in a name without spaces or special character; this name will not be displayed in the public site, but is only for end users to manage and organize the shipping methods
- **Friendly Name** - enter a friendly name which can have spaces and special character; the friendly name is the name seen by customers who are purchasing items

- **Description** - enter a description (optional)
- **Provider** - select an available provider from the dropdown menu; the options displayed here are created in the *Shipping Providers* screen (*Generic Gateway* is for a fixed shipping fee specified below under base price, while *Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway* is used for a shipping fee depended on the weight and shipping location)
- **Language** - select a language of your choice from the dropdown menu
- **Base Price** - the base price you specify here will become the fixed shipping fee for the Generic Gateway option, and part of the Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway option.
- **IsActive** - select Yes or No under IsActive to enable is disable it, respectively
- **IsDefault** - select Yes or No if this shipping method is the default one
- **Sort Order** - enter a number for the sort order to determine its position on the list of shipping methods

The **Settings** tab is used to exclude any Countries, Regions, and Payments from a particular shipping method.

To exclude a selection, highlight the items on the **Available** boxes on the left and move them to the **Chosen Countries** boxes by clicking **Add**.

Overview

Settings

Parameters

Restricted Countries

Available Countries

Afghanistan  
Albania  
Algeria  
American Samoa  
Andorra  
Angola  
Anguilla  
Antarctica  
Antigua and Barbuda  
Argentina

Add ->  
Add All ->>  
<- Remove  
<<- Remove All

Chosen Countries

Restricted Regions

Available Regions

Alabama  
Alaska  
American Samoa  
Arizona  
Arkansas  
Armed Forces Africa  
Armed Forces Americas (except C  
Armed Forces Canada  
Armed Forces Europe  
Armed Forces Middle East

Add ->  
Add All ->>  
<- Remove  
<<- Remove All

Chosen Regions

Restricted Payments

Available Payments

Payment by card (DIBS)  
nSoftware  
Pay By Phone  
Pay By Credit Card

Add ->  
Add All ->>  
<- Remove  
<<- Remove All

Chosen Payments

OK

Cancel

The **Parameters** tab is use to set conditions to determine the shipping fee. This screen become available only when the Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway is select in the **Provider** field in the Overview tab (it will be empty with the Generic Gateway option).

Overview

Settings

Parameters

Configure Price Per Weight for Jurisdiction Group

Jurisdiction Group: 

United States

Weight:  or more
Price: 
Start Date: 

5/25/2010

12:00 AM

End Date: 

5/25/2011

10:55 AM

Add

Group Name	Weight	Price	Start Date	End Date	Edit	
United States	0 or more	10	10/8/2008 12:00:00 AM	10/8/2020 12:00:00 AM	Modify	Delete

OK

Cancel

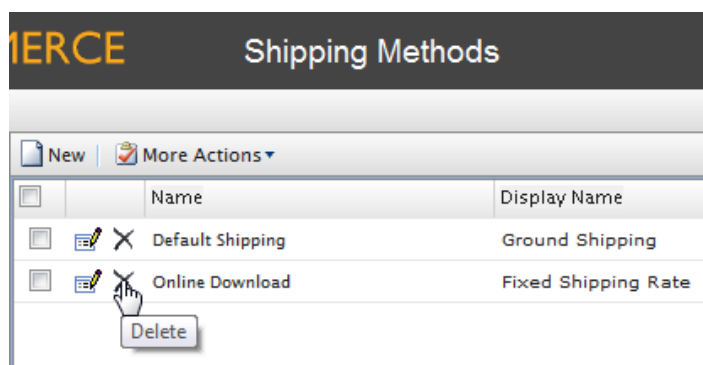
- **Jurisdiction Group** - select a jurisdiction group to apply the current **Shipping Method** using the dropdown menu; the options listed here are set up in the **Shipping Jurisdictions** and **Shipping Jurisdiction Groups** screen.
- **Weight** - enter a numerical value for the weight; units for the weight is set in the *Common Settings* screen
- **Price** - enter a price to be added to the base price (**Overview** tab) when the weight and jurisdiction group conditions are met.
- **Start Date** - enter a start date and time for the shipping method to take effect
- **End Date** - enter a end date and time for the shipping method to expire

When finish entering the values above, select **Add** to save the condition. The condition will appear on table below. In the above example, if the customer checks out an item that weights anywhere between 0 to 10 weight units (lbs for example), and the customer's shipping address is in the United States, then the total shipping fee will equal \$10 + the base price you enter in the overview screen.

Click **OK** to save changes.

#### Deleting Shipping Methods

1. Check off the box that corresponds to the shipping methods you want to delete.
2. Click on the More Actions button on the upper left corner of the main window menu bar, and choose **Delete** from the pull down menu.
3. Click **OK** when prompted. The selected methods will be deleted from the list.



#### Shipping Providers

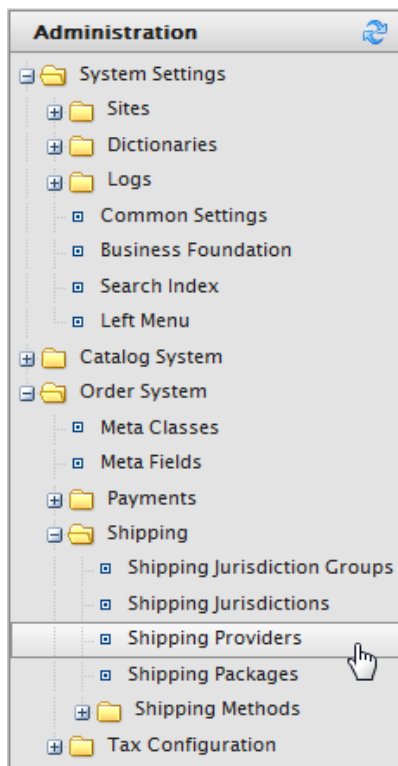
A **Shipping Provider** is an actual service such as USPS, UPS, or FedEx. However, a provider can also be a type of shipping in order to determine shipping price. For example, one can have a "Percentage of Total Cost" provider or "Fixed Price" provider. In this case, the shipment "types" can be associated to one of the existing providers (i.e. USPS, UPS, FEDEX).

The Shipping Providers page manages the list of these providers/types. There are two shipping methods available out of the box for you to customize: 1) Generic Gateway and 2) Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway.

A Generic Gateway is used for a fixed shipping fee while Weight/Jurisdiction Gateway is used for a shipping fee that is calculated based on the weight and shipping location.

#### Customizing Shipping Providers

Go to **Administration > Order System > Shipping > Shipping Providers**. Edit one of the two providers listed.



1. Edit **Name**, and **Description**.
2. **System Keyword (no spaces)** and **Classes** are something that your developers need to code and provide.
3. Click **OK** to save changes.

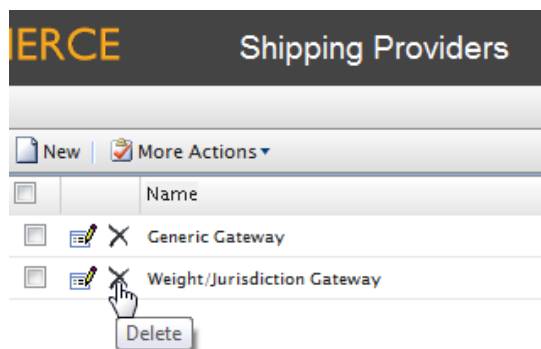
The revised shipping provider will appear in the **Shipping Providers** page.



The **Parameters** and **Packages** tabs are not fully implemented; they serve as a starting point for developers for full implementation of those features.

#### Deleting Shipping Providers

1. Go to the **Shipping Providers** page.
2. Check off the box that corresponds to the shipping providers you want to delete.
3. Click on the **More Actions** button on the upper left corner of the main window menu bar, and choose **Delete** from the pull down menu.
4. Click **OK** when prompted. The selected providers will be deleted from the list.



## Tax Configuration

### Introduction

Taxes can be configured in the Administration subsystem so that specified rates are calculated and added to the total price during the checkout process. Depending on your configuration, it is also possible to combine and apply multiple taxes (such as federal, state and local tax) to a purchase.

Taxes can be set up and maintained using two methods: 1) creating/editing each tax control manually or 2) importing all data using a CSV file. Here we will discuss both methods and also provide you with a few examples to demonstrate how this works.

### Method 1: Configuring Taxes Manually

To set up your taxes manually, you will need to work with the following areas in the **Administration** tab of the Admin Site – **Tax Categories, Tax Jurisdiction Groups, Tax Jurisdictions, and Taxes** – as well as the configuration pages for each of the catalog items.

The steps below summarize the process you need to follow to configure taxes.

1. **Create and configure Countries and Regions (Go to Administration > System Settings > Dictionaries > Countries):** In Countries section create the countries you plan to sell your products in and set the appropriate country codes. For the country codes, it is important that you use the **ISO Short** code provided in the following link (<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms866171.aspx>). Using the **ISO Long** code or anything else will not correctly calculate taxes during checkout.
2. **Create new Tax Categories (Go to Administration > Catalog System):** In this step you will create tax categories that will be used later to associate your catalog items with the tax rates you define. For example you may create categories such as "General Sales," "Food," and "Luxury Items" depending on the tax regulations for your item types. The categories you create here will become selectable on the Page Details of your items (i.e., Variations/SKU Edit page) and on the **Tax Edit** page.
3. **Create and configure Tax Jurisdictions (Go to Administration > Order system > Tax Configuration):** In this step you will specify particular Tax Jurisdictions. You can create different Tax Jurisdictions for a particular region by specifying zip codes, country codes, etc. Tax rates will be applied to whatever level of information you specify for each Jurisdiction. For example, if you specify only the country code as US, all shoppers with a US address (regardless of state, county etc.) will be included in this jurisdiction. **Note:** Country Code and Region Code you enter in the **Jurisdictions Edit** page must match the codes you used in step 1.
4. **Create and configure new Tax Jurisdiction Groups (Go to Administration > Order system > Tax Configuration):** New Tax Jurisdiction Groups created here can include multiple Tax Jurisdictions.
5. **Create and configure Taxes (Go to Administration > Order System > Tax Configuration):** Here you will specify tax rates and also associate the Tax Categories and Jurisdiction groups created in Steps 2 and 4.
6. **Associate Catalogs to the Tax Categories** created in Step 2 (Go to **Order Management > Catalogs**): Now you will switch over to the Catalog Management subsystem and link specific catalog items to the appropriate Tax Categories. This can be done on the Pricing/Inventory page within each Variation/SKU Edit page.

### Method 2: Configuring Taxes Using CSV Import

Using the CSV Tax Import functionality is a convenient way to quickly setup and update tax data in bulk. Creating a CSV tax file with a specified format (see "Example Scenarios" below) will allow you to

complete steps 2 through 5 in one shot (above in Method 1). Step 6 of Method 1 can be done manually, but you can also use the CSV import functionality in the Catalog Management subsystem to associate catalogs to tax categories. Click [here](#) to see how CSV Catalog Import works.

Import your CSV tax file into your Commerce Manager by following the steps:

1. Select the Administration tab in the Commerce Manager.
2. In the navigation tree drill down to Taxes: **Order System > Taxes Configuration > Taxes**.
3. Click **Import Taxes** on the menu bar.
4. Choose **Add New File** and then **Browse** to select and upload your CSV tax file. The path of your chosen file will appear in the field.
5. Click **Upload File** and then **Save The File** icon. The CSV tax file will appear under the **Files Available for Import** section.
6. Select and highlight the CSV file and click the "Start Import" button.
7. Your import should begin and complete successfully in a pop-up dialog box.
8. You will now be able to view your tax setup in the Commerce Manager.

If you want to edit the existing setup, simply repeat steps 1 through 8 with your modified file.

**Caution:** Re-importing CSV files only edits existing information or adds new data, but nothing gets deleted. If you delete an entire row of data in the CSV file, you must manually delete those entries in the Commerce Manager. If in doubt, you can always delete all the tax data and perform the CSV tax import from scratch.

#### Sample CSV Files and Example Scenarios

##### Example 1: Single Tax Per Catalog Item Based on a Single Jurisdiction

For example, if your variable is State, then you can specify the tax rate on a state-level. So let's say CA is 9% and MA is 6%. If you placed an order from California, then 9% sales tax would be applied during checkout.

Jurisdiction	Jurisdiction Group	Tax Rate	Tax Category
California	CA Tax Group	9%	General Sales
Massachusetts	MA Tax Group	6%	General Sales

A sample tax CSV file called test.csv is available in this directory – [taxcsvsample1.zip].

##### Example 2: Two or More Taxes Per Catalog Item Based on More Than One Jurisdiction

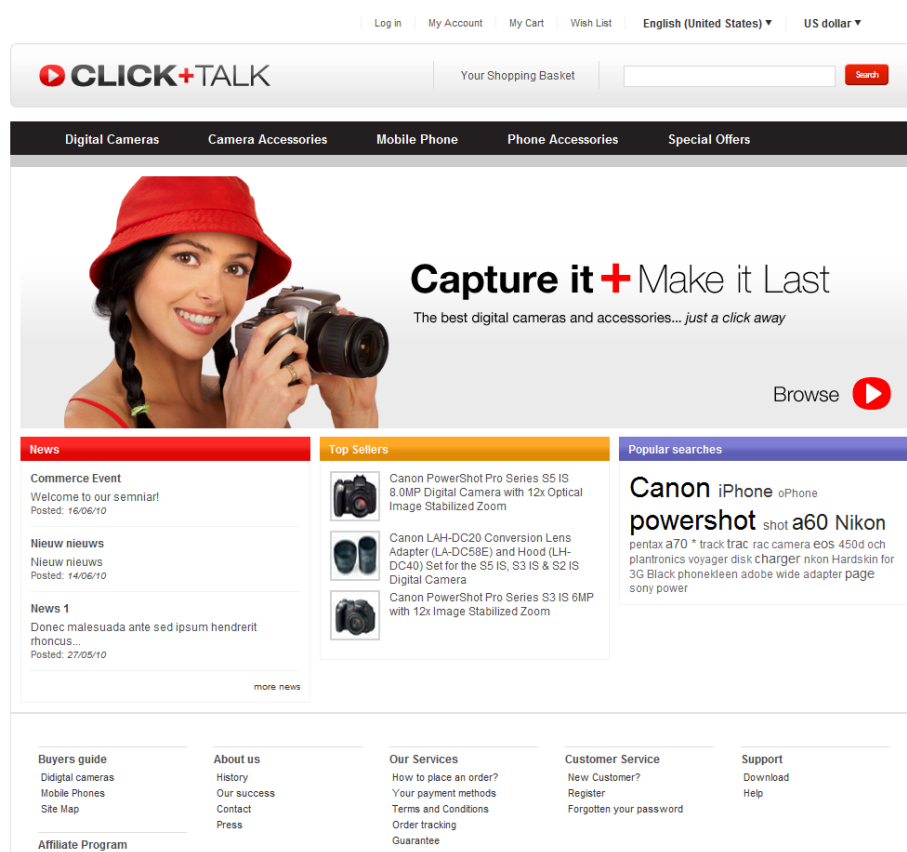
For example, if you have a luxury item that requires State and Federal tax to be applied, then you can specify tax rates on a state and federal level. So let's say a luxury item purchased in CA has a 9% state tax rate and a federal tax rate of 3%. Both taxes would be applied during checkout.

Jurisdiction	Jurisdiction Group	Tax Rate	Tax Category
California General	CA GS Tax Group	9%	General Sales
Massachusetts General	MA GS Tax Group	6%	General Sales
California Luxury	CA LX Tax Group	9%	Luxury Sales
Massachusetts Luxury	MA LX Tax Group	6%	Luxury Sales
US Federal Luxury	US LX Tax Group	3%	Luxury Sales



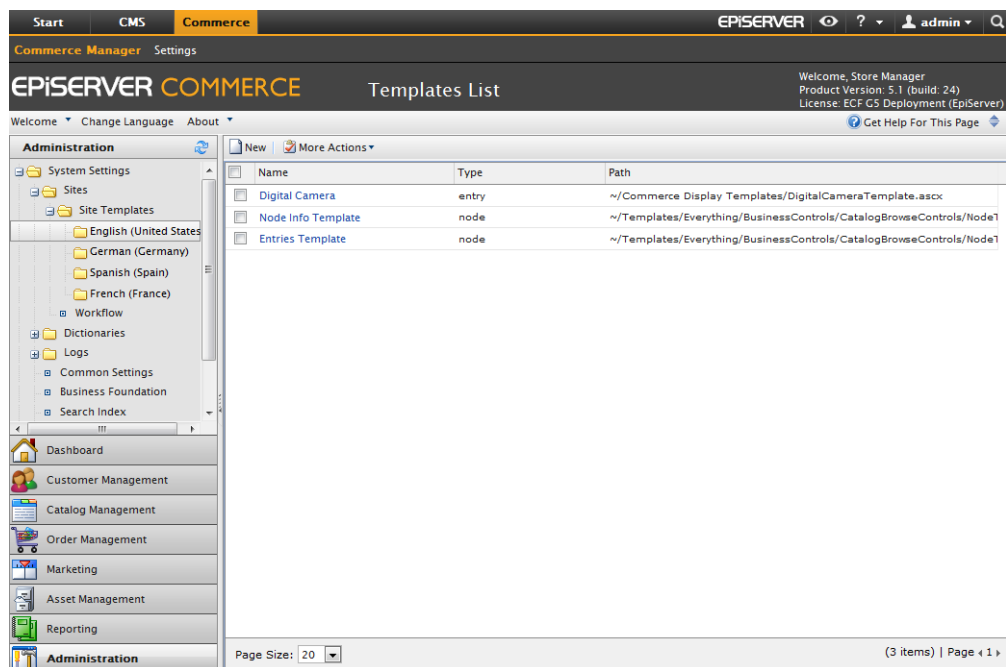
# EPiServer Commerce Sample Site

The EPiServer Commerce sample site provides a set of demo templates to illustrate the functionality of EPiServer Commerce. The sample template package is intended as inspiration when you build your own e-commerce site based on EPiServer Commerce. In the following the templates included in the package are described in more detail, explaining the possibilities with EPiServer Commerce to both developers and end-users.



## Display Templates

To be able to display different products on the e-commerce site you need to define the display templates to be used. These can be different for different language groups on the site. On the EPiServer Commerce sample site, the display templates will automatically be imported and configured during the installation procedure. However, when new templates have been created you may want to define their use in the system, or modify the use of existing ones. This is done in Commerce Manager in the **Catalog Management** sub-system under **Templates**.



## Adding a display template

1. Under **Catalog Management**, select **Templates** and click **New**.
2. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the display template, for instance "DigitalCameraTemplate".
3. In the **Friendly Name** field, enter the display name for the template, for instance "Digital Camera".
4. In the **Type** field, enter the type of display template, for instance "entry".
5. In the **Path** field, add the path to the display template, for instance:  
~/T-  
emplates/Ev-  
erything/BusinessControls/CatalogBrowseControls/EntryTemplates/DigitalCameraTemplate.ascx.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes.

## Updating an existing display template

1. Under **Catalog Management**, select **Templates** and the language version and template that you want to update.
2. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the display template.
3. In the **Friendly Name** field, enter the display name of the display template.
4. In the **Type** field, enter the type of display template.
5. In the **Path** field, add the path to the display template.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes.

## Importing the Sample Catalog

The product catalog contains information regarding brands and sales items. This information will either be displayed in the public site, or used for pricing and promotions. Product catalogs needs to be imported

into EPiServer Commerce. This will normally be done automatically during the installation procedure for the EPiServer Commerce sample site.

However, there may be occasions where you need to import a product catalog, and the procedure is therefore described in the following. There are different ways of doing this, and in this example we describe how you manually import the sample catalogs (2) of the sample site, using the import/export function in Commerce Manager. When product catalogs have been imported, they also need to be **indexed**, in order for the product search function to incorporate any changes.

Additional information on how to import product catalogs can be found in the *Catalog Management* section.

Name	Available from	Expires	Status
Everything	12/18/2007 9:00:00 AM	12/18/2020 9:00:00 AM	True
Brands	6/24/2008 7:00:00 PM	6/24/2020 7:00:00 PM	True

## Import the Sample Catalogs


The sample site includes two product catalogs providing the "everything" and the "brand" view.

1. In Commerce Manager, select **Catalog Management** and then **Catalogs**.
2. Click on **Import/Export** and then **Import Catalog**, this takes you to the **Import Catalog** screen.
3. Select the catalog zip file, in this case "CatalogExport-BG2C-Everything.zip" and click **Start Import**.
4. When the import has completed, click **Close Window**.
5. Select "CatalogExport-B2C-Brands.zip" and click **Start Import**.
6. When the import has completed, click **Close Window**.

**Import**

**It is strongly recommended that you back up your ECF database before performing import.**

To import catalog, please pick up an existing file from the grid below or upload a new one. Then click the button 'Start Import' to start importing.

 Add New File

**Files Available For Import:**

File Name	Size	Created	Last Updated
CatalogExport-B2C-Everything.zip	9.52 MB	2/10/2010 4:00:45 PM	Today, 11:44 AM
CatalogExport-B2C-Brands.zip	185.66 KB	2/10/2010 4:00:45 PM	Today, 11:44 AM

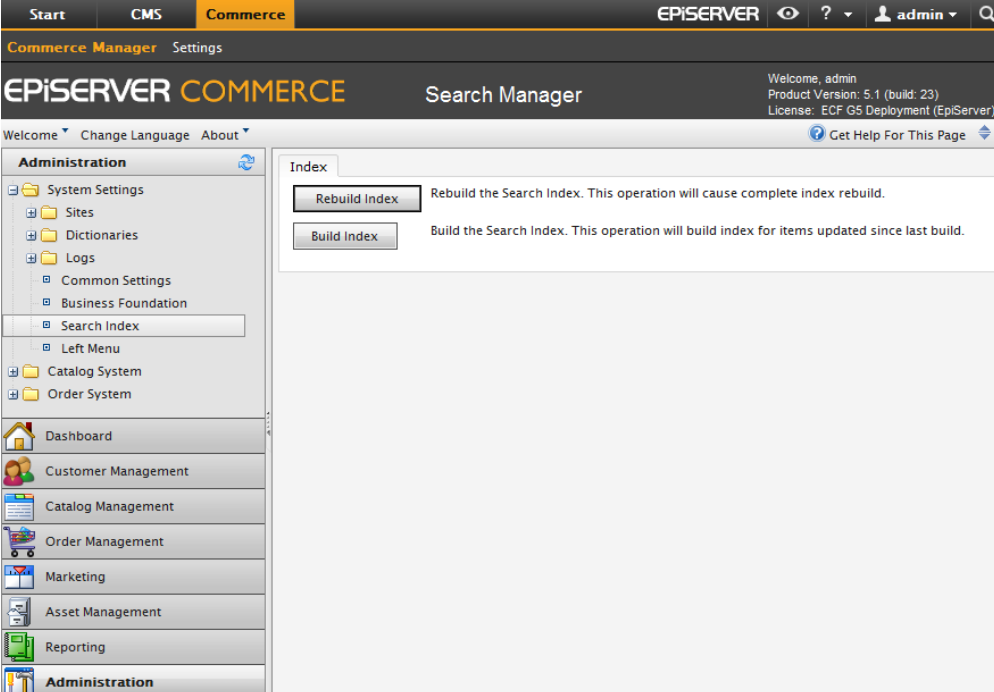
1 Page 1 of 1 (2 items)

**Start Import**

## Indexing the Sample Catalog

After importing a product catalog, it also needs to be indexed.

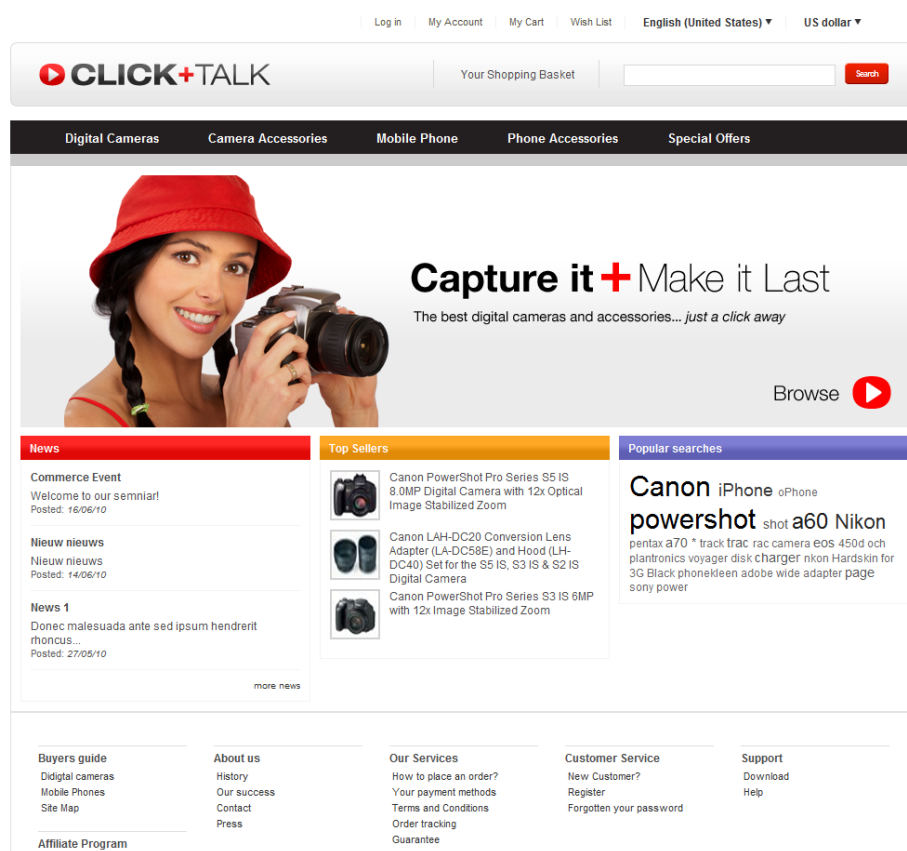
1. In Commerce Manager, select **Administration, System Settings** and then **Search Index**.
2. Click **Rebuild Index** to index the catalog for the first time. The **Build Index** option is used for future updates when you import the same catalog again and only want to index the changes.



The screenshot shows the EPiServer Commerce Search Manager interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Start', 'CMS', and 'Commerce' tabs. The 'Commerce' tab is active, showing 'Commerce Manager' and 'Settings'. The main header displays 'EPiSERVER COMMERCE' and 'Search Manager'. A sidebar on the left lists various administration options, with 'Search Index' selected under the 'Administration' section. The main content area contains two buttons: 'Rebuild Index' and 'Build Index'. The 'Rebuild Index' button is highlighted, and its description reads: 'Rebuild the Search Index. This operation will cause complete index rebuild.' The 'Build Index' button description reads: 'Build the Search Index. This operation will build index for items updated since last build.'

## Page Templates

The EPiServer Commerce product package is based on EPiServer CMS for managing content, and the e-commerce module Commerce Manager. The EPiServer Commerce package includes a **sample website** with a set of display templates. The page templates provide an example of how you can work with EPiServer Commerce to create your own web publishing and online store platform. Use the page templates as inspiration and adapt them to your own online store environment.



The sample site contains sample product data stored in a product database. The template package in EPIserver CMS contains a set of templates for displaying content and providing other typical e-commerce functions.



The templates, fields and functions described in this documentation refers to a "standard installation" of an EPIserver Commerce sample site. The standard functions and fields of EPIserver CMS are not described here. Please refer to the EPIserver CMS documentation for editors and administrators available on [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com).

## The Page Tree Structure

When installing the EPIserver Commerce package with a sample site, a number of pages will be created and displayed in a specific structure in the page tree. Some of them will show editorial content. Other pages are used as containers for other pages. These will not display any content of their own and will be hidden in navigation menus.

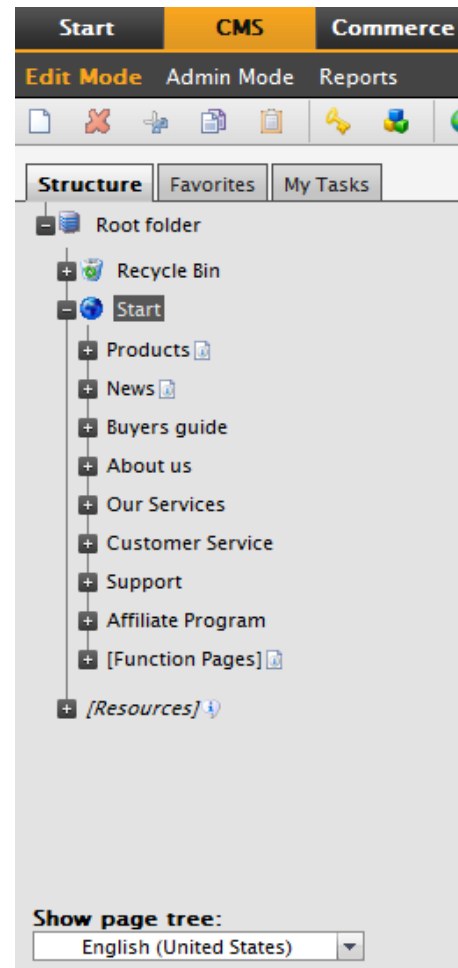
The Start page is built using the **Home** page type. The Start page contains numerous settings affecting the entire website, for instance top menus, search and login. This is also where you define pages to be used for shopping carts, payments and checkout.

Editorial content pages are most often based on the page type **Standard Page**. These are the pages where editors can create and edit content the usual way in EPiServer CMS. Examples of editorial content are the pages under the sections News, Get the Product and More Support.

The pages under the Products section, are based on a page type called **Product Listing**. These pages will provide the top menu of the website, based on what is listed under the Products page. The sort order of the Products page controls the order in which the menu items will be displayed.

The **[Function Pages]** section of the tree holds the display template for a number of typical functions such as My Account, My Cart, Wish List, Payment and Checkout. These have their own specific page types linking to functions in the Commerce Manager module.

The **[Resources]** section resides directly under the root page of the site. This part is used for the actual linking to the product catalog in Commerce Manager. The pages are based on the Product Listings page type and do not display any content.



## Start Page

The Start page is based on the **Home** page type and is normally defined when the website is installed. The page holds a number of settings with references to other pages on the website. The start page will most likely not be touched very often after the setup, but occasionally references pointing to pages defined here may need to be changed.

When you open the Start page for editing in Edit mode, you will find that the Start page itself does not have an editorial area, since the content displayed is made up of different types of listings. In addition to the standard tabs of EPiServer CMS, the Start page has a tab containing specific site configuration property settings.

### Content Tab

Below are the properties that can be changed in Edit mode under the **Content** tab of the Start page.

#### Name

The name of the page, as displayed in the page tree.

#### Fetch News list from

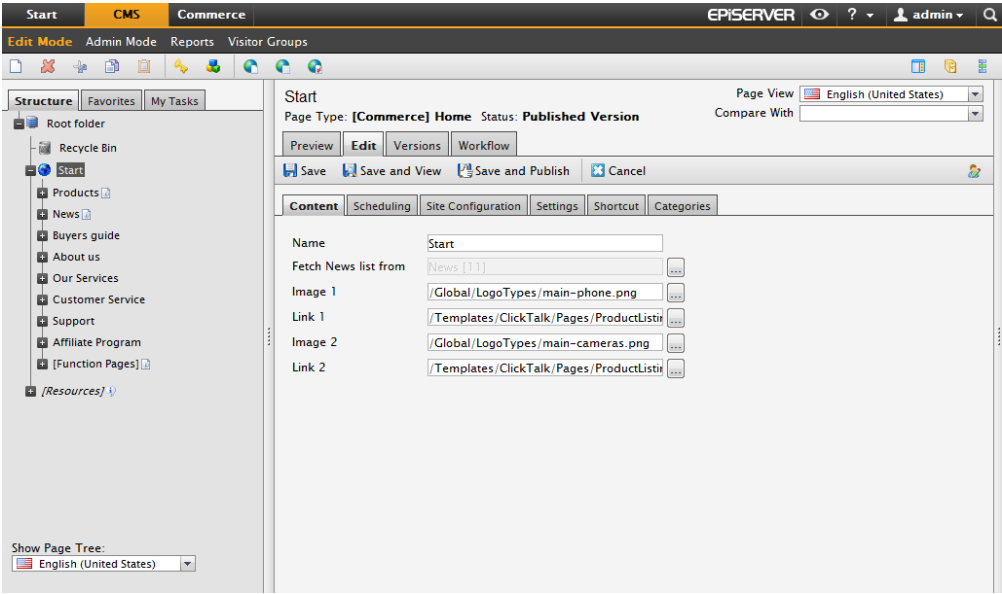
Defines the container page for the news item listing to be displayed in the mid-left information area of the start page.

Images

The start page has a top banner image. The image area has functionality for altering between a set of two images which can be defined here. Define images in the fields **Image 1/Image 2** to be displayed in the top banner area of the start page. Select images in the EPiServer CMS file manager.

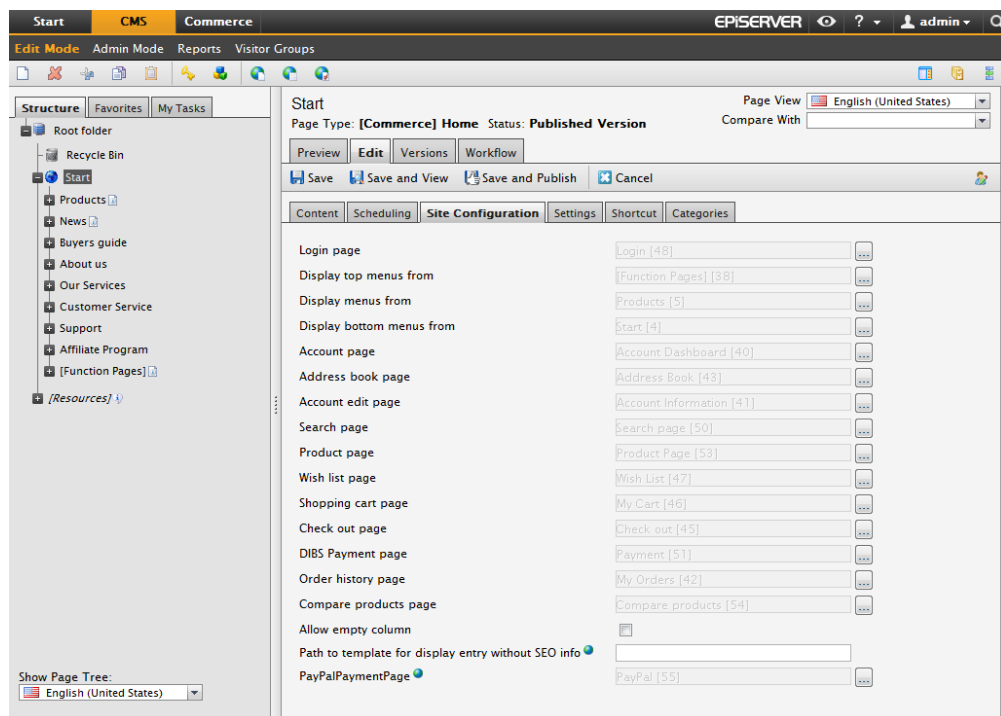
Links

In the fields **Link 1/Link 2** you can define links for each of the altering top banner images on the start page using the EPiServer CMS link dialog. The link will take the visitor to the specified URL when clicking on the top image of the start page.



Site Configuration Tab

The settings that are available under the **Site Configuration** tab when you edit the Start page, are common website configuration items that are defined as properties on the start page and will be inherited to the sub-pages. Most often these settings are defined when the website is installed but it may be necessary to update them at some point. Note that the function pages must be created first before defining them on the start page.



Open the Start page for editing in Edit mode, to change the settings for the different properties. Save and publish the page to update the settings.

#### Login page

Defines the login page to be used when visitors log in to the website. The login page itself has settings to define the account register and password recovery pages. Select the login page in the page tree structure to define it for the website.

#### Display top menus from

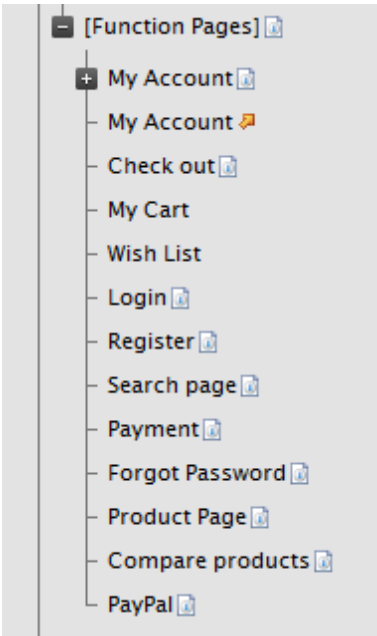
In this field you configure the menu at the **very top** of the website. In this example the menu contains functions My Account, My Cart and Wish, as well as Log in/out and the language and currency selector.

Log out | My Account | My Cart | Wish List | English (United States) ▼ | US dollar ▼

Links to the login page and the language selector will be displayed by default, but the other options are listed from the container page defined here. In this example, the container page is the page **[Function Pages]**. Under this page you create the other function pages such as My Account, Wish list etc.

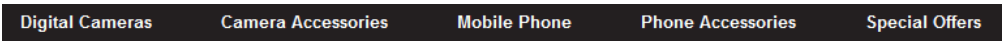
The order in which they are presented in the menu is set by the sort order of the [Function Pages] container page. Pages that are set not to be visible in menus, will not appear. Select the page in the page tree structure to define it.



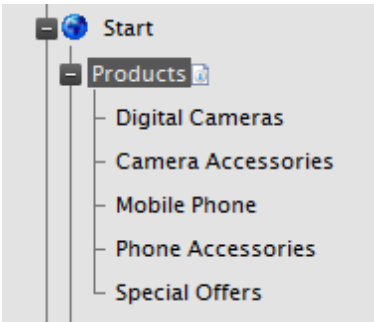


**Display menus from**

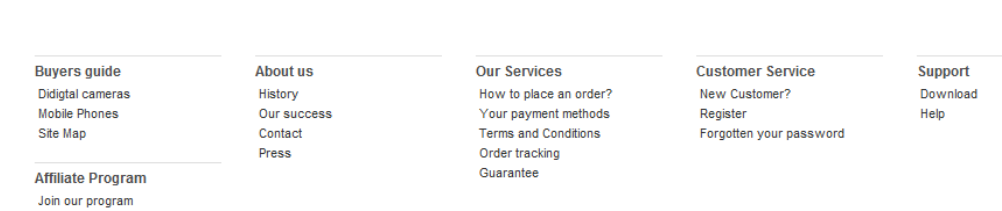
Displays the **main navigation menu** of the website.



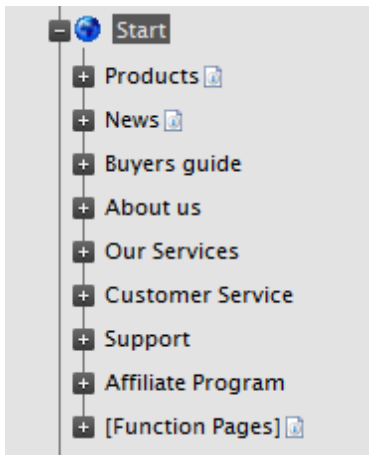
In this example, this information is collected from a container page named **Products**, which itself is not displayed in menus. The sub-pages consists of a number of selected product pages based on page type Product Listing. The order in which the pages are displayed in the menu is controlled by the sort order for the Product parent page, which in this case is set to be sorted according to sort index. Select the page in the page tree structure to define it.



**Display bottom menus from**



The start page contains a bottom section listing pages in five columns. The **Display bottom menus from** field defines from where the page listing will be fetched. In this example the listing will display pages and their one-level sub-pages under the start page. All pages will be listed except those that are set not to be displayed in menus.



In this example, the bottom menu listing will start with "Buyers guide", to be followed by "About us", "Our services" etc. Note that the listing will go from left to right to fill the columns. The order is controlled by the sort order of the start page, which is set to be sorted according to sort index in this case. The number of columns can be changed programatically in the **ColumnCount property**, default and maximum value is five. For additional information on this, please refer to the technical documentation for EPiServer Commerce available on [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com).

In the **Display bottom menus from** field, select the page in the page tree structure to define it.

#### Account page

This setting defines the **Account Dashboard** page to be used. This page displays a snapshot of recent account activities for a customer, and also provides possibility to update account information. Select the page in the page tree structure.

#### Address book page

This setting defines the address book page to be used when displaying a customers address information. Select the page in the page tree structure.

#### Account edit page

This setting defines the account edit page to be used when displaying a customers account details. Select the page in the page tree structure.

#### Search page

This setting defines the search page to be used on the website. Select the page in the page tree structure.

#### Product page

This setting defines the product page to be used when displaying details for a particular product. Select the page in the page tree structure to define it for the website. If you are using the EPiServer Commerce catalog page provider, the property setting here can be ignored.

#### Wish list page

This setting defines the wish list page to be used when displaying a customers wish list. Select the page in the page tree structure.

#### Shopping cart page

The page to be used when displaying a shopping cart. Select the page in the page tree structure.

**Check out page**

The page to be used when displaying the check out page for a customer. Select the page in the page tree structure.

**DIBS Payment page**

The page to be used when displaying a DIBS payment page. The page will process a DIBS payment through the DIBS payment gateway. Select the page in the page tree structure to set the payment page to be used.

**Order history page**

The page to be used when displaying the order history page for a customer. Select the page in the page tree structure.

**Compare products page**

This setting defines the page to be used when comparing products. This page provides functionality for displaying selected products next to each other for comparison. Select the page in the page tree structure.

**Allow empty column**

Check this field to allow empty columns to be displayed in the footer menu, in case a menu item does not have any sub-pages.

**Path to template for display entry without SEO info**

Enter a path for a display template to use for an entry that does not have any information for search engine optimization (SEO).

**PayPalPaymentPage**

The page to be used when displaying a PayPal payment page. PayPal is the default payment provider on the EPiServer Commerce sample site. Select the page in the page tree structure to set the payment page to be used.

The different pages and page types are described in more detail in other sections of this documentation.

**Standard Page**

The page type **Standard Page** in EPiServer Commerce is used for creating an ordinary information page. The Standard Page in the EPiServer Commerce sample site has some additional fields in comparison with a standard page in an ordinary EPiServer CMS sample site.

- The **Fetch left menu listing from** field, which allows editors to define which pages should be displayed in the left menu listing.

Select a page in the page tree from which to display the left side menu listing. If nothing is selected here, the left column will be empty.

- The **Select Product** field allows you to select a product from the product catalogue, to display the product content for that product.

Secondary body

Nullam venenatis fermentum elit et volutpat. Aliquam erat volutpat. Cras sollicitudin ligula a neque scelerisque faucibus. Duis accumsan dictum lorem, ut congue eros facilisis vitae. Phasellus eget felis id lectus mattis lacinia. Nulla adipiscing adipiscing nulla at vulputate. Vivamus nulla tellus, ornare in mollis vel, pretium at enim. Fusce iaculis, felis vel posuere auctor, massa magna accumsan felis, et ullamcorper odio diam et nulla. Nunc posuere est vitae libero elementum vel tempor ipsum tincidunt. Curabitur non ligula mauris. Vivamus placerat feugiat tortor ac molestie.

Path:

Writer

Fetch main listing from Products [5]

Display number of pages in the main list

Fetch left menu listing from Products [5]

Fetch secondary listing from

Display number of pages in the secondary list

Select Product

## Product Listing

The page type **Product Listing** is used for listing product information from the product catalog in Commerce Manager. The listing will be fetched from the selected product category (node) in the product catalog, for instance digital cameras as in this example. The listing will display a short product description with price as well as an image, for each of the products. There are four products listed side by side in a row.

The page functionality will also include a product compare option as well as an **Add to Cart** button for each product in the list. The product listings will appear when a visitor clicks on a product in the top menu. The listing will display 20 products at the time as default, and the listing can be sorted according to product name and price. The left column will display related product information, depending on the selected product category.





Digital Cameras Camera Accessories Mobile Phone Phone Accessories Special Offers

Start - Digital Cameras

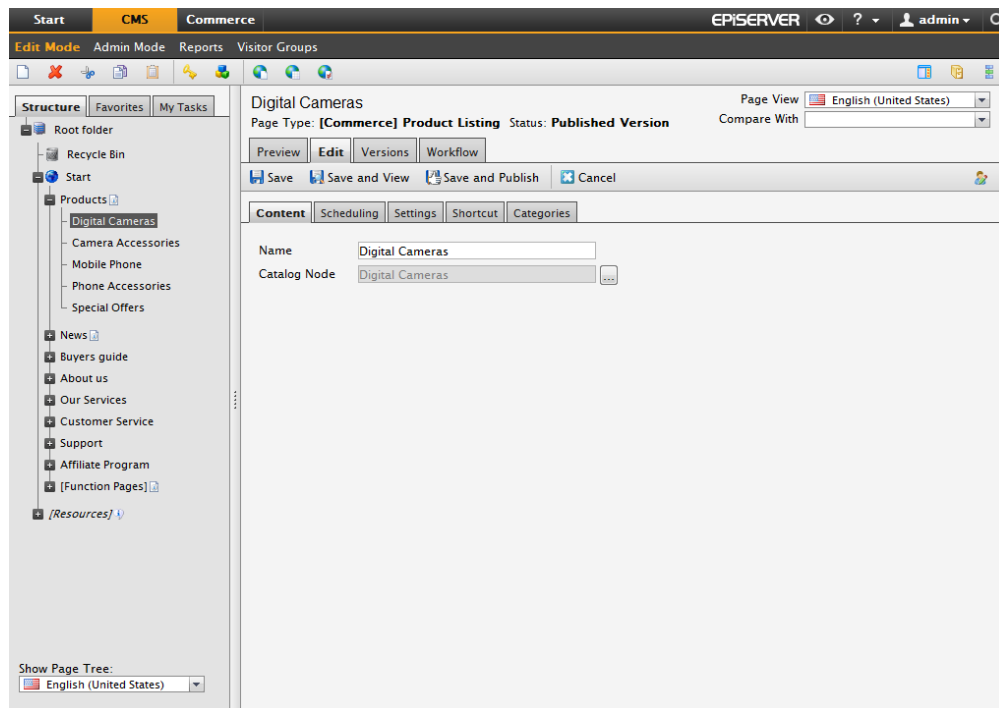
Shopping Options Sort By: Featured Products 1 - 20 of 304 View All (304) 1 2 3 4 5 >>

**BRAND**

- Canon (25)
- Sony (36)
- Pentax (37)
- Olympus (13)
- Fuji (64)
- Sandisk (14)
- Transcend (6)
- Targus (8)
- Lexar (7)
- Kingston (4)
- Viking (7)
- Simpletech (6)
- Energizer (6)
- Digipower (5)
- Nikon (3)
- Epson (5)
- Adobe (5)
- Kodak (4)
- Apple (2)

 <p><b>Add To Cart</b> <input type="checkbox"/> COMPARE</p> <p><a href="#">+ Wish List</a></p> <p><b>\$449.99</b></p> <p><b>Canon</b></p> <p>Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom</p>	 <p><b>Add To Cart</b> <input type="checkbox"/> COMPARE</p> <p><a href="#">+ Wish List</a></p> <p><b>\$3,999.00</b></p> <p><b>Davis &amp; Sanford</b></p> <p>Vista Explorer 60" Lightweight Tripod with Tripod Bag</p>	 <p><b>Add To Cart</b> <input type="checkbox"/> COMPARE</p> <p><a href="#">+ Wish List</a></p> <p><b>\$3,999.00</b></p> <p><b>Canon</b></p> <p>Canon LAH-DC20 Conversion Lens Adapter (LA-DC58E) and Hood (LH-DC40) Set for the S5 IS, S3 IS &amp; S2 IS Digital Camera</p>	 <p><b>Add To Cart</b> <input type="checkbox"/> COMPARE</p> <p><a href="#">+ Wish List</a></p> <p><b>\$149.99</b></p> <p><b>Canon</b></p> <p>Canon TC-DC58B Tele Converter Lens for S5 IS, S3 IS &amp; S2 IS Digital Camera</p>
--	--	--	--

To define a product listing, create a page based on the page type **Product Listing** and select the desired product category (node) in the **Catalog node name** field. The categories (nodes) available here are collected from the [Resources] section in the page tree structure which is set up at installation. This in turn reflects what is defined in the product catalog in Commerce Manager.

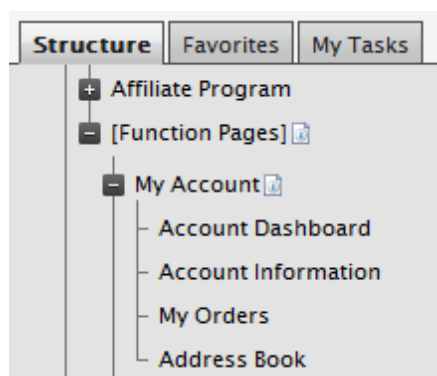


## Function Pages

Function pages is a collection of pages holding typical e-commerce functionality such as account, shopping cart, check out and payment information. Many of these features are personal and connected to a specific customer account. The function pages also include general features such as login, search and registration.

### My Account Pages

In the sample site, the account information is gathered under the **My Account** page under the **[Function Pages]** branch of the page tree. The **My Account** page is a container page holding a number of sub-pages.



These sub-pages are based on specific page types with functionality for extracting personal customer information from the customer management part of Commerce Manager. The page types hold no editorial information of their own. After they have been created they will be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

## Account Dashboard

The **Account Dashboard** page type provides an overview of the personal account information collected from various parts of the system. Information about recent orders are displayed, together with billing and shipping address information. Contact and password information can also be reached from here for editing. The left column displays the sub-pages under the **My Account** container page.

Start - Account Dashboard

### Account Dashboard

Hello, Carlos!

From your My Account Dashboard you have the ability to view a snapshot of your recent account activity and update your account information. Select a link below to view or edit information.

**Recent Orders** | [view all](#)

ORDER ID	CREATED	SHIP TO	TOTAL	STATUS	
PO4563	June 16, 2011	Carlos Nevada	\$19.99	InProgress	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>
PO14184	June 23, 2011	Carlos	\$418.99	InProgress	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>

**Account Information**

[Contact Information](#) | [edit](#)

Carlos Nevada  
carlos@somemail.com

[Change Password](#)

**Address Book** | [manage addresses](#)

**Default Billing Address**

*You have not set a primary billing address.*

**Default Shipping Address**

*You have not set a primary shipping address.*

When created, the **Account Dashboard** page is defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

## Account Information

From the **Account Information** page type a customer can update the user name, e-mail address and password for the account.

Welcome, Store!

Log out | My Account | My Cart | Wish List | English (United States) | US dollar

**CLICK+TALK** | Your Shopping Basket | Search

Digital Cameras | Camera Accessories | Mobile Phone | Phone Accessories | Special Offers

Start - Account Information

### Edit Account Information

Account Information

\* User Name: admin

\* First Name:  ✓

\* Last Name:  ✓

\* Email Address:  ✓

Change Password:

Save

My Account

- Account Dashboard
- Account Information
- My Orders
- Address Book

Buyers guide | About us | Our Services | Customer Service | Support

Digital cameras | History | How to place an order? | New Customer? | Download

Mobile Phones | Our success | Your payment methods | Register | Help

Site Map | Contact | Terms and Conditions | Forgotten your password

When created, the **Account Information** page is defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

#### Account My Orders

The purpose of the **Account My Orders** page type is to display the order history for an account. The information is collected from the customer management part of Commerce Manager.

Welcome, Store!

Log out | My Account | My Cart | Wish List | English (United States) | US dollar

**CLICK+TALK** | Your Shopping Basket | Search

Digital Cameras | Camera Accessories | Mobile Phone | Phone Accessories | Special Offers

Start - My Orders

### Order History

ORDER ID	CREATED	SHIP TO	TOTAL	STATUS	
PO2654	June 02, 2010	Kalle Andersson	\$8,208.44	Shipped	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>
PO13145	June 03, 2010	Manager	\$369.99	NewOrder	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>
PO20804	June 07, 2010	Manager	\$4,373.94	Submitted	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>
PO22369	June 08, 2010		\$389.98	NewOrder	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>
PO27522	June 11, 2010		\$12,262.98	NewOrder	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>
PO33568	June 15, 2010		\$1,434.44	NewOrder	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>
PO60805	June 16, 2010	Manager	\$324.99	NewOrder	<a href="#">View Order</a>   <a href="#">Reorder</a>

My Account

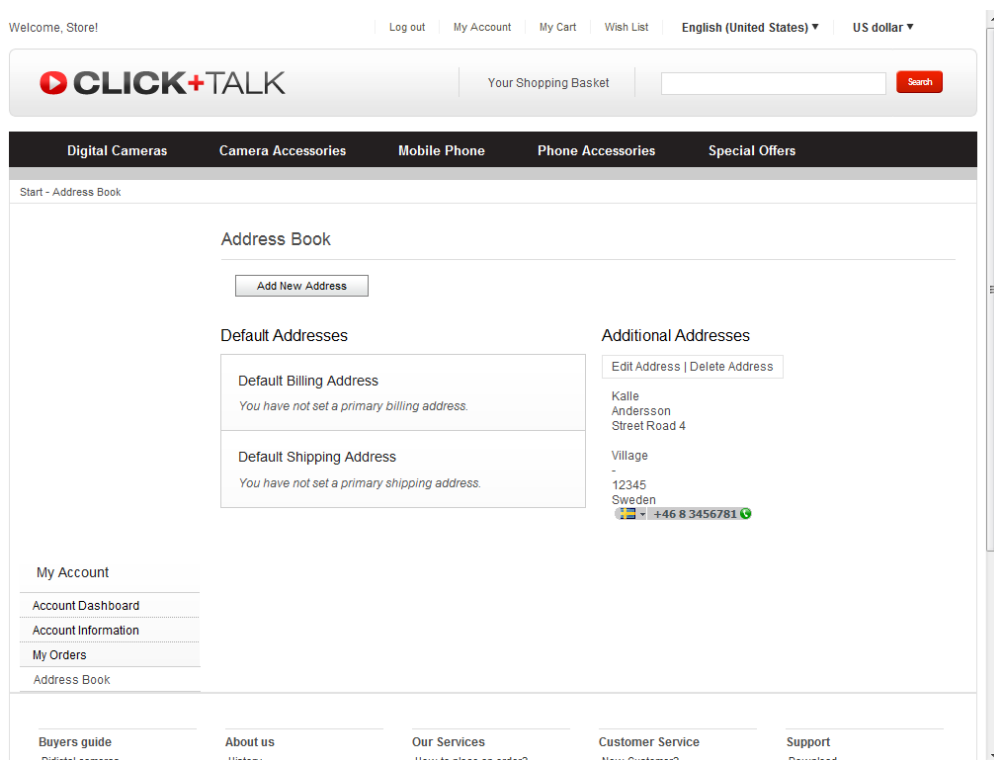
- Account Dashboard
- Account Information
- My Orders
- Address Book

Buyers guide | About us | Our Services | Customer Service | Support

When created, the **Account My Orders** page is defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

## Account Address Book

The **Account Address Book** page type holds functionality for displaying and updating address information for an account. The information is collected from the customer management part of Commerce Manager.



When created, the **Account Address Book** page is defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

## Check Out

The purpose of the **Check Out** page type is to display the steps of the check out procedure when a customer wants to finalize a purchase. The check out procedure is initiated when the customer selects the **Proceed to checkout** option for instance from the **Shopping Cart** view. The functionality of the page is linked to the payment and shipping options defined in Commerce Manager.

The checkout procedure may look different depending on payment and shipping options defined in the system. In this example the checkout procedure has four steps: Shipping Address, Shipping Options, Payment Options and Order Confirmation.



## Step 1: Shipping Address

Log in My Account My Cart Wish List English (United States) US dollar

**CLICK+TALK** 1 item(s) in your cart Search

Digital Cameras Camera Accessories Mobile Phone Phone Accessories Special Offers

Start - Check out

1 Shipping Address 2 Shipping Options 3 Payment Options 4 Order Confirmation

**Shipping Address**

\* FIRST NAME: Mary ✓  
 \* LAST NAME: Smith ✓  
 \* STREET ADDRESS: 1 First Street ✓  
 \* CITY: Santa Monica ✓  
 \* COUNTRY: United States ✓  
 \* STATE/PROVINCE: California ✓  
 \* ZIP: 81823 ✓  
 \* DAY PHONE: 8181234567 ✓  
 EVENING PHONE:  
 FAX:

Proceed To Shipping Options

The customer enters name, address and contact details, if these are not already registered in the system. If they are, there will be an option to update the existing information. Clicking on **Proceed To Shipping Options** will take the customer to step two in the process.

## Step 2: Shipping Options

Log in My Account My Cart Wish List English (United States) US dollar

**CLICK+TALK** 1 item(s) in your cart Search

Digital Cameras Camera Accessories Mobile Phone Phone Accessories Special Offers

Start - Check out

1 Shipping Address 2 Shipping Options 3 Payment Options 4 Order Confirmation

**Shipping Options**

Shipping to	Shipping Options
Mary Smith	<input checked="" type="radio"/> \$10.00 - Fixed Shipping Rate <input type="radio"/> \$2.00 - Ground Shipping
1 First Street	
Santa Monica, California 81823	Description
United States	\$449.99
8181234567	1 of Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom

<< Back Proceed to Payment

The customer selects the desired shipping options. The contact details from the previous step are displayed in the left column, and there is a possibility to back to the previous step to update any information. Clicking on **Proceed To Payment** will take the customer to step three in the process.

### Step 3: Payment Options

Payment Options

1 Shipping Address2 Shipping Options3 **Payment Options**4 Order Confirmation

Email Address

Notification about your order will be sent to this email address.

\* Email Address:

New Billing Address

\* FIRST NAME:

\* LAST NAME:

\* STREET ADDRESS:

\* CITY:

COUNTRY:

\* STATE/PROVINCE:

\* ZIP:

\* DAY PHONE:

EVENING PHONE:

FAX:

Payment Options

☒ Pay by credit card (DIBS)  
You will be redirected to DIBS to make payment.

☐ Data Cash

☐ Pay by PayPal Express

☐ Pay By Credit Card

☐ Pay By Phone

<< Back

Review & Place Order

The customer enters the billing address, if this is not already in the system. The desired payment option is selected. Here there is a possibility to back to the previous steps. Clicking on **Review & Place Order** will take the customer to step four in the process.

## Step 4: Order Confirmation

Order Confirmation
1 Shipping Address
2 Shipping Options
3 Payment Options
4 Order Confirmation

Shipping Address

1 package via Fixed Shipping Rate

Mary Smith  
1 First Street  
  
Santa Monica, California 81823  
United States  
8181234567

Order Email
mary.smith@email2.com

Items Ordered	Total
1 of Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom	\$449.99
Discount:	\$0.00
Item(s) Subtotal:	\$449.99
Shipping & Handling:	\$10.00
	-----
Total for this Shipment:	\$459.99

Billing Address

Method: Pay By Phone

Mary Smith  
1 First Street  
  
Santa Monica, California 81823  
United States  
8181234567

Subtotal:	\$449.99
Discount:	\$0.00
Taxes:	\$0.00
Shipping & Handling:	\$10.00
	-----
TOTAL:	\$459.99

<< Back
Place Order

Step four provides a possibility to review the order details including pricing information before the order is submitted. Details from previous steps are displayed with the possibility to back to previous steps. Clicking on **Place Order** will submit the order to the system and initiate the order management procedures.

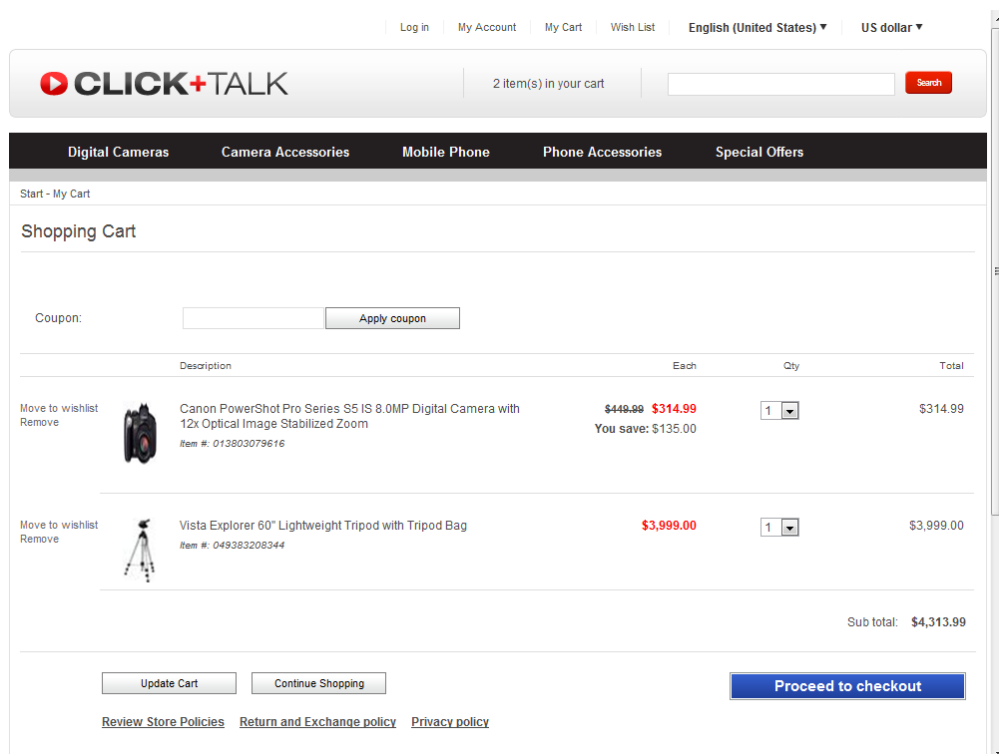
The **Check Out** page is created in Edit mode and then defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

For more information on different payment providers in EPiServer Commerce, please refer to the *Payment Providers section*.

## Shopping Cart

The purpose of the **Shopping Cart** page type is to display product items that a customer have added to the personal shopping cart. The page also provides functionality for changing the quantity of items as well as removing items from the list or moving them to the wish list. The **Apply coupon** option will apply any discount from a selection of related discount options from the system.

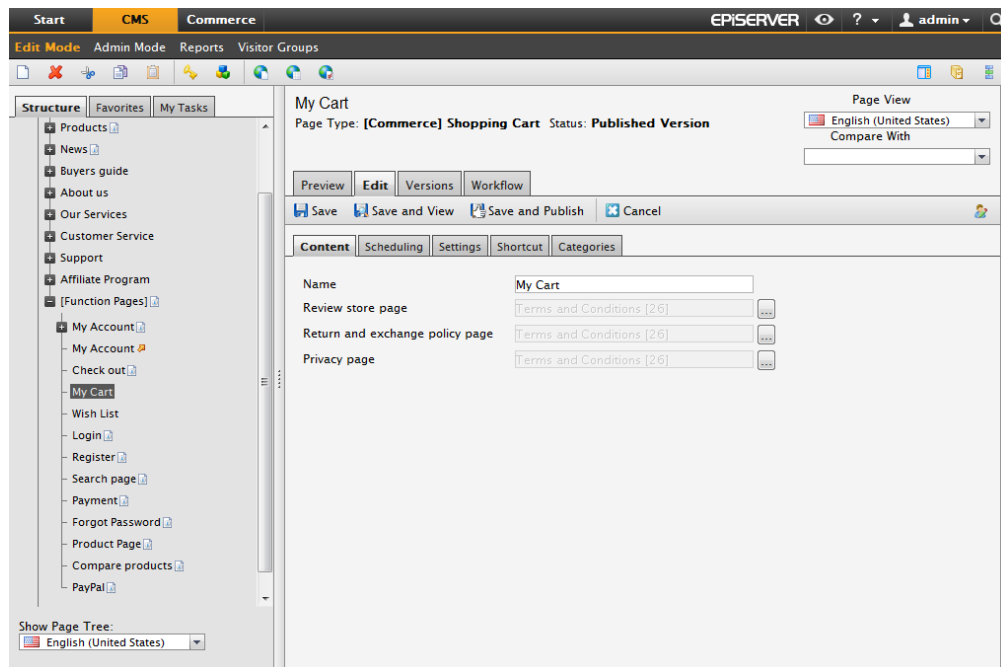
When the shopping cart information has been changed, clicking the **Update Cart** option will cause the pricing information to be recalculated based on the new information. Clicking the **Continue Shopping** option takes the customer back to the product page last visited.



General information regarding store and privacy policies are also defined on the **Shopping Cart** page type for this sample site. This information will be displayed as default links on the Shopping Cart page, to be visible before the customer proceeds to checkout.

Open the Shopping Cart page in Edit mode to define the following:

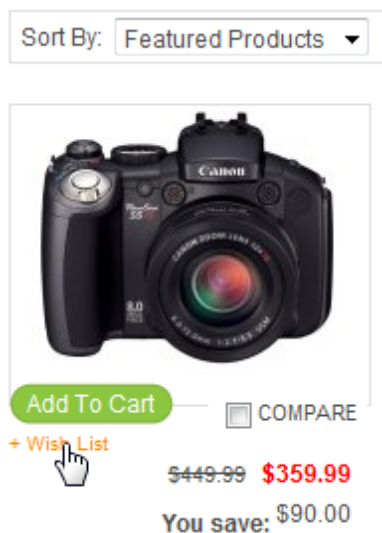
- The **Review store page**. Page describing the general store policy. Create the page (page type Standard Page) and select it in the page tree.
- The **Return and exchange policy page**. Page describing the general return and exchange policy. Create the page (page type Standard Page) and select it in the page tree.
- The **Privacy page**. Page describing the general privacy policy for personal information stored on the site. Create the page (page type Standard Page) and select it in the page tree.



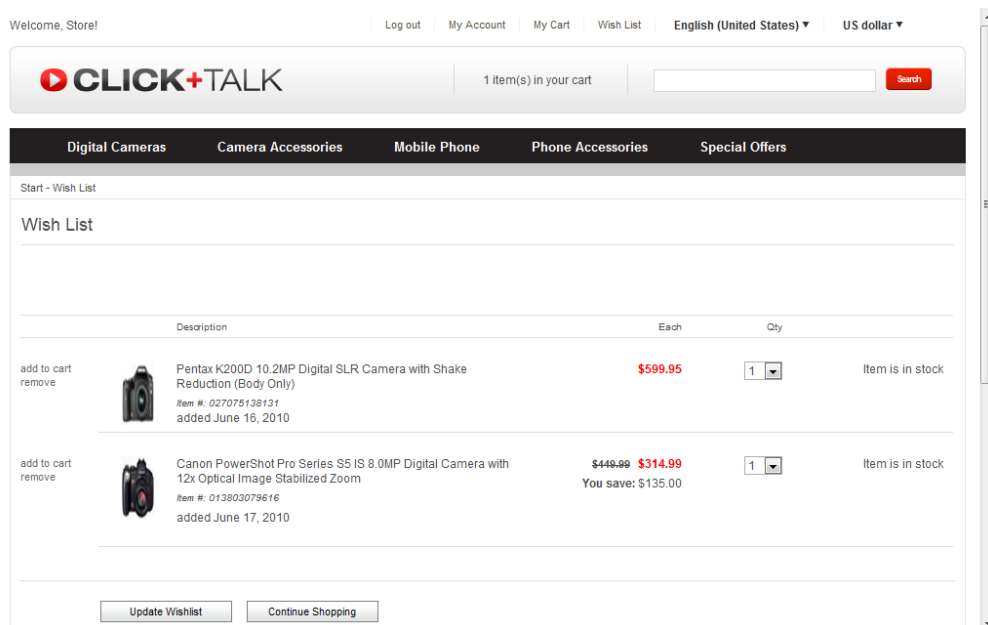
When created, the **Shopping Cart** page is defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

## Wish List

The **Wish List** page functionality displays product items in a personal wish list for a customer. The items are added to the list when the customer clicks on the **Wish List** option for a product.



The wish list itself is accessed when clicking on the **Wish List** option in the menu on the very top of the page.



When created, the **Wish List** page is defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

## Login

The purpose of the **Login** page is to provide a login possibility for registered customers of the e-commerce website. The user provides a user name or e-mail address as well as a password, and then clicks **Log in**. When the login details are accepted the user is taken to the **Account Dashboard** displaying an overview of the current account information.

The **Login** page also has functionality for password recovery. When clicking on the **Forgot your password?** option, the user will be taken to the **Forgot Password** page of the website.

The Login page is also the entrance for new registration of new customers to the site. Clicking on the **Create a New account** will take the user to the **Register** page of the website, for creation of a new account.

When opening the **Login** page in Edit mode, you can define the **Password recovery page** and the **Register page** by selecting the appropriate pages in the page tree structure. Naturally these pages must be created before you can configure them here.

When created, the **Login** page is defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

## Register

The **Register** page type provides the possibility to create new customer accounts on the website. Personal and login information such as name, e-mail and password is entered by the user, and by clicking **Register** the account is created and the account details are saved in the customer database of Commerce Manager. Later on additional information such as billing and shipping address can be added.

When created in Edit mode, the **Register** page is defined in the **Login** page of the website.

### Search

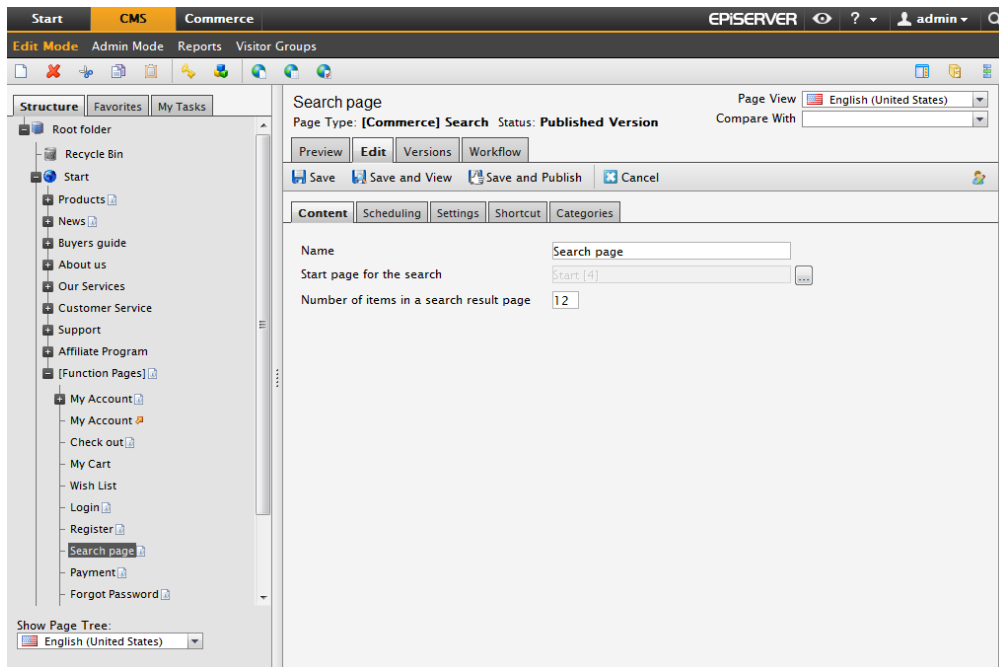
The **Search page** type is used for displaying the results of a product search performed on the website. The matching search hits are shown in a listing with rows of four product items. Product details are displayed, with the possibility to add items to the shopping cart, or select items for comparison. The number of matching hits listed on a search result page can be customized. Clicking on an item will display the full product information page.

In Edit mode, the following properties are set in the **Search page** page type:

- The **Start page for the search**. Select a page in the page tree to define where the search should begin, often this will be the start page of the website.



- The **Number of items in a search result page**. Set a number to define the number of matching hits listed on a search result page.



When created, the **Search page** is defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

### Payment

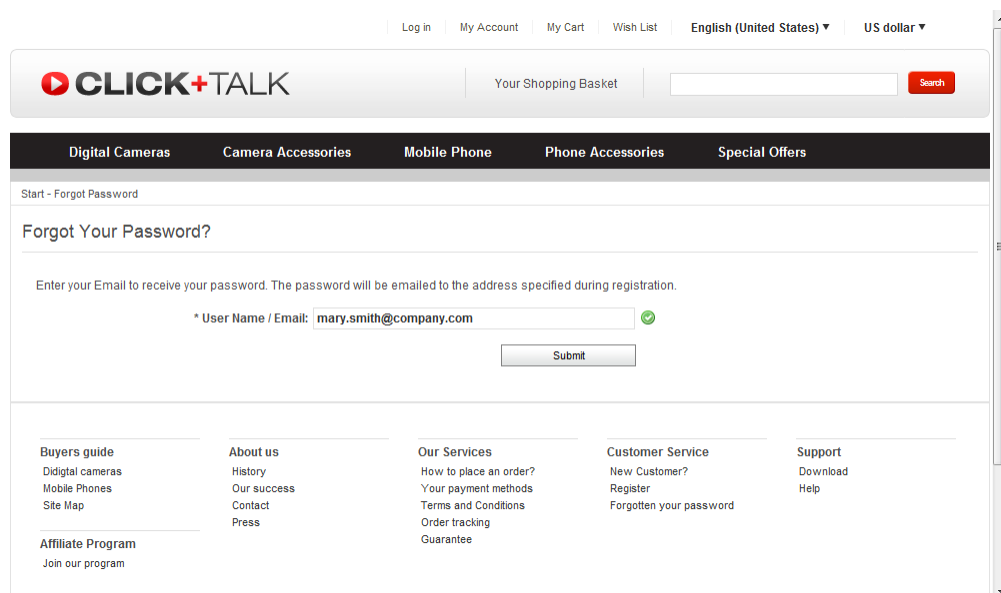
The purpose of the **Payment** page is to link to the appropriate payment procedure when finalizing a purchase in the checkout process. There are many different payment methods to use in different markets, and the payment gateways of e-commerce websites are often parts that are highly customized.

Payment methods are set up under application configuration for payment gateways in Commerce Manager. The **Payment** page functionality is linked to the corresponding payment method. Other payment methods may be payment by phone or by credit card.

The **Payment** page is created in Edit mode and then defined under the *site configuration setting of the start page*. Several payment methods may apply on an e-commerce website. The default payment provider for the EPiServer Commerce sample site is PayPal Express. Find out more in the *Payment Providers section*.

### Forgot Password

The purpose of the **Forgot Password** page is to provide possibility for registered users to retrieve lost passwords. The user will enter the e-mail address that is registered in the system to receive a new password set by the system.



Log in | My Account | My Cart | Wish List | English (United States) ▼ | US dollar ▼

**CLICK+TALK** | Your Shopping Basket |

Digital Cameras | Camera Accessories | Mobile Phone | Phone Accessories | Special Offers

Start - Forgot Password

### Forgot Your Password?

Enter your Email to receive your password. The password will be emailed to the address specified during registration.

\* User Name / Email:

**Buyers guide**  
 Digital cameras  
 Mobile Phones  
 Site Map

**Affiliate Program**  
 Join our program

**About us**  
 History  
 Our success  
 Contact  
 Press

**Our Services**  
 How to place an order?  
 Your payment methods  
 Terms and Conditions  
 Order tracking  
 Guarantee

**Customer Service**  
 New Customer?  
 Register  
 Forgotten your password

**Support**  
 Download  
 Help

When created in Edit mode, the **Forgot Password** page is defined on *the Login page of the website*.

### Product Page

The **Product Page** is a central page type on this type of site, since this is used for displaying product details and related information. The page template will display selected product information such as display name and description and item number, from the product catalog of Commerce Manager. This information is shown in the central part of the page.


The rest of the page is built up displaying other information related to the product. The information is selected based on type of product and meta data available in the product catalog. Stock status information for the product item is displayed. From here the customer has the option to add selected numbers of the item to the shopping cart, or to the wish list.

Welcome, Store! [Log out](#) [My Account](#) [My Cart](#) [Wish List](#) [English \(United States\)](#) [US dollar](#)

**CLICK+TALK** 1 item(s) in your cart

[Digital Cameras](#) [Camera Accessories](#) [Mobile Phone](#) [Phone Accessories](#) [Special Offers](#)

Start - Digital Cameras - Canon PowerShot SX100IS 8MP Digital Camera with 10x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom (Silver)



**Canon**




**Canon PowerShot SX100IS 8MP Digital Camera with 10x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom (Silver)**

**\$487.46**

Item Number: 013803084146 Usually Ships in 24 Hours ☐ Compare


**Compare Products**  
You have no items to compare.

**Related Products and Accessories**

	<b>DigiPower</b> DigiPower DPS-3000+ 3-Hour AA/AAA Rechargeable Battery Kit with 4 AA 2700 mAh Batteries and Car Charger	\$2,999.00
	<b>Canon</b> Canon ACK-800 AC Adapter for A310, A430, A520, A530, A540, A700, A710, A720IS & SX100IS iSDigital Cameras	\$4,900.00
	<b>DigiPower</b> DigiPower DPS-5000 1 Hour AA/AAA Rechargeable Battery Kit with 4 AA 2700 mAh Batteries	\$3,499.00


Item is in stock [Add to Wishlist](#)

**You May Also Like...**



**Sony**  
Sony Quick Battery Charger with 4 AA Ni-MH Rechargeable Batteries

**\$2,999.00**



**Canon**  
Canon PSC-100 Digital Camera Case

**\$1,999.00**

The **Product Page** page type is linked to the information stored about the product in the product database. For instance, information such as name, code, catalog image, and display price is collected from the Commerce Manager product catalog.

Start [CMS](#) [Commerce](#) **EPISERVER** [admin](#)

[Commerce Manager](#) [Settings](#)

**EPISERVER COMMERCE** Variation/SKU Edit

Welcome, admin  
Product Version: 5.2 (build: 204)  
License: ECF G5 Deployment (EpiServer)

[Welcome](#) [Change Language](#) [About](#) [Get Help For This Page](#)

**Catalog Management**

- Catalog Management
  - Catalog Entry Search
  - Catalog Batch Update
  - Catalogs
    - Everything
    - Mobile Phones & Plans
    - Digital Downloads
    - Digital Cameras
    - Camera Accessories
    - Daily Specials
    - Brands
    - Templates
- Dashboard
- Customer Management
- Catalog Management
- Order Management
- Marketing
- Asset Management
- Reporting
- Administration

**Overview** [Pricing/Inventory](#) [SEO](#) [Associations](#) [Assets](#) [Relations](#)

Name: Canon PowerShot SX100IS 8MP Digital Camera

Available from: 8/24/2008 03:31 PM

Expires on: 8/25/2018 03:31 PM

Display Template: Digital Camera Template

Code: 013803084146

Sort Order: 0

The sort order for the category entry.

Available: ☒ Yes ☐ No


Meta Class: Digital Cameras

Display Name (en-us): Canon PowerShot SX100IS 8MP Digital Camera with 10x Optical Im

Display Name (de-de): Canon Powershot SX100 IS (8 Megapixel, 10-fach opt. Zoom, 2,5"

Display Name (es-es):

Primary Image (en-us):



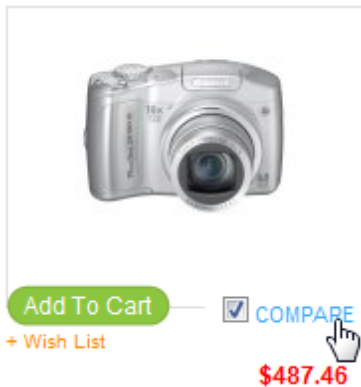
☐ Delete Picture

Description:




When created, the **Product page** is defined in the *site configuration setting* of the start page.

## Products Compare

The **Products Compare** page type holds functionality for displaying selected products for comparison. The customer selects the desired products by marking the check box next to each product, and then clicks the Compare option.



The selected products are listed next to each other together with related product features, for easy overview and comparison. A product can be removed from the comparison list, or added to the shopping cart or the wish list. The selected products will remain for display on the compared products page until they are removed or a new product selection is done by the customer.

Digital Cameras	Camera Accessories	Mobile Phone	Phone Accessories	Special Offers
Start - Compare products				
Compare products				
Digital Cameras				
	 <div>           Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom         </div> <div> <b>\$449.99</b> </div> <div> <a href="#">Add to Cart</a> </div> <div> <a href="#">Add to Wishlist</a> </div>	 <div>           Canon PowerShot SX100IS 8MP Digital Camera with 10x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom (Silver)         </div> <div> <b>\$487.46</b> </div> <div> <a href="#">Add to Cart</a> </div> <div> <a href="#">Add to Wishlist</a> </div>	 <div>           Canon PowerShot Pro Series S3 IS 6MP with 12x Image Stabilized Zoom         </div> <div> <b>\$449.99</b> </div> <div> <a href="#">Add to Cart</a> </div> <div> <a href="#">Add to Wishlist</a> </div>	
Display Name	Canon PowerShot Pro Series S5 IS 8.0MP Digital Camera with 12x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom	Canon PowerShot SX100IS 8MP Digital Camera with 10x Optical Image Stabilized Zoom (Silver)	Canon PowerShot Pro Series S3 IS 6MP with 12x Image Stabilized Zoom	
Brand	Canon	Canon	Canon	
Red Eye Reduction	True	True	True	

The **Products Compare** page type holds no information of its own so it has no editor field. When the product compare page has been created, it will be defined in the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

## PayPal

The purpose of the **PayPal** page type is to link to the PayPal payment procedure when finalizing a purchase in the checkout process. The PayPal payment gateway is the default payment provider in the EPiServer Commerce sample site. When created, the **PayPal** page is defined in the **PayPalPaymentPage** field of the *site configuration setting of the start page*.

There are many different payment methods to use in different markets. Please refer to the *Payment Providers* section to find out more about the different payment gateways for EPiServer Commerce.

## Tools and Plug-ins

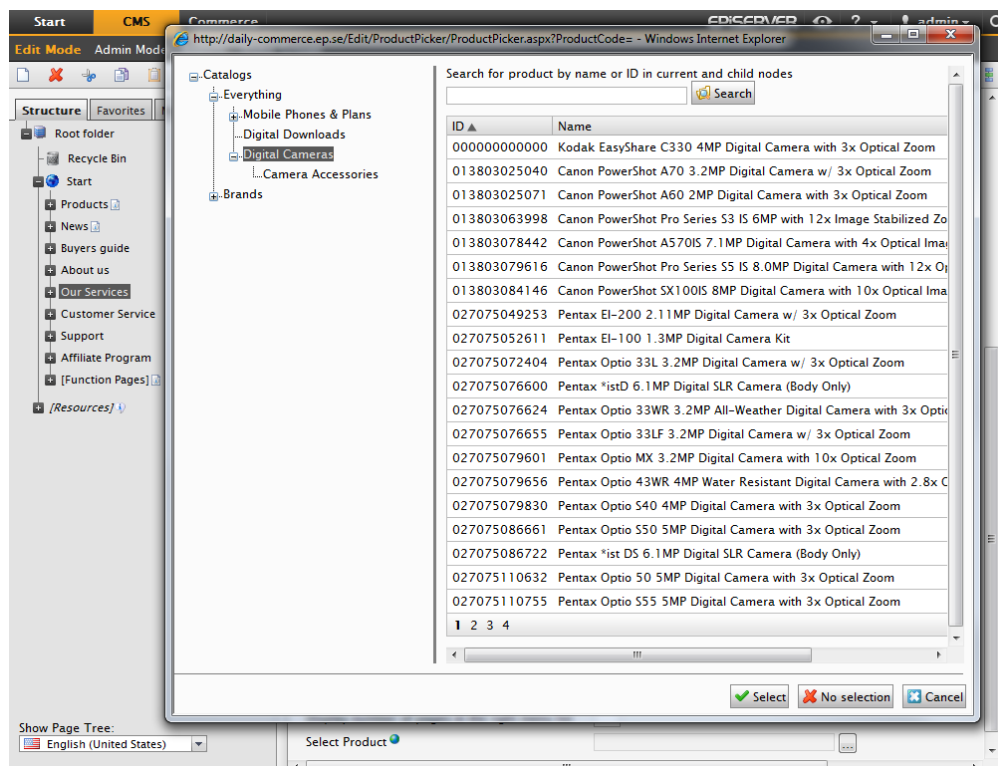
In this section we describe a number of tools and plug-ins for EPiServer Commerce. These are for example a plug-in for the EPiServer CMS Editor making it possible to select product details directly from the product catalog. The plug-ins described here are all included by default in the EPiServer Commerce sample site.

### Product Picker Property

The **Product Picker Property** is a property which can be included in any EPiServer CMS 6 page template. The property will add a field making it possible for editors to select products from the product catalog, to be displayed in an EPiServer CMS content page, using a predefined display template of your choice. The product information will be fetched from the product catalog. Please refer to the *EPiServer Commerce technical documentation* for information on how to add the Product Picker property plug-in to a page template. Here we describe how Product Picker works in the standard page of a sample installation of EPiServer Commerce.

#### Displaying Product Information in a Page

1. Open an standard content page for editing in Edit mode.
2. In the **Select Product** field, click the selection button. The product picker dialog will open. When you expand the catalog tree on the left, related products will be displayed. You can browse the structure and select products. The product display can be sorted by clicking on product **ID** or **Name**. You can also search for a product by entering free text or product ID. Select a product in the list and click **Select**.
3. Save your changes. The selected product will be linked to the page and displayed in the page using the display template that has been defined.



### Removing Product Information in a Page

Do the following to remove product information inserted with the Product Picker.

1. Open an standard content page for editing in Edit mode.
2. In the **Select Product** field, click the selection button.
3. In the product picker dialog, select **No selection** to remove an existing product link.
4. Save your changes. The product information will be removed from the page.

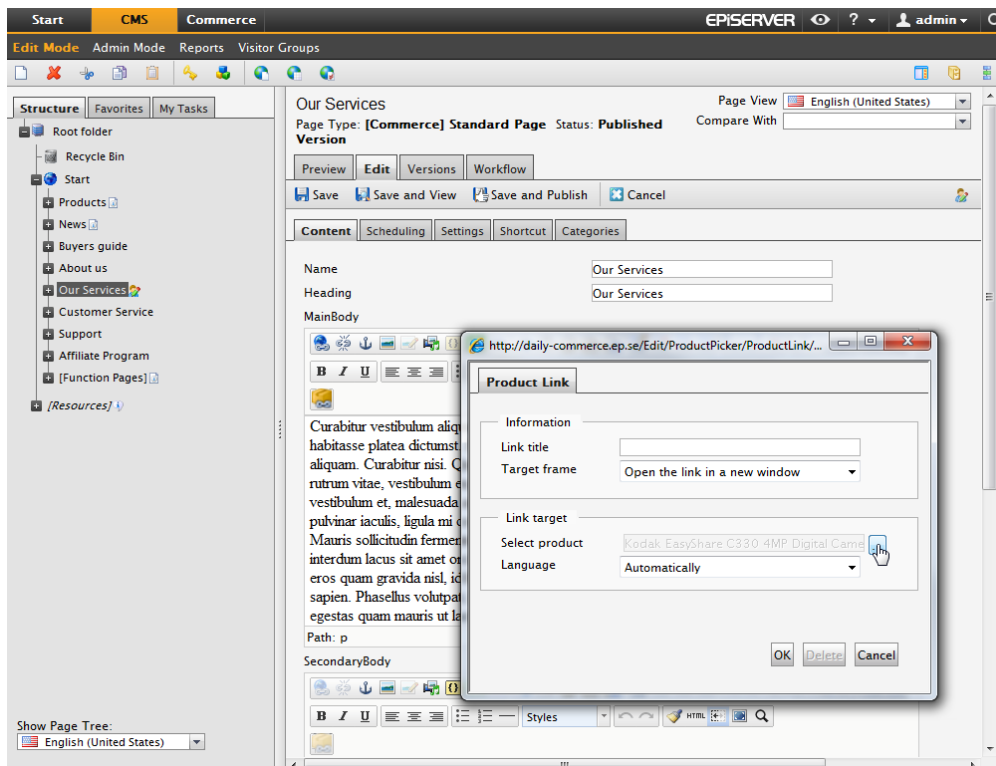
### Product Link Tool

The **Product Link Tool** is a plug-in to the EPiServer CMS 6 Editor. The tool adds a new function to the toolbar allowing an editor to link content to products in the product catalog in Commerce Manager. When the link is clicked on, the visitor will be transferred to the product page "view mode" for that product.

#### Adding a Product Link

You can add product links to text, files or images in an EPiServer CMS page.

1. In **Edit** mode, select the text, files or images where you want to add a link to a product page in the product catalog.
2. Select the **Insert/edit Product Link** tool in the toolbar of the Editor.
3. In the **Select Product** field, you will be able to access products in the product catalog of Commerce Manager. When you expand the catalog tree on the left, related products will be displayed. You can browse the structure and select products. The product display can be sorted by clicking on product **ID** or **Name**. You can also search for a product by entering free text or product ID. Select a product in the list and click **Select**.
4. In the **Language** field you can choose to select the desired language version for the product page, or let the system decide by selecting **Automatically**.
5. Enter the details for the link such as title and target frame, just as you would for any link in EPiServer CMS. Click **OK**.
6. The product link will be displayed in the Editor.



EPiServer Commerce supports permanent links, meaning that when a product is renamed the URL will be remembered and will not be broken.

### Editing a Product Link

1. Select the link and choose the **Insert/edit Product Link** tool in the toolbar. This will open the **Product Link** dialog.
2. Edit the link options as desired and click **OK** to save your changes.

### Removing a Product Link

Select the link and click the **Unlink** tool in the Editor toolbar. This will remove the link from the selected text.



The tool buttons in the editor toolbar can be customized, for instance you can change the grouping and orders of the buttons. This is done from the EPiServer CMS administration interface and is described in the *Configuring the HTML Editor* section of the *EPiServer CMS user documentation*.

## Product Dynamic Content

The **Product Picker Dynamic Content** function is used for displaying products as dynamic content. In Edit mode in EPiServer CMS, the editor can use the function to display product information from the product catalog. This adds to the many possibilities with dynamic content, where you can reuse and display content in multiple places on the website, but will only need to update the information in one location.

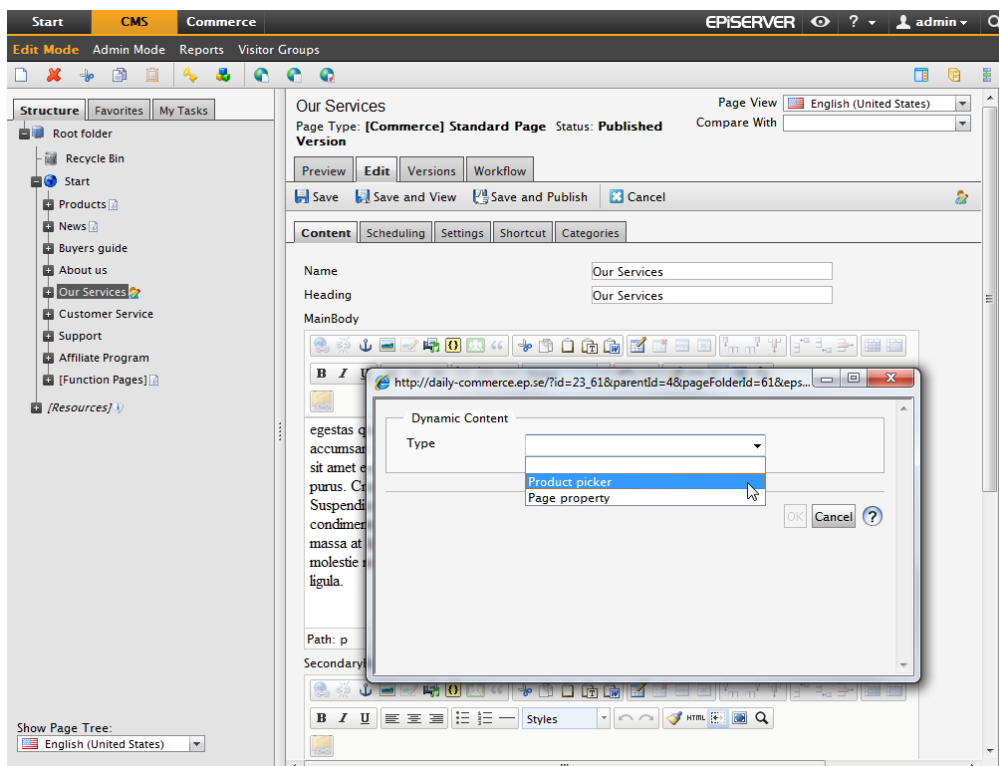
### Adding Product Information as Dynamic Content

Do the following to add product information as dynamic content to a page:

1. Open the page for editing in **Edit** mode and place the cursor in the editor where you want to add the information.
2. Select the **Dynamic Content** tool in the toolbar.
3. Select **Product picker** in the **Select plug-in** field. The product picker fields will appear in the **Settings** section.
4. In the **Select product** field, click the button to select a product from the Commerce Manager product catalog.

The product picker dialog will appear, and you can select a product or a product category by expanding the product category tree, or searching in the search field. Select the desired product and click **Select**.

5. The product display template is defined in the **Select display path** (can be changed here if needed).
6. Click **OK**. A dynamic content box will appear in the editor. Save your changes and view the result in preview or view mode.



You can also personalize dynamic content, and display customized information to different visitor groups. Find out more under the *Personalization* section.

### Editing Dynamic Content for a Product

Do the following to edit dynamic content for a product:

1. Open the page for editing in **Edit** mode and place the cursor in the editor where you want to add the information.



2. In the dynamic content box, select the **Edit** option. The product picker dialog will appear, and you can select another product or product category. Click **OK** when done.
3. Save your changes and view the result in preview or view mode.

### Removing Dynamic Content for a Product

Do the following to remove dynamic content for a product:

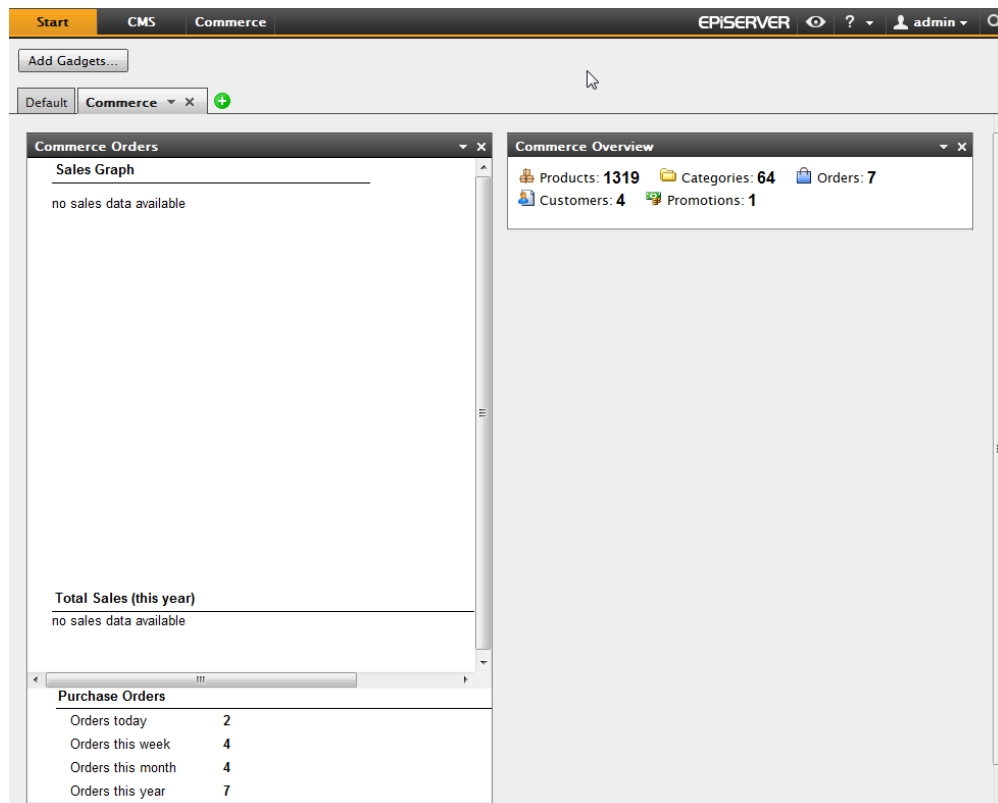
1. Open the page for editing in **Edit** mode.
2. Select the dynamic content box and press **Delete** on your keyboard.
3. Save your changes to the page.

## Gadgets in EPiServer Commerce

A gadget is a small application which can be displayed on the **OnlineCenter dashboard** for quick access. The OnlineCenter comes with a number of predefined gadgets, and the EPiServer Commerce sample site is also delivered with gadgets customized for e-commerce solutions. In the user documentation for EPiServer OnlineCenter you can read more about gadgets and how to use them. You can also develop and customize your own gadgets to suit your needs. Find out more about development of gadgets in the technical documentation for OnlineCenter on [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com). The EPiServer Commerce gadgets are part of the common framework and are included in a sample installation.

### Adding gadgets to the dashboard

Gadgets can easily be added to the dashboard in EPiServer Commerce by selecting **Add Gadgets**, and selecting one of the available gadgets.



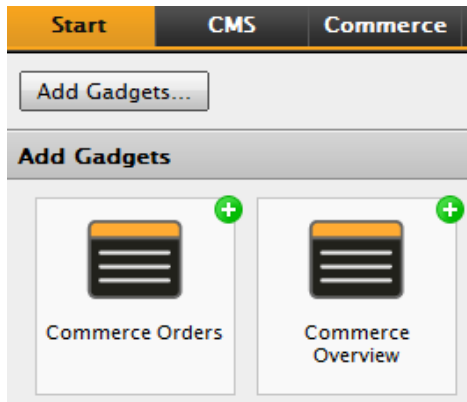
Gadgets for EPiServer Commerce are described in more detail in the following.

## Commerce Orders Gadget

The **Commerce Orders** gadget displays orders statistics in the form of a sales graph and a list of purchase orders in a time interval of your choice.

**Do the following to add and configure the Commerce Orders gadget:**

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu.
2. Select the **Dashboard** tab under which you want the gadget to appear.
3. Select **Add Gadgets** in top left corner of the dashboard, and then select the **Commerce Orders** gadget by clicking on it in the list. The gadget will be displayed on the dashboard. By default, it will be updated to display new data every 30 seconds.
4. To update the refresh interval, select **Edit** in the drop-down menu of the gadget, and enter a new time interval. Click **OK** to save you changes.



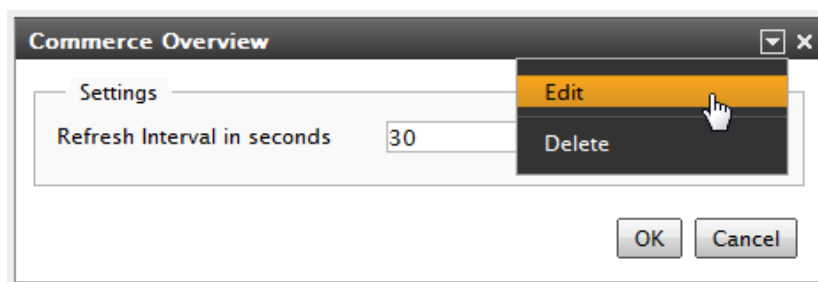
When the Commerce Orders gadget has been added to your dashboard, you will be able to easily monitor sales activities for your EPiServer Commerce website.

## Commerce Overview Gadget

The **Commerce Overview** gadget shows sales data from the e-commerce system. The data is grouped by products, categories, orders, customers and promotions.

**Do the following to add and configure the Commerce Overview gadget:**

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu.
2. Select the Dashboard tab under which you want the gadget to appear.
3. Select **Add Gadgets** in top left corner of the dashboard, and then select the **Commerce Overview** gadget by clicking on it in the list. The gadget will be displayed on the dashboard. By default, it will be updated to display new data every 30 seconds.
4. To update the refresh interval, select **Edit** in the drop-down menu of the gadget, and enter a new time interval. Click **OK** to save you changes.



When the Commerce Overview gadget has been added to your dashboard, you will be able to easily monitor sales data from your EPiServer Commerce website.

## Comment Approval Gadget

The **Comment Approval** gadget makes it possible for EPiServer Commerce administrators and editors to manage comments that are left by website visitors. This gadget provides an overview of the commenting status, and you can view, approve or delete comments from here.

**Do the following to add and configure the Comment Approval gadget:**

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu.
2. Select the Dashboard tab under which you want the gadget to appear.
3. Select **Add Gadgets** in top left corner of the dashboard, and then select the **Comment Approval** gadget by clicking on it in the list. The gadget will be displayed on the dashboard.
4. By selecting **Edit** in the drop-down menu of the gadget, you can set the number of approval items to display, as well as the length of the description.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes. The gadget will be displayed on your dashboard.

**Do the following to use the Comment Approval gadget:**

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu and select the Dashboard tab under which the **Approval** gadget is located.
2. You can choose to view all comments, or filter them according to their status - **Approved**, **Pending** or **Deleted**. Click **Refresh** to update the list if needed.
3. Select one or more comments for which you want to update the status, by clicking the checkbox to the left of each comment. Click the top left checkbox to select all comments displayed in the list.
4. Select the status you want to apply - **Approve**, **Mark Pending** or **Delete**. For instance, select **Approve** to approve the selected comments.

## Comment Abuse Report Gadget

The **Comment Abuse Report** gadget makes it possible for EPiServer Commerce administrators and editors to manage comment abuse reports that have been created by website visitors. This gadget provides an overview of abuse reports, and you can remove selected comments from here.

**Do the following to add and configure the Comment Abuse Report gadget:**

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu.
2. Select the Dashboard tab under which you want the gadget to appear.
3. Select **Add Gadgets** in top left corner of the dashboard, and then select the **Comment Abuse Report** gadget by clicking on it in the list. The gadget will be displayed on the dashboard.
4. By selecting **Edit** in the drop-down menu of the gadget, you can set the number of items to display, as well as the number of abuse reports to be displayed for each comment.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes. The gadget will be displayed on your dashboard.

**Do the following to use the Comment Abuse Report gadget:**

1. Log on to EPiServer Commerce and select **Dashboard** in the right-click menu and select the Dashboard tab under which the **Comment Abuse Report** gadget is located.
2. Select the comments you want to manage by clicking the checkbox to the left of each comment. Click the top left checkbox to select all comments displayed in the list.

3. Click **Remove Comment** to remove the comment. Select **Ignore** to leave the comment without any actions.

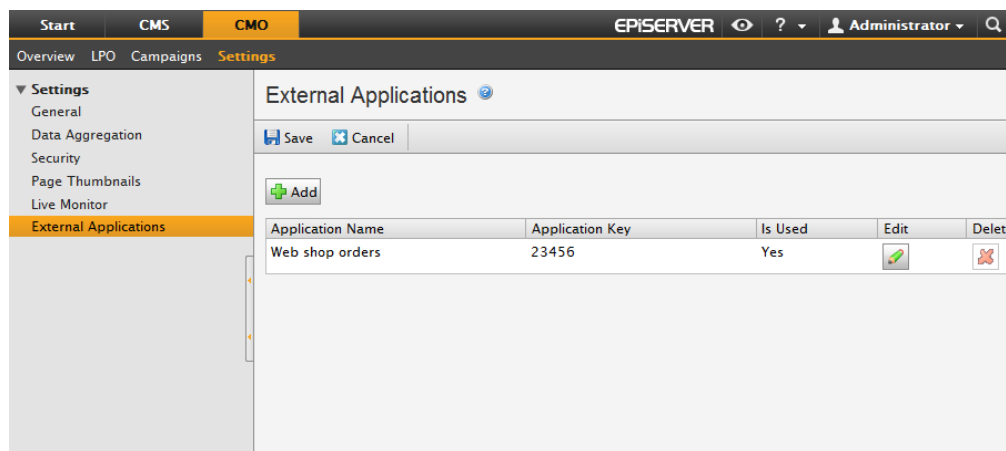
## Commerce Settings for CMO Gadget

With **EPiServer Campaign Monitor and Optimization (CMO)** you can measure and monitor campaigns on your website and optimize your landing pages. EPiServer CMO provides a simple way to analyze campaigns and landing pages, rather than whole sites. Find out more about EPiServer CMO in the user documentation on [world.episerver.com](http://world.episerver.com).

EPiServer CMO can also be used for monitoring activities on an EPiServer Commerce site. You can for instance monitor the number of views or orders for a specific product or product category. The logging of Commerce KPI data is supported using the **Generic KPI** function in CMO. The number of orders is an example of a generic KPI. This allows for external applications such as Commerce to send notifications using a specific application key. The application names and keys are defined in EPiServer CMO, which will then listen for incoming notifications with these specific key values, and collect and store the data.

The following procedure applies when setting up the integration between CMO and Commerce:

- Set up the web services to be used by EPiServer CMO and the corresponding URL to be used.
- Define the external applications, their application names and keys, in EPiServer CMO.
- Define the product views and/or product orders you want to monitor, using the EPiServer Commerce Settings for CMO gadget. Here you will need the application keys and the URL for the CMO Web Services.
- In EPiServer CMO, create a campaign and add the generic KPI for EPiServer Commerce.
- EPiServer Commerce will update the KPI value using web services.
- The monitoring result will be displayed on the campaign report page in CMO, or by using the **CMO KPI Summary** gadget for EPiServer Commerce on the site that has the EPiServer CMO service installed.



The collected data for EPiServer Commerce is defined in the EPiServer OnlineCenter using the **Commerce settings for CMO gadget**, as described in the following.



To use this gadget you need to have both EPiServer CMO and EPiServer Commerce installed on your website.

### Adding the Commerce Settings for CMO Gadget

When you add and configure this gadget, you can choose to monitor activities for a selection of product(s) or order(s).

Do the following to add and configure the CMO gadget for EPiServer Commerce:

1. Open the EPiServer OnlineCenter for your website(s) and select **Add Gadgets**.
2. Click on the **Commerce setting for CMO** gadget to add it to your dashboard.
3. Click **Add** to define the monitoring parameters.
4. Select **Type**, choose either **Product View** or **Product Order**. The Product View will define views of a product or all products under a specific category (node). The Product Order will define orders for one selected product or all orders of products under a specific category (node).
5. In the **Product/Category** field, choose a product or a category by selecting an option in the tree structure on the left hand, and click **Search** in the area to the right. Select a product in the search list and click **Select**. Or, you can select an entire category (node). You can also search directly for a product name or ID. Click **Select** to add your selection.
6. In the **Application Key** field, enter the application ID (defined in EPiServer CMO).
7. In the **URL for CMO Web Service** field, enter the URL to be used by CMO for the web service (defined in EPiServer CMO).

#### Editing Commerce Settings for the CMO Gadget

Do the following to edit a set of settings for the CMO Gadget:

1. Open the EPiServer OnlineCenter Dashboard, and navigate to the **Commerce settings for CMO** gadget.
2. Click the **Edit** icon for the settings you want to edit.
3. Update the settings information, please refer to the section about adding the Commerce settings for CMO gadget.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

#### Deleting Commerce Settings for the CMO Gadget

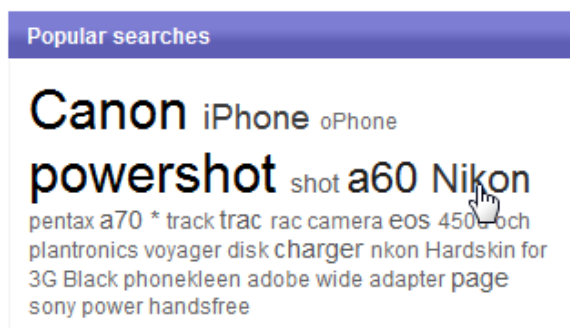
Do the following to delete the settings for the CMO Gadget:

1. Open the EPiServer OnlineCenter Dashboard, and navigate to the **Commerce settings for CMO** gadget.
2. In the check box to the left, select the set of settings you want to delete.
3. Click the **Delete** button and click **OK** to confirm.

## Managing the Tag Cloud

"Tags" are words describing the content of a website. A "tag cloud" is a visual depiction of tags on the site. In a tag cloud the importance of a word is shown with font size or color. Tags are also **hyperlinks**, and clicking on a tag will display content marked with that particular tag.

The tag cloud in EPiServer Commerce is a **search tag cloud** generated by users when searching for an item on the site. The more popular a search phrase is the more highlighted it will be in the search tag cloud. The search tag cloud on the sample site is displayed under the "Popular searches" part of the mid-section of the start page.



The EPiServer Commerce sample site comes with a **tag cloud plugin** for managing the tag cloud. This is accessed from the **Action Window** of EPiServer CMS. From the **Tag Cloud Management** section in the Action Window, you can manage the tag cloud list items, and perform tasks such as updating the name and hit count for a tag, or delete a tag.

## Listing tag cloud items

1. In EPiServer CMS Edit mode, open the **Action Window**.
2. In the Action Window, click **Tag Cloud Management**. A list of existing tag cloud items will be displayed.

**Action Window** Hide

**Search for tag:**

 Search

As default, 20 tags will be displayed at the time in the list. Click on the paging section in the footer of the list to navigate to between pages of the list.

## Sorting the tag cloud list

The tag cloud list can be sorted by tag name or by hit count. Click column headers **Name/Hits** to sort in ascending or descending order.

## Searching for a tag

To search for an existing tag, enter part of or the full tag name, in the **Search for a tag** field at the top of the tag list.

## Updating a tag

To update a tag, click the **Edit** symbol next to the tag in the tag list. You can change the tag name and you can update the hit count number for the tag. Click **Save** to update the changes. Note that each tag must have a unique name.

## Deleting a tag

To delete a tag, click the **Delete** symbol next to the tag in the tag list. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

## Personalization

The personalization feature in EPiServer CMS allows you to create adapted content that will be displayed to targeted **Visitor Groups**. Based on user information collected when visitors access your website, different content will be shown to different visitor groups of your choice. You can for instance display different content to first time visitors and returning visitors on your website. The personalization feature is described in detail in the *user documentation for EPiServer CMS 6 R2*.

The EPiServer Commerce sample site features a number of predefined visitor group criteria customized for an e-commerce site where you want to monitor user activities for instance for products and orders. Visitor groups can be applied to the various content on your EPiServer Commerce site, thus creating a personalized website visitor experience.

The visitor groups and their associated personalization criteria can be accessed by clicking on **CMS** in the global menu, and then selecting **Visitor Groups** in the submenu displayed. Or, you can right-click in View mode and select **Visitor Groups** in the EPiServer CMS right-click menu.

The personalization criteria for EPiServer Commerce are available under **Commerce Criteria** when you click **Add** to define visitor groups for your site. The various criteria can then be dropped into the configuration area.

**Create Visitor Group**

Adapt content on your website by first creating visitor groups and then using the groups to target the content on pages.

**Criteria**

Match: **All**

Drop new criterion here.

**Other Information**

Name:

Notes:

Security role: ☐ Make this visitor group available when setting access rights for pages and files.

Statistics: ☒ Enable statistics for this visitor group

**Commerce Criteria**

- Customer Properties
- Order Frequency
- Product in Cart or Wish List
- Recent Orders
- Total Spent

**Community Criteria**

- Site Criteria
- Time and Place Criteria
- URL Criteria
- Visitor Groups

**Save** **Cancel**

The predefined personalization criteria for EPiServer Commerce are described in more detail in the following.

## Customer Properties Criteria

With the **Customer Properties** criteria you can personalize content based on for instance age and geographic location.

Personalize content based on the following information (select from drop-down list):

- **Date of Birth** - define an age range by entering a from/to date. Select a date in the calendar or enter a date directly in the field (default format mm/dd/yyyy).
- **Customer group** - select one of the existing groups Customer, Partner or Distributor.
- **Registration source** - enter the source of registration in free text format.
- **Country** - select a country from the list.
- **Region code** - select a region code based on the address region in addresses.
- **Address postal code** - based on state selected, select a postal code from the list.
- **State** - select a state from the list.



Only one property type with a related value can be selected for a criterion, but several Customer Properties criteria can be defined for a Visitor Group.

## Order Frequency Criteria

With the **Recent Orders** criteria you can identify customers that have placed an order in the store "X" times in the last "Y" days.

Personalize content based on the following information:

- **Order times** - select the number of times an order has been placed.
- **Number of days** - select the number of days.

## Product in Cart or Wish List Criteria

With the **Products in Cart or Wish List** criteria you can identify shoppers that have placed a product of a certain type or brand in their cart or on their wish list.

Personalize content based on the following information:

- **Specified product code** - enter the desired product code in free text format.
- **Product from a specified category** - select the desired product category from the list.
- **Product has a specified property and value** - enter the desired product property and value, for instance "brand" and "Sony".



Only one property type with a related value can be selected for a criterion. However, you can add several criteria of the type "Products in Cart or Wish List" to a Visitor group.

## Recent Orders Criteria

With the **Recent Orders** criteria you can personalize content for visitors that have placed an order on the site in the last "X" days.

Personalize content based on the following information:

- **Number of days** - select the number of days.



## Total Spent Criteria

With the **Total Spent** criteria you can personalize content for visitors that have spent "X" amount of money (in a specified currency) on the site in the last "Y" days.

Personalize content based on the following information:

- **Spent at least** - select amount and currency.
- Select **number of days**.

## Rating and Commenting

Visitors to the EPiServer Commerce sample site have the possibility to rate and comment on the various products displayed. This functionality is built into the product display template of the EPiServer Commerce sample site.

### Rating

To rate a product a visitor needs to be registered with an account, and logged on to the site. When selecting a product, there will be a clickable rating field available. The system will calculate an average rating value based on the number of votes from users. The average rating for a product, as well as the number of votes, will be displayed to all visitors to the site regardless of whether they are logged on or not.

The screenshot shows the EPiServer Commerce sample site interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with the "CLICK+TALK" logo, a cart icon showing "1 item(s) in your cart", and a search bar. Below the navigation bar, there's a category breadcrumb: "Start - Phone Accessories - Apple iPhone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with Lint Cleaning Cloth". The main product area features a large image of the screen protector, the product title "Apple iPhone PDA Premium Reusable LCD Screen Protector with Lint Cleaning Cloth", an average rating of 4.5 stars (based on 2 votes), and a price of \$9.99. To the right, there's a "You May Also Like..." section showing a recommended product: "Apple iPhone Soft Polycarbonate Slim fit Case - Silver - Cozip Brand (Made in Korea)" priced at \$39.99. Below the main product image, there's a "Compare Products" section stating "You have no items to compare." and a "Compare" button. The product details section includes the item number "ELCB000TGQHAWS", a shipping note "Usually Ships in 24 Hours", and a "Compare" button.

### Commenting

To comment on a product, a visitor needs to be registered with an account, and logged on to the site. You also need to be logged on to the site to see the comments for a product. When selecting a product, there will be a **Post Comment** button available. Clicking on the button will open a comment editor where the user can add and save commenting text.

Your rating: ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

The screenshot shows the comments section of the product page. At the top, there's a "COMMENTS" header and a "POST COMMENT" button. Below the header, there's a comment from a user named "Mary" who wrote "Great phone! This is a great phone I just ordered one". The comment was posted 7 minutes ago. Below the comment, there's a "Remove" button and a "Status: Pending" label.

Logged on users can remove their own comments. By default, comments added will receive status "pending" and must be approved by the site administrator before they are visible to others on the site. The approval is done from the dashboard using the *Approval Gadget*. Commerce Manager administrators can see the status for each comment, and remove all comments, from the display for each product.

## Abuse reporting of comments

When logged on to the website, you can abuse report comments that others have posted for a product. This makes it possible for site administrators to monitor inappropriate content using the *Abuse Gadget* on the dashboard. When a comment is abuse reported, it will generate an item in the list of abuse reports for the site administrator to manage.

## Payment Options

EPiServer Commerce is a flexible platform allowing you to use many of the most popular payment providers within e-commerce. There are a number of payment solutions for different markets available "out-of-the-box" for EPiServer Commerce. Some can be installed automatically with the EPiServer Commerce sample site, and some are available as separate modules.

### Payment Options Available with the Sample Site

When you install the EPiServer Commerce sample site, the payment provider options listed below will be available. These will be included in the installation, and all you need to do is to configure the accounts for these payment providers in Commerce Manager.

- **Pay by PayPal Express** - payment option using the PayPal Express payment services provider. This solution is described more in the *PayPal Express* section.
- **DIBS Pay by credit card** - payment option using the DIBS credit card payment services provider. This solution is described more in the *DIBS Credit Card Payment Services* section.
- **Pay by Phone** - payment option where payment is done by phone.
- **Pay by Credit Card** - payment option for other common credit cards.

### Payment Options Available as Separate Modules

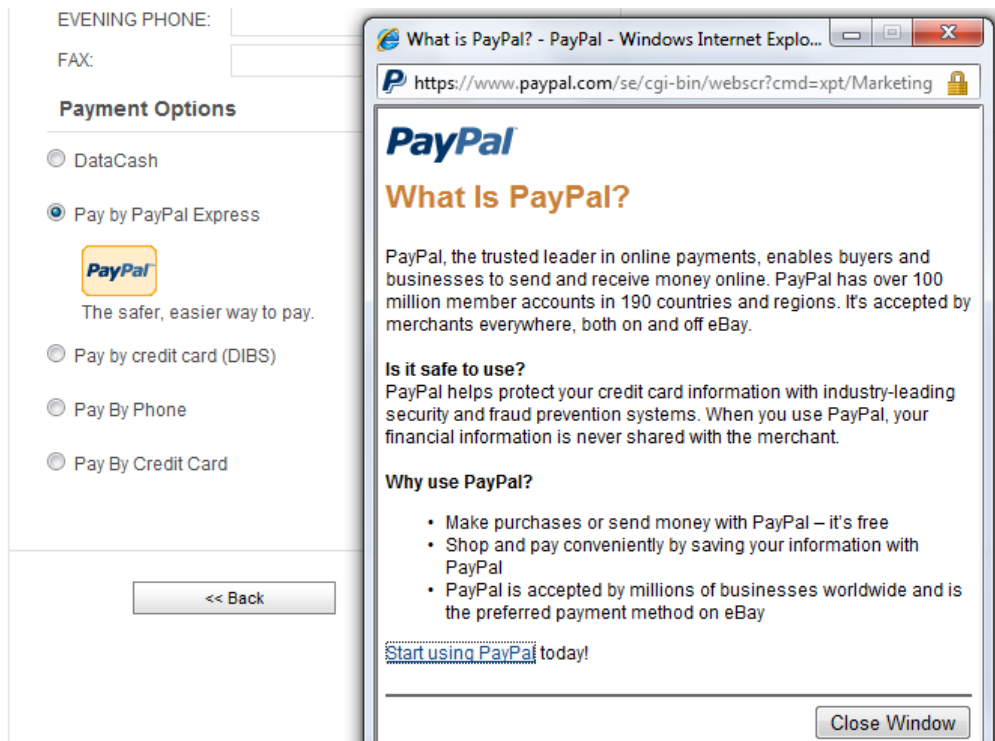
The following payment options are available as separate modules for EPiServer Commerce:

- **Klarna Payment Provider** - payment using the Klarna Invoice and Part Payment services provider. Please refer to *world.episerver.com* for more information about this solution.
- **DataCash** - payment option using the DataCash payment services provider. Please refer to *world.episerver.com* for more information about this solution.

Refer to the *EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide* for more information on how to create and configure different payment options.

### PayPal Express Payment Provider

If selected, the PayPal Express payment services are installed and configured automatically during the installation procedure for the EPiServer Commerce sample site. When the order is placed and confirmed, the procedure will continue with the payment. If the selected payment option is "Pay by PayPal Express" in step 3 of the checkout procedure, the **PayPal Express** payment function will be activated to carry out the payment procedure.



When you click **Place Order** on the order confirmation page, you will be redirected to PayPal to approve the payment.

You can see the shipping and billing addresses entered during the checkout procedure, during which these addresses can be changed.

When you have finalized the approval process, you will be redirected to the "Thank You" page of the EPIserver Commerce sample site.

To find out more about the payment process and configuration of PayPal and other payment methods for EPIserver Commerce, please refer to the **Configuration section** of the *EPIserver Commerce Developer Guide*.

## DIBS Credit Card Payment Services

If selected, the DIBS credit card payment services are installed and configured automatically during the installation procedure for the EPIserver Commerce sample site. When the order is placed and confirmed, the procedure will continue with the payment. If the selected payment option is "Pay by credit card (DIBS)" in step 3 of the checkout procedure, the **DIBS** payment function will be activated to carry out the payment procedure.



## EPI Server AB

**1. Payment method**

2. Validate payment

3. Payment accepted

•MasterCard

•VISA

Cancel



**Purchase  
Information**

The shops order  
number  
PO65765

**Amount**  
984.92 USD

Selecting the desired credit card brand will allow for entering the credit card details.



## EPI Server AB

[1. Payment method](#)

**2. Validate payment**

[3. Payment accepted](#)

**Payment using VISA**

VISA

Cancel

\* Card number:

4263880022431091 ✓

\* Expiry month:

07 ✓

\* Expiry year:

11 ✓

\* CVC/CVV:

953 ✓

Validate payment

**Purchase  
Information**

**The shops order  
number**

PO66479

**Amount**

8,008.00 USD

Payment method

Selecting **Validate Payment** will validate the payment. If the card details validate properly the payment will be accepted and the process will be completed.

To find out more about the payment process and configuration of DIBS and other payment methods for EPiServer Commerce, please refer to the **Configuration section** of the *EPiServer Commerce Developer Guide*.

## Search Providers

EPiServer Commerce features a provider model for the search index for both indexing and search queries. This provision allows the development of additional custom search provider to other search systems.

When installing the EPiServer Commerce sample site, **Lucene** will be the default search provider installed. To find out more about Lucene, please visit the official Lucene website.

Related topics:

- *Searching for product catalog entries*
- *Indexing product catalogs*

## Scheduled Job Clear Commerce Cache

When working with EPiServer Commerce and for instance importing or deleting a product catalog, it will be necessary to clean the runtime cache in order to make the website up to date. This is done using a scheduled job which is managed from the EPiServer CMS administration interface. The scheduled job can be executed repeatedly at given time intervals, or manually.

To find out more about how to work with product catalogs, please refer to the *Catalog Management section* in this documentation.

Do the following to manage the **Clear Commerce Cache** scheduled job:

1. Login as an administrator and navigate to the EPiServer CMS **Admin mode**.
2. Check the **Activate** check box to activate the scheduled job.
3. If you want to run the scheduled job manually, click **Start Manually** and the job will be executed.
4. If you want the scheduled job to be run automatically, set the desired time interval in the **Scheduled job interval** field.
5. The time when the scheduled job will be run the next time will be displayed in the **Next scheduled date** field.
6. Click **Save** to save your changes.

Under the **History** tab, you can monitor the status and results when the scheduled jobs have been executed.

To verify that the cache has been cleared, you need to refresh the catalog display pages.

The screenshot shows the EPiServer CMS Admin interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Start', 'CMS', and 'Commerce'. The 'Admin Mode' tab is selected. The left sidebar shows a tree view with categories like 'System Administration', 'Access Rights', and 'Scheduled Jobs'. The main content area is titled 'Clear Commerce Cache' and contains a description: 'A scheduled job for clearing Commerce cache data.' Below this, there are two tabs: 'Settings' (selected) and 'History'. The 'Settings' tab displays the following configuration:
 

- Active:** A checked checkbox.
- Scheduled job interval:** A text input field containing '1' followed by a dropdown menu set to 'day'.
- Next scheduled date:** A text input field containing '2011-03-08 00:00' with a calendar icon to its right.

 At the bottom right of the settings area, there are two buttons: 'Save' and 'Start Manually'.